
Bit by Bit
كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية
New Hello!
2nd PREP
2024
SECOND TERM
الصف الثاني الإعدادي
التعليم العام والأزهري
دار غزة
للطبع والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com

Contents



Specifications for Second Year Preparatory (2nd term) English Examination (2023 - 2024)

مواصفات امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثانى الإعدادى

(Time: 2 Hours) ٢٠٢٤ / ٢٠٢٣ (الفصل الدراسى الثانى) للعام الدراسى **(24 Marks)**



4 Marks

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

Students listen to a text from (30-35) words. Topics should be related to the Set Books. Students listen and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(One mark each)**

B Language Functions — 2.5 Marks

2 Complete the following dialogue:

A dialogue of **TEN (10)** exchanges with **FIVE (5)** deletions (**3** responses & **2** stimuli) is provided. Students are asked to complete the deletions completely without providing them with any guidance. The situation should be provided and clear. The first sentence is given in full. **(Half a mark each)**

C Reading Comprehension — 4.5 Marks

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

An unseen text of about **ONE HUNDRED** and **TWENTY-FIVE (125)** words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, a timetable or a letter. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. The students are required to answer **THREE (3)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(Half a mark each)** and **THREE (3)** open-ended questions (**One mark each**)

These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- **Giving the main idea** **(1 question)**
- **Extracting information** **(2 questions)**
- **Understanding reference** **(1 question)**
- **Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context** **(1 question)**
- **Critical thinking skill** **(1 question)**

D Vocabulary & Structure
7 Marks

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (5 Marks)

TEN (10) multiple-choice items (**7** Vocabulary **& 3** Structures) based on the Set Books are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

(Half a mark each)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(2 Marks)

FOUR (4) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given words(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs... etc. related to what students have studied.**(Half a mark each)**



6 Marks

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on....: (6 Marks)

Students are asked to write a paragraph from **EIGHTY-FIVE (85)** to **NINETY-FIVE (95)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books.

(One mark for organization-One mark for relevance of ideas- One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)



Write an email of about NINETY (90) words on: **(6 Marks)**

Students are asked to write an email from **EIGHTY-FIVE (85)** to **NINETY-FIVE (95)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books. Students must write who the email is to and from, as well as the subject of the email. Names and addresses are provided.

(One mark for organization - One mark for relevance of ideas - One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)



New Hello!





Technology and the future

Objectives

Reading:

A magazine article about online shopping; *The Time Machine;* a poster about the dangers of technology

Writing:

A reply to an online message; a formal email about a problem with a delivery.

Listening:

A discussion about new inventions; people's problems with technology and suggested solutions

Speaking:

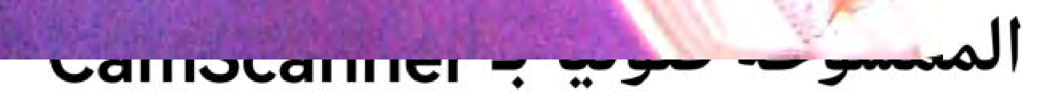
Giving opinions about inventions and technology; a debate

Language:

if/when + should for advice

Life Skills:

Critical thinking: technological awareness



يقوم الطالب بسماع المفردات في كراسة التسميع

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

headphones	سماعات الرأس (جمع دائماً)	speed	سرعة
motorbike	دراجة نارية (موتوسيكل)	electricity	الكهرباء
solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	app (application)	تطبيق (على الهاتف أو الكمبيوتر)
helicopter	طائرة مروحية (هليكوبتر)		

Useful Phrases

have money	يملك مالاً	spend money	ينفق مالاً
have a choice	لديه اختيار	spend time	يقضي وقت
have time	لديه وقت	waste money	يهدر (يضيع) المال
save money	يدّخر المال	waste time	يهدر (يضيع) الوقت
save time	يوفر الوقت	wait for a delivery	ينتظر توصيل (طلب)

Verbs & Nouns

correct (ed)	يصحح - يصوب	correction	تصحيح - تصويب
invent (ed)	يخترع	invention	إختراع
predict (ed)	يتنبأ	prediction	تنبؤ
translate (d)	يترجم	translation	ترجمة

Vocabulary

half-motorbike	نصف خصائص دراجة نارية	for	مع «مؤيد لـ»
half-helicopter	نصف خصائص طائرة مروحية	against	ضد «معارض لـ»
French	اللغة الفرنسية	the latest	الأحدث
shopping online	التسوق عبر الانترنت	article	مقالة (في جريدة)
pollution	التلوث	either...or....	إما ... أو ...
resources	مصادر	benefits	فوائد
businesses	أعمال تجارية	cooler	أكثر برودة
wing	جناح	free time	وقت فراغ
firstly	أولاً	hope (d)	يأمل
secondly	ثانياً	push (ed)	يدفع (للأمام)
flying motorbike	دراجة نارية طائرة	prefer (red)	يفضل
technology	التكنولوجيا		

Expressions & Prepositions

make electricity	يولّد كهرباء	pass exams	يجتاز الامتحانات
look online	يبحث علي الإنترنت	translate from...into...	يترجم من ... إلى ....
wear headphones	يرتدى سماعات الرأس	on a motorbike	على دراجة نارية
get hotter	يزداد سخونة/حرارة	agree / disagree with	يتفق/يختلف مع
get home	يصل للمنزل	arrive in	يصل إلى (بلد)
do the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق	in a few minutes	فى خلال دقائق قليلة
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	at the speed of..	على سرعة ..
change roads into ...	يحول الطرُق إلى ...	at the same time	فى نفس الوقت
shop online	يتسوق عبر الإنترنت	think of	يفكر فى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
spend	يقضى - ينفق	spent	spent
drive	يقود (سيارة مثلاً)	drove	driven
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
fly	يطير	flew	flown

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
useful	مفيد	helpful	useless	غيرمفيد
famous	مشهور	popular	unknown	غير معروف
agree / for	يوافق - مؤيد	accept	disagree / against	لا يوافق / معارض
friendly	ودود	kind	unfriendly	غير ودود
strong	قوى	powerful	weak	ضعيف
real	حقيقى	true	unreal	غير حقيقى

Definitions

helicopter	طائرة مروحية	a form of transport that flies using long, thin parts on top of it that turn round and round very quickly	١- وسيلة مواصلات ٢- عجلات ٣- محرك ٤- جهاز الكترونى
translate (d)	يترجم	change words into a different language	
motorbike	دراجة نارية	a form of transport[1] with two wheels[2] and an engine[3]	
app	تطبيق	a small computer program that you can use on a mobile phone or other electronic device[4]	
speed	سرعة	how fast something moves	
headphones	سماعات الرأس	a piece of equipment that you wear over your ears so that you can listen to music without anyone else hearing it	

Language Notes

1) spend / waste

- تستخدم الأفعال spend / waste كما يلي:

spend يقضي **/ waste** يضيع **+ (time) + V-ing.**

Ex. I don't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops.

Ex. I waste no time playing video games.

spend ينفق **/ waste** يهدر **+ (money) + on + V-ing. / noun**

Ex. He spent much money on (buying) clothes.

Ex. Don't waste your money on (buying) sweets.

2) prefer

- يمكن أن يلى الفعل (prefer) الفعل فى المصدر مسبوقًا بـ (to) :

Ex. I prefer to wear that jacket.

- كما يمكن أن يستخدم كما يلى:

prefer + V-ing. / Noun + to + V-ing. / Noun

Ex. I prefer playing football to playing tennis.

Ex. I prefer football to tennis.

3 hope

يستخدم الفعل (hope) بمعنى (يأمل) كما يلي:

1- hope + فاعل + مضارع بسيط

Ex. We hope she passes the exam.

2- hope + فاعل + will + inf.

Ex. We hope she will pass the exam.

3- hope + to + inf.

Ex. I hope to get high marks.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Amr spends too much time .... computer games.
   a. play b. to play c. plays d. playing
2. I prefer .... TV to going to the cinema.
   a. watching b. watches c. watch d. to watching
3. Omar is hoping .... English at university.
   a. studying b. studies c. to study d. will study



Reading

SB Page (2)



استمع إلى النصوص



❶ This clever jacket uses an app[1] to make you warmer when the weather is cold.

❷ When these headphones[2] hear another language, they can translate*[3] it into your language.

❸ Change roads into solar panels[4]! This invention uses strong glass that you can drive on and make electricity[5] at the same time.

❹ Is it a motorbike[6]? Is it a helicopter[7]? No, this invention is half-motorbike and half-helicopter! It can push you into the air at the speed[8] of a fast car!



١- تطبيق
٢- سماعات الرأس
٣- يترجم
٤- ألواح طاقة شمسية
٥- الكهرباء
٦- دراجة نارية
٧- طائرة مروحية
٨- سرعة







Say it correctly

* translate

ينطق حرف (s) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق صوت /s/ أو /z/ .

SB Page (4)

Shopping online - Yes or No?

Injy - I love online shopping!



Shopping online [1] is great! Firstly, it saves[2] me time. I don't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops. I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes. Secondly, I have more choice[3] online. Also, if more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on the road[4] and less pollution[5]! I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

Baher - I prefer going to real shops in my city.



Every time I buy clothes online, the thing that I buy is wrong! At a shop, I can see what I am buying and I can try[6] it first. Also, I don't like to waste[7] time waiting for a delivery[8]- I want things now! If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close. If they close, then lots of other businesses[9] like cafés will close, too.

١- التسوق عبر الانترنت
٢- يوفر
٣- إختيار
٤- طريق
٥- تلوث
٦- يقيس - يجرب
٧- يضيع
٨- توصيل
٩- أعمال تجارية

WB Page (71)

Mother : Ahmed, your plane will arrive in England at 11 o'clock.
Ahmed : Who will meet me at the airport if the plane's late?
Mother : Uncle Sami will wait for you, don't worry!
Ahmed : What clothes will I wear if it's cold?
Mother : You have a big coat, but it will be warm inside!
Ahmed : Who will I talk to if I don't know anyone at the school?
Mother : There will be lots of new students, they'll be very friendly.
Ahmed : What will the teacher say if I don't understand the lesson?
Mother : He or she will help you to understand.
Ahmed : What will I eat if I don't like the food?
Mother : Aunt Judy will cook Egyptian food, but you should try English food, too!

Audioscript

SB Page (3)

1. Narrator : Hatem

Hatem : Wow! That looks so cool[1]! I'm not sure it's very useful though [2]. It won't be able to fly very high, will it?

2. Narrator : Manal

Manal : I think lots of people will want to buy one of these; they'll be very useful for travelling[3]. It won't help people to speak other languages though, will it? It's only good for[4] listening.

3. Narrator : Tarek

Tarek : I think this is a good idea for people in cold places. It won't be very useful for me though! Maybe[5] they'll make one to make people feel cooler! That would be good here in the summer!

4. Narrator : Sawsan

Sawsan : I think that is an amazing invention[6]. I hope they'll build lots of these in Egypt. We have lots of sun and we could make lots of electricity.

١- رائع
٢- مفيد برغم ذلك
٣- السفر
٤- مفيد لـ
٥- ربما
٦- اختراع

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

يوجد تمرينات إضافية فى كراسة الواجب المنزلى

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Do you think that it is easy to ------- from Arabic to English? إدارة سنورس 2023 WB
   a. translate b. move c. find d. stay
2. The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a ---------. WB
   a. lorry b. ship c. rocket d. motorbike
3. ------- are like planes, but they do not have wings! البحيرة - وادى النطرون 2022 WB
   a. Cars b. Cameras c. Helicopters d. Mobiles
4. Mona always wears -------- on the bus because she loves listening to music. البحيرة - وادى النطرون 2022 WB
   a. mobiles b. headphones c. dresses d. tablets
5. There's a/an --------- on this phone which tells me the weather in my city. بنى سويف 2023 WB
   a. app b. screen c. battery d. charger
6. I want to --------- shopping on foot. القليوبية - قها 2022
   a. have b. go c. pass d. visit

7. We can use solar .... to make electricity. [illegible] 2023

a. doors b. windows c. panels d. rooms

8. .... much time using the mobile phones is bad for health. [illegible] 2023

a. Spending b. Saving c. Spelling d. Sewing

9. I don't like to waste time .... for the delivery. إدارة الباجور – المنوفية 2023

a. wait b. waits c. waiting d. to wait

10. "........" means to change words into a different language. القاهرة 2023

a. Wait b. Translate c. Spend d. Waste

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. I always .... home at 4 p.m.

a. make b. wear c. get d. look

12. My mother .... the shopping yesterday.

a. wore b. made c. went d. did

13. A .... has two wheels and is always fast.

a. car b. ship c. motorbike d. boat

14. **A:** Can we go to the club tomorrow?

B: Sorry! I can't. I don't .... enough time.

a. build b. have c. wait d. go

15. Don't .... your time playing games on your mobile.

a. give b. keep c. waste d. miss

16. He drove his car at a/an .... of 120 km / h.

a. speed b. invention c. app d. wing

17. The internet is a useful ....

a. invent b. invention c. predict d. prediction

18. Ola always .... her money on buying dresses.

a. waits b. has c. makes d. spends

19. **A:** Do you think scientists can .... the future?

B: Of course not.

a. translate b. translation c. predict d. prediction

20. Don't leave the lights on, it wastes ....

a. electricity b. water c. time d. wind



Language

Making predictions عمل التنبوات

1- will ('ll) / will not (won't) for future predictions

Form التكوين

• تستخدم الصيغة الآتية للتنبؤ بشيء ما فى المستقبل:

subject فاعل (اسم/ضمير)	→	will = 'll سوف will not = won't سوف لا	→	inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. The headphones will be very useful for travelling.
Ex. The machine won't be able to fly very high.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

• تستخدم الكلمات الآتية للتعبير عن المستقبل:

next (week - month - year)	(الأسبوع - الشهر - العام) القادم
one day	يوما ما
tomorrow	غدًا
in the future	فى المستقبل
soon	قريباً
maybe ربما | perhaps ربما | probably	من المحتمل

• كما تستخدم الأفعال والتعبيرات الآتية للتعبير عن التنبؤ بالمستقبل مع (will):

hope	يأمل	predict	يتنبأ	promise	يوعد
think	يعتقد	expect	يتوقع	(be) sure	متأكد

Usage الاستخدام

• تستخدم will ('ll) / will not (won't) للتنبوء بالمستقبل بدون دليل

Ex. I will buy a car one day.
Ex. Hossam won't get high marks next exam.

• يستخدم أيضًا للتعبير عن حقائق فى المستقبل.

Ex. The sun will rise at 5: 30 the morning tomorrow.

Question السؤال

(كلمة استفهام) Will + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

Ex. When will you meet your friends? (سؤال بكلمة استفهام)
Ex. Will trains change in the future? (سؤال بهل ....؟)
- Yes, they will. - No, they won't.

Check ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother .... at university next year.
   a. will be b. is c. has d. was
2. He .... fail. He's really smart.
   a. will b. won't c. isn't d. wasn't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Will you .... (coming) to tomorrow's party?
2. .... (Did) the students travel to Luxor next week?

2- (If / When) for future predictions

• تستخدم (If / When) فى الحالة الشرطية الأولى (first conditional) لعمل تنبؤات فى المستقبل كما يلى:

If / When → مضارع بسيط , → will + inf.

Ex. If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.

will + inf. → if / when → مضارع بسيط

Ex. I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

Notes

١- توضع فاصلة (,) بين جزئى الجملة عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ (If / When):

Ex. If I go out, I will meet my friends.

٢- فى حالة الاستفهام يستخدم الآتى:

(كلمة إستفهام) + Will + فاعل + inf. — when / if + مضارع بسيط...?

If / When + فاعل + مضارع بسيط , (كلمة إستفهام) will + فاعل + inf....?

Ex. What will you do if you have much free time?

Ex. If Mustafa gets much money, will he buy a mobile?

Ex. Will Mustafa buy a mobile if he gets much money?

٣- من الممكن أن يكون أى من جزئى الجملة (أو كلاهما) منفيًا:

Ex. If Hossam doesn't study hard, he will fail.

Ex. If I don't call my friend, he will get angry.

Ex. If Naglaa doesn't study hard, she won't succeed.

٤- نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس (.will + inf) فى فعل الشرط بعد (If / When).

Ex. If Ramy helps his dad, they will finish on time.

Ex. ~~If Ramy will help his dad, they will finish on time.~~ (✗) (الجملة خطأ)

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. If I .... to the shops, I will spend a lot of money.
   a. go b. went c. goes d. going
2. If they play well, they .... the game.
   a. won b. will win c. wins d. would win
3. My son .... be 8 years old next year.
   a. will b. is c. going d. going to
4. If I go to the shops on Saturday, I ...... some new headphones.
   a. buy b. bought c. am buying d. will buy
5. What clothes .... if it's cold? WB
   a. I will wear b. I wear c. I wore d. will I wear
6. When Huda visits Cairo, she .... some new shoes. SB
   a. would buy b. buying c. will buy d. bought
7. I think travelling in time ...... impossible. WB
   a. be b. would be c. were d. will be
8. Hassan won't use the internet to buy food when he ...... older. SB
   a. is b. was c. be d. are
9. If I .... everything online, I won't be able to go shopping with my friends. SB
   a. would buy b. buy c. will buy d. bought
10. .... you visit Aswan, will you visit the High Dam?
    a. Where b. While c. If d. As
11. I think there ...... no illnesses in the future. WB
    a. will be b. be c. won't be d. was
12. If you go to the club this afternoon, you .... Hossam because he is in Aswan.
    a. should see b. won't see c. will see d. don't see

Bit by Bit Exercises

13. My friends and I .... to Alex soon.
    a. is travelling b. travelled c. travels d. will travel
14. That boy .... a famous architect in the future.
    a. is b. will be c. did d. was
15. Mona .... her aunt if she has enough free time.
    a. will visit b. visited c. would visit d. is visited
16. Kamal will arrive on time if he .... about the meeting.
    a. will know b. knew c. knows d. knowing
17. When mum goes to the mall, she .... me a jacket.
    a. was getting b. got c. getting d. will get
18. I will travel abroad when I .... my exams.
    a. will finish b. finishing c. finish d. finishes
19. If Omar trains hard, he .... next week's match.
    a. wins b. doesn't win c. won't win d. will win
20. My father.......... me a new mobile next month.
    a. will buy b. would buy c. buys d. bought
21. They .... a nice time if they go to Al-Azhar Park.
    a. had b. will have c. having d. has
22. When Amir .... to America, he will buy a modern car.
    a. travels b. travel c. travelling d. travelled

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. What .... (I will) eat if I don't like the food? WB
2. I won't watch TV tonight if I .... (went) out.
3. What .... (I do) if I've a problem?
4. I hope there .... (is) less pollution in the future.
5. I .... (not watch) TV tonight if I am busy.
6. If Ali comes first, he .... (be) very happy.

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. Hassan will be sad if he .... (got) low marks.
8. What .... (would) you do when you meet Ali?
9. He will feel tired if he .... (didn't) sleep well tomorrow.
10. I think I .... (speak) English well next year.
11. He .... (feel) warmer when he wears that jacket.
12. How .... (did) technology help us to travel in the future?

Speaking

1) Talking about new inventions
الحديث عن الاختراعات الجديدة

- نسأل ونجيب عن ما نأمله فى المستقبل بخصوص الاختراعات الجديدة فنقول:

A: What invention do you hope we will see in the future?

ما الاختراع الذى تأمل أن نراه مستقبلاً؟

B: I hope...... will be invented soon. أتمنى أن (اسم الاختراع) سوف يتم اختراعه قريبًا.

Ex. I hope the flying motorbike will be invented soon.

A: Do you agree that........ will / won't be very useful in Egypt?

هل توافق أن (اسم الاختراع) سوف يكون/سوف لا يكون مفيدًا فى مصر؟

B: I agree that.......... will / won't be useful in Egypt!

أوافق أن (اسم الاختراع) سوف يكون/سوف لا يكون مفيداً فى مصر.

Ex. I agree that the jacket won't be very useful in Egypt.

2) Predicting the future
عمل تنبؤات فى المستقبل

- يمكن عمل تنبؤات مستقبلية باستخدام If + present simple → will + inf. كالآتى:

- If I help my mother at the weekend, she will have more free time.

لو أساعد أمى فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، سوف يكون لديها وقت فراغ أكثر.

- If I finish my homework early, I'll play video games.

لو انتهى من واجبى المنزلى مبكراً، سوف ألعب ألعاب الفيديو.

- If I pass my exams, I'll be happy. لو أجتاز امتحاناتى، ساكون سعيدًا.

- If I find a snake in my house, I will be frightened.

لو أجد ثعبانًا فى منزلى، ساكون خائفاً.




General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

يوجد تمرينات إضافية فى كراسة الواجب المنزلى

1 Complete the following dialogue:

المنيا إدارة العدوة 2023

Rashad and Omar are talking about types of technology.

Rashad: Do you know much about technology?

Omar : 1 ....

Rashad: What type of technology do you use every day?

Omar : 2 ....

Rashad: 3 ....?

Omar : I use the internet to communicate with my friends and play games online.

Rashad: 4 ....?

Omar : Yes, sometimes I've problems online.

Rashad: What should you do if you are worried about somethings online?

Omar : 5 ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. I like to use my ...... to listen to music on my mobile phone. إدارة الباجور/ المنوفية 2023
   a. charger b. headphones c. laptop d. microphones
2. I have a new phone that has a / an .... to help me do my homework.
   إدارة شرق شبرا الخيمة 2023
   a. motorbike b. app c. wing d. headphone
3. Do you think that we will .... a car that doesn't make any pollution? WB
   a. invention b. predict c. prediction d. invent
4. My mother always .... the shopping on Fridays.
   a. does b. goes c. makes d. looks

Exercises on Language

5. There will .... electric cars in the future. القليوبية – ضيوح 2022
   a. be b. are c. being d. been
6. When Dina .... home, her aunt will meet her.
   a. come b. comes c. came d. coming

7. .... I have enough free time, I will go out with my friends.

a. If b. What c. How d. Do

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. If they .... (not work) hard, the manager will punish them.
2. If Huda .... (went) to Cairo, she will buy some new shoes. إدارة رشيد 2023
3. He will feel tired if he............ (didn't) sleep well. محافظة المنوفية 2023
4. I won't play outside if it .... (rains) tomorrow. إدارة البدرشين 2023
5. She .... (won't) succeed in the next exam. She's really clever.
6. What will Ahmed .... (doing) if he knows the truth?
7. If Sara .... (have) much work, she won't watch TV.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

WB

يوجد تمرينات إضافية فى كراسة الواجب المنزلى

"Are you for or against online shopping?" (مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

....

....

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- **What are the benefits of online shopping?**
- **Why don't some people like online shopping?**
- **Does online shopping save time?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- **If more people shop online, ...**
- **It saves ....**
- **Some people like to try ....**



SB pages 6-8 WB pages 72-73

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى كراسة التسميع

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

addicted to	مدمن على (معتاد على)	horrible	فظيع / سئ جدًا
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
headache	صداع	explore (d)	يستكشف
lever	ذراع تشغيل آلة	pull (ed)	يسحب
impossible	مستحيل	disappear (ed)	يختفى

Useful Phrases

stay outside	يبقى بالخارج	have flying cars	يمتلك سيارات طائرة
try eating fruit	يجرب تناول الفاكهة	have no illnesses	ليس لديه أمراض
understand a lesson	يفهم درس	swim in the sea	يسبح فى البحر
travel in / through time	يسافر عبر الزمن	explore the bottom of the sea	يستكشف قاع البحر
live on the moon	يعيش على القمر		

Vocabulary

The Time Machine	آلة الزمن (اسم رواية)	planet	كوكب
Time Traveller	مسافر عبر الزمن	climate change	تغير المناخ
model	نموذج مصغر	funny	مضحك
suddenly	فجأة	share (d)	يشارك / يتشارك
instead	بدلاً من ذلك	drop (ped)	يُسقط
expert	خبير	tidy (ied)	يرتب
strange	غريب	reply (ied) (n)	يرد - رد
space	الفضاء	copy (ied) (n)	ينسخ - نسخة
website	موقع على الإنترنت		

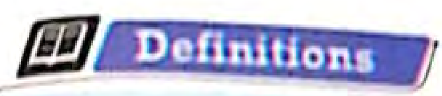
Expressions & Prepositions

Expression	Meaning	Expression	Meaning
sound like	يبدو مثل	ready to use	جاهزة للإستخدام
have a headache	يعانى من صداع	take the road south	يستقل الطريق جنوبًا
have a break	يأخذ راحة	on the internet	فى الإنترنت
make friends	يصادق - يكوِّن صداقات	on social media	على مواقع التواصل
feel tired / worried	يشعر بالتعب/بالقلق	turn... off	يُغلق
pull a lever	يسحب زراع آلة	good at	جيد فى
share a photo	يشارك صورة	for a long time	لمدة طويلة
give advice	يعطى نصيحة	worried about	قَلِق على
a piece of technology	أحد أشكال التكنولوچيا	take ... away	يأخذ... بعيدًا
drop rubbish	يلقى القمامة	believe in	يؤمن بـ
start a machine	يشغل آلة	come out	يظهر/يَبرُز (الشمس مثلاً)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
cost	يكلف	cost	cost
hurt	يؤذى - يؤلم	hurt	hurt
build	يبنى/ينشئ	built	built
send	يرسل	sent	sent
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
impossible	مستحيل	unlikely / no way	possible	ممكن
pull	يسحب	grab	push	يدفع «للأمام»
disappear	يختفى	hide	appear	يظهر
turn.. off	يغلق جهاز	switch off	turn.. on	يشغل جهاز
horrible	رهيب/فظيع	terrible	awesome / amazing	رائع/مدهش



Definitions

social media وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	- websites and apps that allow[1] people to talk to each other on the internet - websites and computer programs that allow people to communicate and share information on the internet using a computer or mobile phone
by mistake عن طريق الخطأ	- without planning[2] or wanting to do something - something you do or say without intending to
horrible فظيع/سيء جدًا	very bad, not nice at all
addicted to مدمن على	- always needing to do or have something - liking something so much that you want to do or have it all the time
pull يسحب	hold something and move it towards you
disappear يختفي	suddenly go somewhere and become impossible to find
explore يستكشف	look around a place where you have never been in order to find out what is there
impossible مستحيل	if an action or event[3] is impossible, it cannot happen or be done
lever زراع تشغيل آلة	a handle[4] that you push or pull to make a machine work
headache صداع	a pain[5] inside your head

١- تسمح
٢- تخطيط
٣- حدث
٤- مقبض
٥- ألم

Language Notes

1) Gerund (V-ing)

- من الممكن أن يستخدم (V-ing.) كفاعل للجملة:

Ex. Playing video games is my hobby.

Ex. Travelling has many benefits.

2) stop

- **stop + V-ing** يتوقف عن شىء كان يفعله

Ex. You should stop playing too much.

Ex. When dad arrived, we stopped talking.

- **stop + to + inf.** يتوقف لكى يفعل...

Ex. On my way home, I stopped to buy some bread.

3) take

- يستخدم الفعل (take) بمعنى (يستغرق) كما يلى: **take + مدة + to + inf.**

Ex. The machine took (me) two years to build.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن وضع المفعول به بعد الفعل take

4)

- **explore** يستكشف (مكان/شيئ) لأول مرة

Ex. I'll explore the village tomorrow.

- **invent** يخترع شئ لم يكن موجود

Ex. I hope the flying motorbike will be invented soon.

5) allow / let

- **allow (ed) + مفعول + to + inf.** يسمح

Ex. Social media allows people to communicate.

- **let (let - let) + مفعول + inf** يسمح

Ex. My dad didn't let me go out last night.

- **Let's + inf.** هيا بنا

Ex. Let's go for a walk.

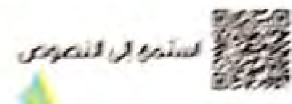
Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... movies online really wastes my time.
   a. Watch b. Watching c. To watching d. Watches
2. It took Hagar three hours .... her homework.
   a. finish b. finishes c. finished d. to finish
3. My teacher didn't .... me to eat in class.
   a. allow b. laugh c. let d. work
4. Graham Bell .... the telephone in 1876.
   a. found b. explored c. invented d. wasted



SB Page (6)



Shady	Hala	Randa	Adam
			

1. **Narrator** : **Shady**

   Shady : I'm not sleeping very well at the moment. I usually watch some videos on the internet before I go to sleep but sometimes I watch them for a few hours and then I can't sleep. My head often hurts lots in the morning, too.

2. **Narrator** : **Hala**

   Hala : I found this great online game but I didn't know that when I got new things on it, it costs[1] real money! I hope[2] my parents aren't going to be angry when I tell them how much money I spent ...

3. **Narrator** : **Randa**

   Randa : I love social media, I love watching videos online and I love talking to my friends on my phone. But now I feel worried[3] if I don't have my phone or I can't check it. I think it is starting to become[4] a problem.

4. **Narrator** : **Adam**

   Adam : My friends and I like to put funny[5] pictures online but when I share[6] a photo, everyone says my clothes are not cool or my hair looks strange[7]. It makes me feel sad.

١- يكلف
٢- يأمل
٣- قلق
٤- يصبح
٥- مضحك
٦- يشارك
٧- غريب

SB Page (6)

Narrator : One

Woman : Shady, watching videos before bed is not a good idea. You should try not to take your phone into your bedroom at night.





Narrator : Two

Woman : Hala, you need to talk to your parents. They should check that you can't buy anything when you play games online.



Narrator : Three

Woman : Randa, it is important not to become addicted to technology. If you feel you can't live without your phone you should try taking a break every day for an hour or more.



Narrator : Four

Woman : Oh Adam, they don't sound like good friends! Talk to them in real life and tell them how it makes you feel. If they don't change, maybe you should find some new friends.



SB P. (7)

My parents say that I spend too much time online, but playing video games is my hobby and I am very good at them! I love playing games with my friends but my parents say they will take my computer away if I don't stop playing on it so much. What should I do?

SB Page (8)

The Time Machine by H. G. Wells

London, England, 1895

A group of friends meet for dinner at the Time Traveller's house. After dinner, the Time Traveller asks his friends if they think that it is possible[1] to travel through time.

"It's impossible[2]!" they reply[3], "We can only travel through space, not time."

The Time Traveller shows them a small model[4] of a machine that he has in his hand.

"This is a copy of a machine that I believe[5] can go through time. It took me two years to build," he tells them. The friends laugh.

"Pull[6] this lever[7]," he tells one of them.

They feel some wind and then the machine suddenly disappears[8]!

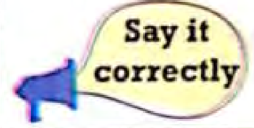
"Where is it?" the other men ask.

"The model machine is in the future," the Time Traveller says. "Would you like to see the real machine?" he asks.

He takes them to another room. Inside the room is another, bigger machine. It is not finished.

"In this machine," he says "I will explore[9] the past and the future!"

١- ممكن
٢- مستحيل
٣- يرد
٤- نموذج مصغر
٥- يعتقد
٦- يسحب
٧- ذراع آلة
٨- يختفي
٩- يستكشف



• lever (leave) ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة

Exercises on Vocabulary

يوجد تمرينات إضافية في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Our friends sent us photos on .... إدارة أبو النمرس - الجيزة 2023
   a. social media b. social studies c. social parts d. the radio
2. That new hotel looks .... I really don't like it. إدارة طوخ 2023 WB
   a. nice b. wonderful c. horrible d. fantastic
3. If you don't .... the lesson, you should tell the teacher. WB
   a. swim b. visit c. try d. understand
4. The tourists took the road south by .... , but they wanted to go north. WB
   a. correction b. lever c. mistake d. right
5. The best way to .... the countryside is on foot. البحيرة - وادي النطرون 2022
   a. invent b. explore c. communicate d. make
6. I can't find my earphones; they suddenly .... ببا - بني سويف 2023
   a. believed b. listened c. appeared d. disappeared
7. My friend drinks too much coffee. He became .... to it. إدارة منيا القمح 2023
   a. additional b. addicted c. horrible d. expert
8. " .... " means very bad. إدارة البدرشين 2023
   a. Awesome b. Amazing c. Horrible d. Interesting
9. Don't touch the .... , or the machine will start. البحيرة 2022
   a. liver b. lever c. river d. diver
10. I need some medicine, please. I've a terrible .... مطروح 2022
    a. class b. mistake c. picnic d. headache

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. It is .... for us to breathe underwater.
    a. possible b. probable c. usual d. impossible
12. Some divers will .... the bottom of this sea tomorrow.
    a. explore b. damage c. invent d. make
13. The sun .... behind a cloud.
    a. made b. bought c. disappeared d. worked

14. I watched an interesting film .... the internet last week.

a. of b. on c. out d. to

15. You shouldn't .... friends with bad people.

a. do b. take c. make c. hurt

16. When you are .... to something, you always need to do it.

a. addicted b. kind c. polite d. rude

Language

(If / When + should / shouldn't) to give advice

• نستخدم (If / When + should / shouldn't) لتقديم النصح بمعنى إذا/ عندما.... ينبغى/ لا ينبغى أن....:

If / When → مضارع بسيط → **should / shouldn't + inf.**

Ex. You should check that you can't buy anything when you play games online.

Ex. If they don't get good marks, maybe they should study harder.

Ex. If it is very rainy, you shouldn't go out.

Notes:

١- إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ If / When لابد من وضع comma (,) قبل بداية الجملة الثانية.

Ex. If you have a problem, you should tell your parents.

Ex. You should tell your parents if you have a problem.

٢- فى حالة الاستفهام نستخدم الأسلوب الآتى:

(كلمة إستفهام) Should فاعل inf. if / when مضارع بسيط ...?

Ex. What should I do if I don't find my mobile?

Ex. Should we go out if we have enough time?

٣- من الممكن أن يكون أيًا من جزئى الجملة (أو كلاهما) فى حالة النفى:

Ex. If you don't find your books, you should tell your parents.

Ex. If you don't feel well, you shouldn't go out.

٤- إذا دلت الجملة على الاستمرارية من الممكن أن يأتى بعد (If / When) زمن المضارع المستمر بدلاً من المضارع البسيط:

Ex. If you are sitting at the computer for a long time, you should have a break.

Exercises on Language

يوجد تمرينات إضافية فى كراسة الواجب المنزلى

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. When you go to bed, you ...... turn your phone off. SB
   a. won't b. will c. should d. have
2. You should tell a parent or teacher if you ......worried about something. SB
   a. felt b. will feel c. are felt d. feel
3. If she has a headache, she ...... sea a doctor. إدارة سمسطا 2023
   a. have b. should c. is d. was
4. You ...... swim in the sea if it is very cold. إدارة أبو حماد 2023
   a. have to b. had to c. should d. shouldn't
5. When you ...... tired, you should have a break. إدارة بيا 2023
   a. are b. be c. were d. will be
6. If you are in the library, you ...... make noise. إدارة البدرشين 2023
   a. shouldn't b. should c. must d. can
7. If you want to be healthy, you ...... healthy food. إدارة أبو المطامير 2023
   a. ate b. should eat c. eating d. would eat

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Where should I go if I ...... to buy a new car?
   a. was wanting b. wants c. want d. wanting
9. You shouldn't stay up late if you ...... to get up early.
   a. needing b. needed c. needs d. need
10. What ...... I do if I need to make friends online?
    a. am b. not c. should d. was
11. If you need to stay healthy, you...... go to the gym.
    a. not b. should c. shouldn't d. have

12. I should read books if I ...... free time.
  a. had b. has c. will have d. have
13. If you meet Mr Hamdy, you ...... tell him about the accident.
  a. shouldn't b. are c. not d. aren't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. If we want to stop climate change, we should .... (stopped) cutting down trees. WB
2. You .... (shall) come to stay with me when you're bored.
البحيرة – وادى النطرون 2022
3. If you .... (didn't) do your homework, you should apologise to your teacher.
ادارة الزاوية الحمرا 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. When you have much homework, you .... (shouldn't) finish it first.
5. You should .... (is) careful when you use the internet.
6. If you feel tired, you .... (shouldn't) go to bed.
7. When you have an exam, you should .... (relaxing).
8. If you .... (needs) to be fit, you should do exercise.

Speaking

Talking about technology

التحدث عن التكنولوجيا

- للسؤال والإجابة عن أنواع التكنولوجيا التى نستخدمها نقول:

A: What types of technology do you use every day?
ما هى أنواع التكنولوجيا التى تستخدمها كل يوم؟
B: I think I am addicted to.......... أعتقد أننى مدمن لاستخدام.........
A: What do you use them for?
فيما تستخدمهم؟
B: I spend hours watching / playing.......... أقضى ساعات أشاهد/ العب..........
A: Do you have any problems with technology?
هل تعانى من مشكلات مع استخدام التكنولوجيا؟
B: I think I'm addicted to my phone! أعتقد أننى مدمن لهاتفى!
- I spent lots of money in an online game by mistake.
أنفقت كثيراً من المال فى لعبة على الإنترنت عن طريق الخطأ.

General Exercises on Lessons 3& 4



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Ali are talking about technology.

Ahmed : What are you reading about, Ali?

Ali : ❶ .... !

Ahmed : Are you interested in modern technology?

Ali : ❷ ....

Ahmed : ❸ .... ?

Ali : Because technology becomes very important for everyone.

Ahmed : ❹ .... ?

Ali : Yes, of course, computer, mobile and internet are all forms of technology.

Ahmed : Which one is the most important form?

Ali : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Most young people are .... to mobile phones.
   a. addicted b. interested c. worried d. amazed
2. My head hurts, I have a ....
   a. backache b. headache c. stomachache d. toothache
3. If you do something without intending to do it, it's means you do it by ....
   a. advice b. addiction c. mistake d. night
4. I can't find my watch. It ....
   a. hurt b. disappeared c. sent d. found

Exercises on Language

5. If it rains, you ...... take your umbrella.
   a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. need
6. You shouldn't watch videos on the internet if your head .... SB
   a. will hurt b. hurting c. hurts d. would hurt

7. If you .... someone, you shouldn't make friends with them online. **SB**

a. didn't know b. don't know c. not know d. won't know

8. If you see people being horrible online, you .... tell your parents. **SB**

a. should b. won't c. are d. shouldn't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When you .... (had) much money, you should travel abroad.
2. What .... (would) you do when you meet the manager?
3. You should visit your grandparents when you .... (had) enough time.
4. You .... (should) chat to people you don't know. **SB**

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on: **WB**

"How do you think life will change in the future?" (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What do you think will happen in the future?**
- **Do you think we will travel in time?**
- **Do you think we will live on the moon?**
- **Do you think we will have flying cars?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **In the future, I think** ....
- **I think we will travel** ....
- **I don't think we'll live** ....
- **I think we'll have** ....



SB pages 9-11 WB pages 74-76

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

enough	كافى	video games	ألعاب الفيديو
outside	بالخارج	order (ed)	يطلب / يأمر

Useful Phrases

watch videos online	يشاهد فيديوهات عبر الإنترنت	spend (time) on screens	يقضى (وقت) أمام شاشات
check social media	يتفحص وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	have eye problems	يعانى من مشاكل فى البصر
get enough sleep	يحصل على قدر نوم كافى	spend hours playing	يقضى ساعات فى اللعب
		damage your hearing	يسبب ضررًا لحاسة السمع

Vocabulary

debate	مناظرة/جدال	though	بالرغم من ذلك
exercise	تمارين رياضية	idea	فكرة
screen	شاشة	wheel	عجلة
view	رأى / وجهة نظر	transport	النقل
faithfully / sincerely	بإخلاص	regards	تحيات
dangers	مخاطر	damage (d)	يتلف
robot	إنسان آلى	improve (d)	يُحسّن
clear	واضح	text (ed)	يرسل رسالة نصيّة
ear problems	مشاكل سمعية	wish (ed) (n.)	يتمنى / أمنية
surname	لقب (اسم العائلة)		

Expressions & Prepositions

give ... headaches	تسبب صداع لـ...	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
get a headache	يصاب بصداع	once an hour	مرة فى الساعة
order ... on a website	يطلب...من على موقع	go on wheels	يسير على عجلات
go online	يدخل على الانترنت	go on holiday	يذهب لقضاء إجازة

stop ... sleeping	يمنع ... من النوم	bad for	ضار بـ
the reason why	السبب الذى من أجله	late into the night	فى وقت متأخر ليلاً
children aged 6	أطفال أعمارهم ٦ سنوات	In my view / opinion	فى رأيى
look forward to + V-ing. / n	يتطلع إلى	from my point of view	من وجهة نظرى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
teach	يعلّم	taught	taught
become	يصبح	became	become
ride	يركب (دراجة... الخ)	rode	ridden

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
outside	بالخارج	outdoors	inside / indoors	بالداخل
online	عبر الإنترنت	on the internet	offline	بدون الإنترنت
positive	إيجابى	useful	negative	سلبى
clear	واضح	obvious	unclear	غير واضح

Definitions

order يطلب : ask someone to make, supply[1], or deliver[2] food or an object

١- يمد
٢- يوصل

Language Notes

1) enough

- تستخدم (enough) بمعنى (كافى / بدرجة كافية) كما يلى:

صفة / حال + enough + to + inf.

Ex. Sami was clever enough to get high marks.

Ex. He is tall enough to reach the shelf.

- من الممكن أن يلى (enough) اسم:

Ex. We don't have enough money to buy a car.

2) all

- تستخدم (all) بمعنى (كل ...) كما يلي:

1- all + اسم يُعد جمع + فعل الفاعل جمع	2- all + اسم مفرد لا يعد + فعل الفاعل مفرد
Ex. All my friends are coming to the party.	Ex. All Ali's money is at home.

3) Email Writing

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية لتبدأ / لتنهي رسالة بريد الكتروني (في حالة معرفة اسم المرسل إليه):

Dear	عزيزي/عزيزتي	Kind Regards	أطيب التحيات
Yours sincerely	محدثك بإخلاص	Best Wishes	أطيب التمنيات

- يمكن استخدام الاختصارات الآتية بعد (Dear):

Mr.	السيد: للإشارة لرجل بشكل مهذب
Mrs.	السيدة: للإشارة لسيدة متزوجة بشكل مهذب (ويوضع بعدها اسم الزوج)
Ms	السيدة: للإشارة لسيدة بشكل مهذب (دون تحديد ما إذا كانت متزوجة أم لا) وينطق حرف (s) كنطق (z).

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية لتبدأ /لتنهي بريد الكتروني (في حالة عدم معرفة اسم المرسل إليه):

Dear Sir / Madam	عزيزي السيد/السيدة	Yours faithfully	محدثك بإخلاص

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This street is wide .... to drive down it.
   a. enough b. too c. much d. many
2. All the milk in the fridge .... fresh.
   a. have b. are c. is d. does







استمع إلى النصوص

The dangers of technology

١- يرسل رسالة نصية
٢- نوم كافي

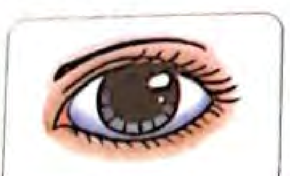
Sleep : Many people text[1], check social media or watch videos online late into the night. Then they don't get enough sleep[2].

Eye problems : If you spend a lot of time on screens[3], you can have eye problems[4] and headaches[5].

Ear problems : Listening to loud music or films through[6] headphones can damage[7] your hearing[8].

Exercises : Many people spend hours playing video games or watching TV and don't spend enough time outside[9] doing exercise.

٣- الشاشات
٤- مشاكل في العين
٥- صداع
٦- عبر
٧- يتلف
٨- السمع
٩- بالخارج



SB Page (10)

New Message

Dear Sir / Madam,

I ordered[1] a new mobile phone last week and the delivery[2] was today. When I opened the box, the screen was damaged. I would like to change[3] the phone for a new one that is not damaged. Can you tell me how I can do this?

Yours faithfully[4],

Lama Sabri

١- طلبت
٢- التوصيل
٣- يغير
٤- المخلص لك

Send



WB Page (75)

New Message

Dear Sir / Madam,

I ordered a new game last week on your website[1]. The delivery was today. When I opened the box, I found that I ordered a game for children aged[2] 6-9 by mistake[3]. It didn't say this on your website. I was not happy about this because I want to play the game with my friends, and we are all 13 or 14.

I would like to change the game for a new one that is for the correct age[4].

Can you tell me how I can do this?

I look forward to[5] hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Haytham Shabana

١- موقع على الإنترنت
٢- بالغ من العمر
٣- بالخطأ
٤- العمر المناسب
٥- يتطلع إلى

Send


WB Page (75)

New Message

Hi Fatma,

The jacket I ordered online arrived today, but it is the wrong colour! I ordered a blue jacket and this one is red. I'm going to ask them how to change it!

See you soon,

love Maya

Send



Audioscript

WB Page (74)

Hanan : Do you think that all computer games are bad for you, Lama?

Lama : From my point of view[1], not all computer games are bad. Some of them can help you to learn things.

Hanan : I agree. If you don't play computer games all the time, it shouldn't be a problem[2].

Lama : It's not a good idea to play games late at night though[3].

Hanan : I agree. In my opinion[4], playing games late at night stops you sleeping.

Lama : Yes, it's a good idea to only play quiet, calm games in the evening.

Hanan : If you only play games that teach[5] you things in the evening, it should be fine.

١- من وجهة نظري
٢- مشكلة
٣- بالرغم من ذلك
٤- في رأيي
٥- يعلم



SB Page (9)



Narrator:

What do you use when you want to find out the time? Do you use a watch[1]... or do you use a clock[2]?

These clocks either use numbers to tell the time... or they use hands[3]. These hands show hours, minutes[4] and seconds[5].

But how did people know the time in the past? In Ancient Egypt, people used sundials[6]. Sundials use the position of the sun to tell the time.

Then, in the year 1524, a scientist[7] from Damascus[8] called Taqi al-Din invented a watch that looked like the watches of today. It had three hands to show hours, minutes and seconds. It was also small, so people could carry it with them.

١- ساعة يد
٢- ساعة حائط
٣- عقارب الساعة
٤- دقائق
٥- ثواني
٦- ساعات شمسية
٧- عالم
٨- مدينة دمشق

But watches today don't only tell you the time. Some watches will say that you should do exercise if you are sitting at a computer for a long time! And some have apps, such as maps[9] that will give you directions[10] if you are lost.

What will the watches of the future be like? Some will be like modern mobile phones. If someone calls you, you will be able to see them on a special video screen. And some will look after your health. They will tell you what medicine you should take if you are ill, or that you should see a doctor.

٩- خرائط
١٠- إتجاهات

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. I look forward to ...... from my friend. المنوفية – السادات 2022
   a. hear b. hearing c. hears d. heard
2. .... my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches. SB
   a. From b. In c. By d. On
3. Technology can be bad .... your health. SB
   a. at b. to c. for d. about
4. .... my opinion, eating too much food is bad for our health. كفر الشيخ 2022
   a. With b. On c. At d. In
5. Our school held a/an ...... which is called "Technology and pollution". حدائق القبة 2023
   a. debate b. interview c. conversation d. article
6. Social media is very useful, but it has ...., too. إدارة قليوب 2023
   a. information b. ways c. dangers d. hobbies

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. When I got up, it was still dark ....
   a. countryside b. side c. abroad d. outside
8. The room was large .... for all the students.
   a. too b. so c. enough d. such
9. I .... a jacket online and the delivery was yesterday.
   a. ordered b. wore c. tried d. gave
10. It's my habit to .... social media to get the latest news.
    a. choose b. damage c. break d. check
11. A bike has two ....
    a. wheels b. engines c. machines d. tools

12. This video game is useful for children .... nine.
   a. age   b. ages   c. ageing   d. aged
13. Salah spends a lot of time watching videos ....
   a. online   b. lines   c. outline   d. line
14. You should .... enough sleep. You look really tired.
   a. check   b. get   c. spend   d. watch

Speaking

1) Giving positive opinions

إعطاء آراء إيجابية

- لإعطاء آراء إيجابية بخصوص شيء يمكن أن تستخدم:

- **......is a good idea.**
  .... هي/هو فكرة جيدة.

Ex. Using technology to help you exercise is a good idea.

- **If you use ... well, it should help you + inf. .....**
  لو تستخدم ... جيداً ينبغي أن يساعدك أن.....

Ex. If you use technology well, it should help you become healthier.

- **If you don't become addicted to ..., you will be fine.**
  لو لم تصبح مدمناً على .....، سوف تكون بخير.

Ex. If you don't become addicted to technology, you will be fine.

2) Giving negative opinions

إعطاء آراء سلبية

- لإعطاء آراء سلبية بخصوص شيء يمكن أن تستخدم:

- **It isn't a good idea to + inf.**
  ليست فكرة جيدة أن ....

Ex. It isn't a good idea to spend too much time watching TV.

- **From my point of view, ...can + inf.**
  من وجهة نظري .... يمكنه أن ....

Ex. From my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches.

- **In my opinion, ...is / can be bad for ...**   في رأيي .... (يمكن أن يكون) ضار بـ ....

Ex. In my opinion, all technology is bad for your health.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Rashad and Omar are talking about types of technology.

Rashad : Do you know much about technology?

Omar : ❶ ....

Rashad : What type of technology do you use every day?

Omar : ❷ ....

Rashad : ❸ ....?

Omar : I use the internet to communicate with my friends and play games online.

Rashad : ❹ ....?

Omar : Yes, sometimes I've problems online.

Rashad : What should you do if you are worried about something online?

Omar : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mahmoud can have eye problems because he .... a lot of time on screens.

   a. spends b. checks c. hears d. listens

2. **A:** Why do the children spend a lot of time .... ?

   B: They are playing basketball.

   a. seaside b. countryside c. side d. outside

3. I'd like to change this broken mobile phone .... a new one.

   a. in b. of c. for d. off

4. When I work on my computer for a long time, I .... a headache.

   a. make b. give c. take d. get

5. We didn't know the reason .... the manager was angry yesterday.

   a. for b. why c. what d. which

Unit 7

Review

Key Vocabulary

headphones	سماعات الرأس (جمع دائمًا)	speed	سرعة
motorbike	دراجة نارية (موتوسيكل)	electricity	الكهرباء
solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	app (application)	تطبيق (على الهاتف أو الكمبيوتر)
helicopter	طائرة مروحية (هليكوبتر)	horrible	فظيع / سئ جدًا
addicted to	مدمن على (معتاد على)	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	video games	ألعاب الفيديو
headache	صداع	explore (d)	يستكشف
lever	ذراع تشغيل آلة	pull (ed)	يسحب
impossible	مستحيل	disappear (ed)	يختفى
enough	كافى	order (ed)	يطلب/يأمر
outside	بالخارج		

Useful Phrases

have money	يملك مالاً	spend money	ينفق مالاً
have a choice	لديه اختيار	spend time	يقضى وقت
have time	لديه وقت	waste money	يهدر (يضيع) المال
save money	يدّخر المال	waste time	يهدر (يضيع) الوقت
save time	يوفر الوقت	wait for a delivery	ينتظر توصيل (طلب)
stay outside	يبقى بالخارج	live on the moon	يعيش على القمر
try eating fruit	يجرب تناول الفاكهة	have flying cars	يمتلك سيارات طائرة
understand a lesson	يفهم درس	have no illnesses	ليس لديه أمراض
travel through time	يسافر عبر الزمن	explore the bottom of the sea	يستكشف قاع البحر
watch videos online	يشاهد فيديوهات عبر الإنترنت	spend (time) on screens	يقضى (وقت) أمام شاشات
check social media	يتفحص وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	have eye problems	يعانى من مشاكل فى البصر
get enough sleep	يحصل على قدر نوم كافى	spend hours playing	يقضى ساعات فى اللعب

Verbs & Nouns

Verb		Noun	
correct (ed)	يصحح - يصوب	correction	تصحيح - تصويب
invent (ed)	يخترع	invention	إختراع
predict (ed)	يتنبأ	prediction	تنبؤ
translate (d)	يترجم	translation	ترجمة

Language

1- will ('ll) / will not (won't) for future predictions

يتكون زمن المستقبل البسيط كالآتى :

Form التكوين

• نستخدم (will / won't) للتنبؤ بشىء ما فى المستقبل كالآتى:

subject فاعل (اسم/ضمير)	→	will = 'll سوف will not = won't سوف لا	→	inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. Technology will help us in the future.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

• تستخدم الكلمات الآتية للتعبير عن المستقبل:

- next (week - month - year) — (الأسبوع - الشهر - العام) القادم
- one day — يوما ما
- tomorrow — غدًا
- in the future — فى المستقبل
- soon — قريباً

Question السؤال

(كلمة استفهام) Will + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل...?

Ex. Will our life change in the future?
Yes, it will. / No, it won't.

2- (If / When) for future predictions and giving advice

• تستخدم لعمل تنبؤات فى المستقبل كما يلى:

If / When	→	مضارع بسيط	→	will + inf.

Ex. If I find a good jacket online, I will buy it.

• يستخدم الأسلوب التالى لتقديم النصح:

If / When	→	مضارع بسيط	→	should / shouldn't + inf.

Ex. If you have a problem, you should tell me about it.



1) Talking about new inventions
الحديث عن الإختراعات الحديثة

- نسأل ونجيب عن ما نأمله فى المستقبل بخصوص الاختراعات الجديدة فنقول:

A: What invention do you hope we will see in the future?
B: I hope...... will be invented soon.
A: Do you agree that........ will / won't be very useful in Egypt?
B: I agree that .... will / won't be useful in Egypt!

2) Making predictions in the future
عمل تنبؤات فى المستقبل

- يمكن عمل تنبؤات مستقبلية باستخدام **If + present simple → will + inf** كالآتى:

- If I help my mother at the weekend, she will have more free time.

3) Talking about technology
التحدث عن التكنولوجيا

- للسؤال والإجابة عن أنواع التكنولوجيا التى نستخدمها نقول:

A: What types of technology do you use every day?
B: I think I am addicted to...........
A: What do you use them for?
B: I spend hours watching / playing..........
A: Do you have any problems with technology?
B: I think I'm addicted to my phone!
- I spent lots of money in an online game by mistake.

4) Giving positive opinions
إعطاء آراء إيجابية

- لإعطاء آراء إيجابية بخصوص شئ نستخدم:

- ......is a good idea..
- If you use ... well, it should help you + inf .....
- If you don't become addicted to ..., you will be fine..

5) Giving negative opinions
إعطاء آراء سلبية

- لإعطاء آراء سلبية بخصوص شئ نستخدم:

- It isn't a good idea to + inf.
- From my point of view, ...can + inf.
- In my opinion,.... is / can be bad for.....

General Exercises on Unit 7

1 Complete the following dialogue:

البحيرة - رشيد 2022

Ahmed is talking to Adham about a mobile.

Ahmed : Is it your new mobile?

Adham : ❶ ....

Ahmed : When did you buy it?

Adham : ❷ ....

Ahmed : ❸ ....?

Adham : To study my lessons on it.

Ahmed : ❹ ....?

Adham : Yes, it has a lot of games.

Ahmed : How much does it cost?

Adham : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. My little sister is ...... to sweets. She always wants to eat them! 2023 إدارة رشيد WB

   a. damaged b. addicted c. broken d. hated

2. People need ...... to run machines.

   a. electricity b. flash c. light d. air

3. Can you ...... the English passage into Arabic? 2023

   a. translate b. transport c. invite d. reduce

4. We are really hungry. We are waiting for the ....

   a. trip b. bus c. picnic d. delivery

5. Do you think that there will be many ...... in your English homework? WB

   a. correct b. corrections c. invent d. inventions

6. I think people will visit other planets one day, but it is ...... to go to the sun. WB
   a. possible b. probable c. easy d. impossible
7. The door was very heavy, so we had to ...... it open. WB
   a. call b. pull c. lock d. look
8. When they arrived at the hotel, they decided to ...... its large gardens. WB
   a. invent b. explore c. expect d. export
9. The mobile is the greatest .... القليوبية - طوخ 2022
   a. invitation b. discovery c. invention d. translation
10. ...... media are websites and apps that let people talk to each other online. WB
    a. Social b. Careful c. Electric d. Expensive

Exercises on Language

11. If you want to get to the park quickly, you ...... the bus. WB
    a. would take b. take c. should take d. took
12. If you go to the Egyptian Museum, you ...... see Ali because he is in Luxor. WB
    a. should b. will c. won't d. don't
13. We won't go to the beach this weekend if it ...... very windy. WB
    a. is b. will be c. was d. should be

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. I look forward to .... (see) you soon. إدارة بني سويف 2023
2. You .... (be) fit if you do some exercise.
3. If you .... (watched) TV for a long time, your eyes will hurt.
4. I .... (punish) Sameh when I meet him tomorrow.
5. Hala will feel happy when she .... (visit) her grandparents.
6. The world .... (be) different in the future.

WB

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

(مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

to your friend Fatma telling her about a problem you had with an online delivery
- **Your friend's email address is fatma77@gmail.com.**
- **Your name is Mariam and your email address is mariam80@hotmail.com.**

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكترونى:

- **Why do you write this email?**
- **When was the delivery?**
- **What did you order?**
- **What was the problem?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I'm writing to tell you about** ----------.
- **I ordered** --------------------------.
- **The delivery was** ------------------.
- **I'm still waiting for**------------------.

Unit 7

Al Azhar Test



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. It's important not to become addicted to ....
   a. speed b. video games c. technology d. social media
2. Try taking a .... every day for an hour or more.
   a. break b. headache c. game d. time

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the the following dialogue:

Eman and Wafaa are talking about technology.

Wafaa : What are you reading, Eman?
Eman : ① ....
Wafaa : Are you interested in technology?
Eman : ② ....
Wafaa : ③ ....?
Eman : I think the mobile phone is the most important invention.
Wafaa : You are right, I agree with you.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... can fly without wings.
   a. bike b. helicopter c. taxi d. car
2. Arabic is the national .... in Egypt.
   a. language b. meal c. flag d. team
3. After hard work, one should .... a break to rest.
   a. go b. do c. make d. have
4. He has a headache, so he should .... some medicine.
   a. took b. takes c. take d. taking
5. You .... make noise if your father is reading.
   a. will b. must c. should d. shouldn't

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In some countries, people first had televisions about 90 years ago. Before 1935, the picture on a TV screen was smaller than a post card. Most TV programmes

were in black and white. In 1940s, TV companies in the USA began to make colour programmes. However, colour TVs were very expensive, so most people who had televisions watched in black and white. Although Egypt had TVs in the 1960s, the country made its first colour TV programme in 1973. Also, the first remote controls were made in 1948.

A. Answer the following questions:

1.When did people first have televisions?

....

2. Whey didn't most people in the past use colour TVs?

....

3. How big was the picture on a TV screen before 1935?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Egypt made its first colour TV in ....

a. 1935 b. 1973 c. 1960 d. 1940

4. Colour TV programmes were .... those ones in black and white.

a. during b. before c. after d. at the same time

(5) Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. friends - meet - **A group** - dinner - for - of - park - at. ....
2. video - playing - **People** - many - spend hours - games. ....
3. you - ill - are - you - **If** - see - a doctor - should. ....
4. saves - time - online - **Shopping** - money - and. ....

E Writing

(6) Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on: (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Life in the future"

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What do you think life will be like in the future?**
- **What will people be more addicted to?**
- **What will modern devices help people to do?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **Life in the future will be** ....
- **People will be more addicted to** ....
- **Modern devices will help people to** ....

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني وردت بالوحدة

Paragraphs

1- Are you for or against online shopping?

Shopping online is great! Firstly, it saves time. Most people don't want to spend much time travelling to the shops. They can stay at home and buy the things they want in a few minutes. Secondly, they have more choices online. Also, if more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on roads and less pollution! However, some people don't like online shopping. They like to try the things they are buying first. Also, they don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery.

2- How do you think life will change in the future?

What will happen in the future? This is a question most of us ask. For me, I think travelling in time will be impossible. I don't think we will live on the moon. It's impossible. I think we'll have flying cars. I hope we will have no illnesses. I think scientists will explore the bottom of the sea. They may discover new animals and new kinds of fish. I think life in the future is still a secret.

3- Life in the future (Azhar)

Technology changes the world. People will use social media more than they do today. They will be able to travel in time by using time machines. They will have flying cars. They will live on the moon.

4- Positive and negative sides of using technology

Using technology has become very important in our life. Most of our daily activities need technology. Using technology is sometimes positive. It saves effort and time. The negative side of using technology is that it sometimes wastes our money and time. Playing computer games is an example of that. But should schools use computer games in the classroom? I think it'll be positive if that is related to teaching children. They will be more interested and excited, but this should be controlled well.

Emails

- A problem you had with an online delivery

From : mariam08@hotmail.com.
To : fatma77@gmail.com.
Subject : A problem with an online delivery

Dear Fatma,

I am writing to tell you about a problem I had with an online delivery. You know I like online shopping. It saves me time. I ordered a new laptop three weeks ago. The delivery was yesterday but I am still waiting. I need to get it as soon as possible. I emailed the seller and he/she replied that he/she would send it as soon as possible.

Yours faithfully,
Mariam

Unit 7

TEST



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. Online shopping is ....!
   a. bad   b. light   c. great   d. heavy
2. Online shopping saves the speaker's ....
   a. time   b. money   c. water   d. gas
3. The speaker doesn't want to spend lots of time .... to the shops.
   a. walking   b. running   c. travelling   d. flying
4. The speaker can stay at .... and buy the things he/she wants in a few minutes.
   a. farm   b. zoo   c. school   d. home

B Language Functions

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

A presenter is talking to Mustafa about technology.

Presenter : What do you think of technology?

Mustafa : 1 ....

Presenter : 2 ....?

Mustafa : Because people can spend much time on online games!

Presenter : 3 ....?

Mustafa : Yes, I do. I like playing games with my friends.

Presenter : Do you like online shopping?

Mustafa : 4 ....

Presenter : What else do people do on the internet?

Mustafa : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

James and Tom are scientists from England. They came to Egypt by plane. They stayed at the Sheraton in Cairo for four days. In Cairo, they went to Cairo University to meet some scientists. The two scientists talked about their new invention. It was about

changing roads into solar panels! This invention used strong glass that people could drive on and make electricity at the same time. The scientists at Cairo University liked the idea very much. They thought it was great.

James and Tom visited the Egyptian Museum, the Cairo Tower and the Pyramids. They also went shopping at Khan Al-Khalili. They bought some nice presents for their friends. Then, they went to Luxor and Aswan where they spent three days.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

----

2. What was James and Tom's invention about?

----

3. What do you think of the invention?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. James and Tom spent .... in Cairo.
   a. a week　b. three days
   c. four days　d. two days
5. James and Tom are from ....
   a. Egypt　b. England　c. the USA　d. Turkey
6. The invention would help people get ....
   a. air　b. food　c. water　d. energy

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I asked my aunt to .... a French internet article into Arabic. إدارة بنا – بني سويف 2023
   a. build　b. check　c. translate　d. damage
2. My sister is .... to her phone. She always wants to use it. ادارة ابو النمرس الجيزة 2023
   a. horrible　b. addicted　c. happy　d. proud
3. I lost my .... yesterday, so I couldn't listen to my favourite songs.
   ادارة شرق شبرا الخيمة 2023
   a. drones　b. headphones　c. jacket　d. app
4. Do you .... that the weather will get hotter in the future? WB
   a. predict　b. prediction　c. invent　d. invention
5. It was cloudy this morning, but the clouds soon .... when the sun came out. WB
   a. appeared　b. disappeared　c. hurt　d. damaged

6. This email is in Spanish. Could you .... it for me? البحيرة - 2022
   a. test b. say c. waste d. translate
7. I asked my teacher for help because I couldn't .... a new lesson. WB
   a. stay b. visit c. understand d. try
8. If I help my sister with her homework. She'll .... it quickly. المنوفية 2023
   a. finishing b. finishes c. finished d. finish
9. If Mai .... too much, she will put on weight. بنها 2023
   a. eats b. eat c. eating d. ate
10. When you ..... online games, you should check that you can't buy anything. WB
   a. played b. plays c. playing d. play

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If she exercises more, she .... (be) fit. القاهرة 2023
2. If you .... (didn't) leave now, you will be late for school. القاهرة 2023
3. This machine won't .... (being) able to fly very high. SB
4. If you .... (not do) sleep early, you won't get up early.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on: WB

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

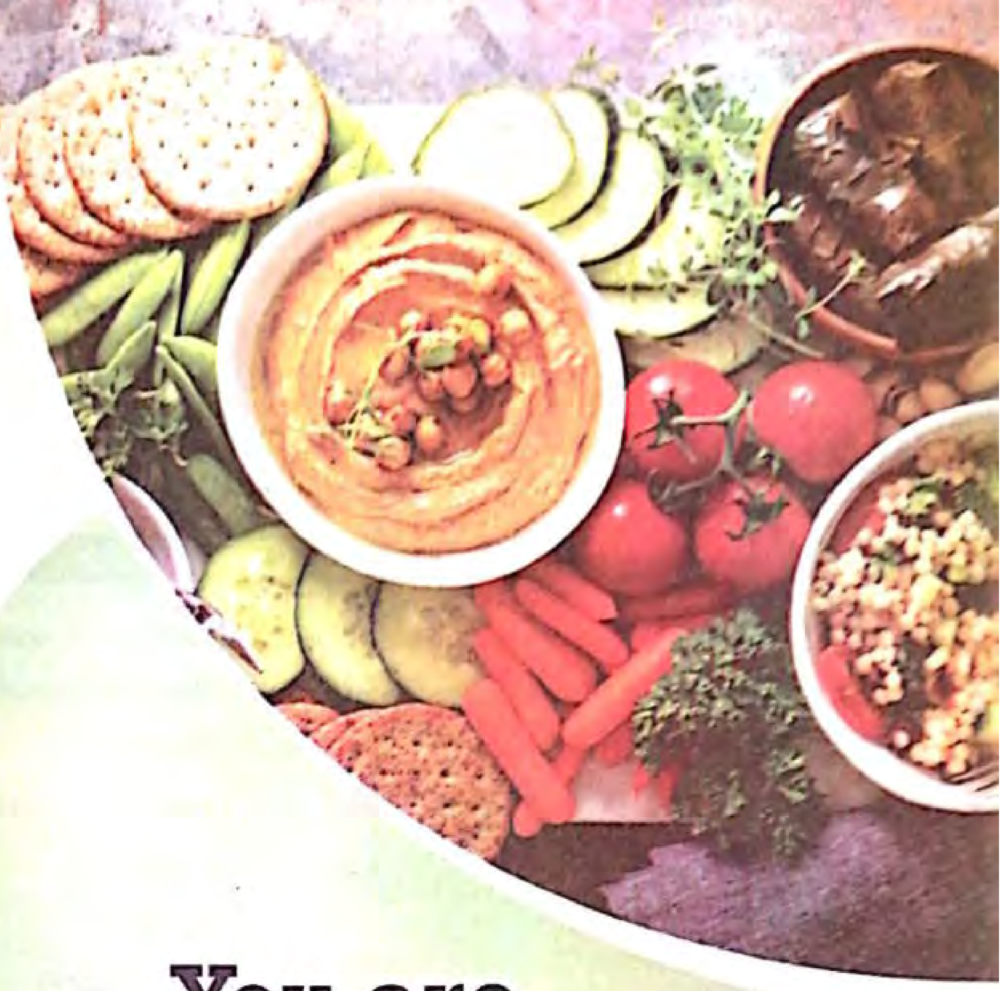
"Positive and negative sides of using technology"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- What do you think of technology?
- What positive and negative sides of technology are?
- Do you think schools should use computer games in the classroom?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- Technology is --.
- The positive / negative sides of technology are ------------ .



New Hello!





You are what you eat

Objectives

Reading:
Texts about what people eat; a healthy food quiz; a recipe; an article about unusual food; an article about a healthy island

Writing:
An email about a favourite snack; a paragraph about a country's diet; a paragraph about sleep

Listening:
A discussion about favourite snacks; a conversation at dinner; teenagers sharing their worries about food and health

Speaking:
Describing food; offering, accepting and refusing food politely; giving advice about being healthy

Language:
a lot, a little and a few

Life Skills:
Self-management

SB / WB Answers جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب





Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

full	ممتلئ (شبعان)	allergic to	لديه حساسية من
snack	وجبة خفيفة	energy	طاقة
fast food	الوجبات السريعة		

Food and Snacks

falafel	الفلافل	rojak	الروجاك (وجبة فواكة شعبية بماليزيا)
fava beans	فول أخضر	sfenj	كيك السفنج (فطائر حلوة شعبية بالمغرب)
chicken	لحم الدجاج/دجاجة	hawawshi	حواوشي (أكلة مصرية)
pizza	بيتزا	samosa	السمبوسة (وجبة حارة شعبية بالهند)
nuts	مكسرات	chips	رقائق بطاطس مقلية
pasta	مكرونة	olives	زيتون
spices	توابل - بهارات	rice pudding	أرز باللبن
watermelon	بطيخ	chocolate	شيكولاته
grapes	عنب	vegetable	خضار

Food Adjectives

delicious	لذيذ	spicy	متبل (كثير التوابل)/حار
juicy	كثير العصارة	sweet	حلو المذاق
salty	مالح	popular	شائع - محبوب

Vocabulary

thirsty	عطشان	practice	تدريب
however	بالرغم من ذلك	teenager	مراهق (شخص عمره من ١٣ الى ١٩ سنة)
type = kind	نوع	plate	طبق
netball	لعبة كرة الشبكة	power	قوة/طاقة
careful	حريص	fat	دهن
washing up	غسيل الأطباق	oven	فرن
squash	لعبة الإسكواش	describe (d)	يصف
left (adj)	متبقى	invite (d)	يدعو (المناسبة)
athletics team	فريق ألعاب القوى	taste (d) (n)	يتذوق - مذاق

Expressions & Prepositions

go running	يمارس رياضة الجرى	(be) on a team	يكون عضو فى فريق
get home	يصل المنزل	food with a good taste	طعام ذو مذاق جيد
get ill	يمرض	eat .... with	يتناول ... مع ....
give energy	يعطى طاقة	eat ... for breakfast	يتناول ... على الإفطار
do the washing up	يغسل الأطباق	thanks for	شكراً على
have a rest	يستريح	invite ... to ...	يدعو ... على ...
make falafel	يطهو فلافل (طعمية)	on the way home	فى الطريق للمنزل

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

جميع الأفعال غير المنتظمة مجمعة فى آخر الكتاب

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
put	يضع	put	put
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
lucky	محظوظ	fortunate	unlucky	غير محظوظ
popular	شائع - محبوب	famous / known	unpopular	غير محبوب
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	terrible	سئ

Words & Meanings

قم بالتدريب فى ملحق الكتاب

allergic	لديه حساسية	- having a condition[1] that makes you feel ill after you eat, breathe or touch something	١- حالة ٢- قوة / طاقة
energy	طاقة	- something that gives you the power[2] to do things - the ability to do a lot of work or activity without becoming tired	
fast food	وجبات سريعة	- food that is quick and easy to buy or cook - food that can be served very quickly in a café or restaurant because it is already prepared	
juicy	كثير العصارة	full of juice	

salty	مالح	tasting of salt or containing[3] a lot of salt — ٣- محتويًا على
spicy	متبل/حار	containing the tastes from spices
snacks		a small amount of food after meals.

Language Notes

1) However

يمكن تستخدم (However) للربط بين فكرتين/جملتين متناقضتين :

Ex. Omar is short. However, he is good at basketball.

2) so / because

تستخدم (because) للربط بين جملتين لتوضيح سبب حدث معين كما يلى:

النتيجة ← because ← السبب

Ex. Nada was sad because she failed her exam.

تستخدم (so) للربط بين جملتين لتوضيح نتيجة حدث معين كما يلى:

السبب ← so ← النتيجة

Ex. I don't like nuts, so I won't eat that cake.

3) Verbs + مفعول + to + inf.

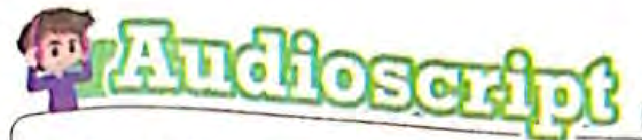
بعض الأفعال مثل (ask - advise - tell) يمكن أن يتبعها مفعول ثم (to + inf.)

Ex. Ahmed asked me to describe my favourite snack.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He was really ill. ...., he went to school.
   a. So b. As c. Because d. However
2. He put on weight, ... he decided to join a sports centre.
   a. so b. because c. to d. for
3. Magid felt happy .... he passed his exams with high marks.
   a. so b. because c. to d. at
4. My father advised me .... hard.
   a. study b. studying c. to study d. studied



SB Page (13)





Speaker 1: Sfenj[1] is a kind of cake from Morocco[2]. It has lots of sugar and fat[3] in it and is very sweet[4], so it is not very healthy, but I love it! We sometimes eat sfenj for breakfast and sometimes as a snack[5] with some tea or a cup of coffee.

Speaker 2: In many places, people use fava beans[6] to make falafel. They are the best! Falafel is really delicious[7] and it is very popular[8] in Egypt.

Speaker 3: In Britain[9], we often buy chips from a fish and chip shop[10]. People often put some salt on their chips. I don't put any salt on mine because I don't like salty food. It is not very healthy.

Speaker 4: You can buy samosas[11] on the street everywhere in India[12]. Samosas have spicy[13] vegetables inside them. People often eat samosas for a snack. I love to eat them with some hot tea.

Speaker 5: Rojak[14] is a fruit snack you can buy in the street in Malaysia[15] and people also make it at home. Rojak is very sweet and juicy[16]. People use different spices in different parts of the country, but it's always delicious.

١- السفلج (فطائر مغربية)
٢- دولة المغرب
٣- دهن
٤- حلو الطعم
٥- وجبة خفيفة
٦- فول أخضر
٧- لذيذ
٨- محبوب/شائع
٩- بريطانيا
١٠- محل سمك ومقرمشات
١١- السمبوسة (وجبة هندية)
١٢- دولة الهند
١٣- متبل/حار
١٤- الروجاك (طبق من ماليزيا)
١٥- دولة ماليزيا
١٦- كثير العصارة

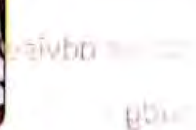












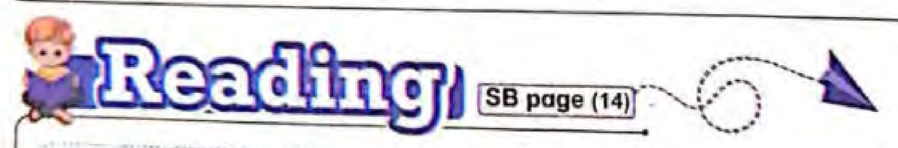
SB Page (15)

Grandmother : Would you like some more chicken[1], Amal?
Amal : Yes, please, just a little.
Grandmother : And would you like some more beans, too?
Amal : Yes, thank you, grandmother ... stop, that's enough[2]! I mustn't eat too much.
Huda : Do you like chicken, Amal?
Amal : Yes, I love grandmother's spicy chicken. It's the best!
Huda : Thank you, grandmother, that was a delicious dinner[3]!
Grandmother : Would you girls like some more rice pudding[4]?
Huda : No, thank you, I'm really full[5].
Grandmother : What about you, Amal?
Amal : Thank you, but I really couldn't. Why don't you have a rest[6] now, grandmother? Huda and I can take the plates[7] to the kitchen and we'll do the washing up[8].

١- لحم الدجاج
٢- كاف
٣- عشاء
٤- أرز باللبن
٥- ممتلئ (شبعان)
٦- راحة
٧- أطباق
٨- غسيل الأطباق

WB Page (78)

Grandma : Would you like some cake, Leila?
Leila : Yes, please, just a little. I mustn't eat too much.
Grandma : Would you like a cup of tea with the cake?
Leila : Thank you, I like tea.
Grandma : Do you like sugar in your tea?
Leila : Yes, please, but that's enough. I only like a little sugar.
Grandma : Here you are, tea with cake!



What I eat



My name's Imad. I am allergic to[1] nuts[2], so I must be careful[3] what I eat. If I eat something with nuts in it, I will get ill! For most of the time, this is not a problem. However[4], I like sweet things, and there are a few types[5] of cake that have nuts in them, so I can't eat those.

I'm lucky[6] because my mother makes me many different, delicious things to eat at home. She says I should eat more vegetables and salad. I have a lot of fruit, and that's healthy!

١- لديه حساسية من
٢- مكسرات
٣- حريص
٤- بالرغم من ذلك
٥- أنواع
٦- محظوظ

I'm Mustafa. I'm on the school athletics team[7] and I go running every day, so I need food that gives me energy[8]. I eat a lot of rice and pasta every day. I also eat a few healthy snacks, like nuts.

After athletics practice[9], my friends and I sometimes get some fast food[10], like pizzas, on the way home, but I try not to eat too much!

٧- فريق ألعاب القوى
٨- طاقة
٩- تدريب
١٠- وجبات سريعة

WB Page (77)

New Message

Hi Tom,

How are you? Thanks for your last email. You asked me to describe[1] my favourite snack. I love hawawshi[2] and I often have it when I get home from school. It is easy to make. First, you need some nice bread[3]. Then you put some meat and vegetables inside the bread. You can put some salt on it, too. I don't like to have any salt, though, because it is not very healthy. Now you cook it in the oven[4]. It is delicious! Do you have any favourite snacks?

Describe them to me in your next[5] email!

Best wishes,

Osama

Send

١- يصف
٢- حواوشي
٣- خبز
٤- فرن
٥- قادم

WB Page (78)

Judy plays squash[1] every week and needs to be healthy, so what does she eat? She is allergic to nuts, so she doesn't eat any cakes because they sometimes have nuts in them. She eats a lot of fish because it helps to make her strong. A few hours before a netball game[2], she always eats some fish with a lot of pasta, because this gives her energy. When she is playing netball, she drinks a little water. Then, after the game, she eats a few sweets. She does not have many because she knows they are not very good for her.

١- لعبة الاسكواش
٢- لعبة كرة الشبكة

Exercises on Vocabulary

يوجد تمرينات إضافية فى كراسة الواجب المنزلى

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. The water in the sea is .... SB
   a. sweet b. spicy c. juicy d. salty
2. .... is an example of fast food. WB
   a. Cheese b. Pasta c. Pizza d. Cake
3. Sfenj has lots of fat and sugar in it and it is very .... SB
   a. high b. sweet c. salty d. short
4. Falafel is really .... and it is very popular in Egypt. إدارة مستسما 2023 SB
   a. horrible b. terrible c. bad d. delicious
5. Many people are allergic to .... , so they don't eat cakes. WB
   a. pizzas b. nuts c. salad d. salt
6. I like eating .... fruits like watermelons and oranges. إدارة منيا القمح 2023
   a. spicy b. salty c. tasteless d. juicy
7. I am .... to fish. When I eat it, it makes me ill. إدارة البدرشين 2023
   a. addiction b. popular c. allergic d. ready
8. A .... is a small amount of food eaten between meals. إدارة أبو النمرس 2023
   a. snail b. snack c. snake d. smoke
9. Samosas have .... vegetables inside them. إدارة زفتى 2023
   a. plastic b. terrible c. spicy d. spring
10. I'm .... to nuts, I must care about what I eat. الزاوية الحمراء 2023
   a. kind b. polite c. allergic d. hungry

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. I met three of my friends .... my way home.
   a. at b. from c. of d. on
12. Carrots and potatoes are ....
   a. fruit b. nuts c. vegetables d. meat
13. We use .... to give food a special taste.
   a. spices b. stars c. skies d. spaces
14. That piece of meat is really .... I can't eat it.
   a. delicious b. salty c. popular d. fast

15. .... food is prepared quickly and is usually unhealthy.
a. Helpful b. Fast c. Slow d. Famous

16. I always eat fish with pasta because this gives me ....
a. sugar b. snow c. sweet d. energy

17. You should put the bread in a hot .... for 5 minutes.
a. oven b. fridge c. screen d. laptop

18. Habiba likes .... foods, so she adds much pepper to her food.
a. sweet b. spicy c. sugar d. full



A- Remember: Countable & Uncountable nouns

Nouns الأسماء

Countable nouns أسماء تعد

١- أسماء مفردة يسبقها (a / an)

- نستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن.

a pen - a door - a unit

- نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك.

an umbrella - an apple - an hour

٢- أسماء جمع كالتالي:

- جمع منتظم بإضافة (s):

a pen → pens / a book → books

- أسماء تنتهي بـ (sh- ch- s - x - o) يضاف لها (es):

a dish → dishes
a watch → watches
a bus → buses
a box → boxes
a tomato → tomatoes

- أسماء تنتهي بـ (y) يسبقها حرف ساكن فتحذف الـ (y) ويضاف (ies):

a city → cities / a lady → ladies

- أسماء تنتهي بـ (f / fe) فتحذف ويضاف (ves):

a wolf → wolves / a knife → knives

- أسماء ذات جمع غير منتظم فتحفظ:

a tooth → teeth / a man → men

Uncountable nouns أسماء لا تعد

- تأتي دائمًا مفردة ولا يسبقها (a/an) وتأخذ فعل مفرد.

من أمثلة الأسماء التي لا تعد:

١- المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة:

rice - meat - sugar - juice - bread - water - cheese - milk

٢- المواد الدراسية - المواد الخام - الأسماء المعنوية:

English - rubber - love

٣- أسماء أخرى:

information - news - rain - air- advice

- يمكن أن نستخدم ألفاظ التجزئة لتحويل الاسم الذي لا يعد إلى اسم يعد:

a piece of - قطعة من
a glass of - كوب من
a bottle of - زجاجة من

Ex. This piece of information is useful.

Ex. These pieces of information are useful.



١- تستخدم (كثير much) مع الاسماء التى لا تعد بينما تستخدم (كثير many) مع الاسماء التى تعد (الجمع):

Ex. We have got much sugar.

Ex. They have got many books.

٢- تذكر اشهر اسماء الطعام التى تعد/لا تعد:

Countable nouns		Uncountable nouns	
chips رقائق بطاطس	loaves أرغفة	sugar سكر	water مياه
beans فول	grapes حبات عنب	salt ملح	butter زبد
spices توابل	lentils عدس	tea شاى	koshari كشرى
nuts مكسرات	apples تفاح	pasta مكرونة	bread خبز

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The books over there .... mine.
   a. is b. has c. have d. are
2. The water of the Nile .... important for Egypt.
   a. does b. has c. is d. are

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The information dad gave me .... (were) important.
2. Three men .... (is) sitting in the room now.

B- some & any

1- some بعض

• تستخدم (some) فى الجملة الخبرية المثبتة مع الاسم الذى يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذى لا يعد:

Ex. I met some boys on my way home.

Ex. People often put some salt on their chips.



• تستخدم (some) فى السؤال للعرض أو الطلب.

Ex. Would you like some apples / rice?

Ex. Can I have some sweets / tea?

2- any أى

• تستخدم (any) فى الجملة الخبرية المنفية وفى السؤال مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. I don't put any books on that table.

Ex. Is there any water in the bottle?

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I really don't have .... money now.
   a. some b. many c. a lot d. any
2. Dad bought .... meat on his way home.
   a. any b. some c. a lot. d. many

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Is there .... (some) sugar in the fridge?
2. We have .... (any) bread in the kitchen.

C- a lot of / a little / a few

1- a lot of كثيراً من

• تستخدم (a lot of) غالباً في الجملة المثبتة مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) ومع الاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. I have got a lot of oranges.

Ex. They eat a lot of rice and pasta.

2- a few قليل / a little قليل

• تستخدم (a few) مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع):

Ex. I eat a few snacks.

• تستخدم (a little) مع الاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. We have a little salad.

Notes

١- تستخدم كلًا من (a few / a little) بمعني (قليل ولكنه يكفي):

Ex. There is a little cheese. You can have a sandwich.

٢- تستخدم كلًا من (few / little) بمعني (قليل ولا يكفي):

Ex. There is little cheese. You need to buy some more.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... boys liked eating pasta.
   a. A few b. A lot c. Much d. Any
2. **A:** Did you have any sugar? **B:** Yes, I had ....
   a. many b. a little c. a lot of d. a few

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This book will take you .... (a few) time to read.
2. .... (A little) students in my school visited London.

D- like / would like

• يستخدم الفعل (like) للتعبير عما نفضله أو نحبه:

like + n./ v-ing / to + inf.

Ex. I like orange juice, but I don't like tea.
Ex. He likes to have (having) fava beans for breakfast.

• تستخدم (would like) لتقديم العروض ولطلب الاشياء:

would like + n. / to + inf.

(To make offers)
(To ask for things)

Ex. What would you like for breakfast?
- I'd like (to have) some beans, please.

• تستخدم كلاهما فى السؤال كما يلى:

Do / Does + subject + like + n / v-ing / to + inf.....?

Ex. Do you like (drinking) orange juice?
Ex. Does your dad like to walk to work?

Would + subject + like + n / to + inf....?

Ex. Would you like (to have) some water? - Yes, please.



1- I like tea, but I don't like coffee.
• استخدمنا الفعل (like) هنا لأن الجملة تعبر عن شئ نفضله بشكل عام [لا يمكن استخدام (would like) هنا].

2- A: Would you like a sandwich? B: No, thank you.
• استخدمنا (Would .... like) هنا لان الجملة تعبر عن تقديم عرض فى موقف محدد وليس كلام عام عن التفضيل.

Exercises on Language

يوجد تمرينات إضافية فى كراسة الواجب المنزلى

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises 

1. There are ...... grapes left. Would you like some? إدارة سمسطا 2023
   a. a little b. a few c. much d. a lot
2. Leila likes ...... milk in her tea, but not very much. إدارة أبو حماد 2023
   a. a few b. any c. a lot d. a little
3. Dad has ...... time to do sport. He is very busy. إدارة منيا القمح 2023
   a. a little b. a lot c. many d. a few
4. Would you like ...... salt on your chips? إدارة أبو النمرس 2023
   a. a lot b. a little c. a few d. lots
5. I don't like this soup, there is too ...... salt in it. إدارة السيد 2023
   a. many b. enough c. much d. few
6. Would you like ...... beans? العربية 2023
   a. lot b. lots c. lot of d. some

7. I'm not very hungry, but I'd like ...... olives, please. **SB**
   a. a lot b. a little c. any d. a few
8. My grandmother spends .... time cooking in the kitchen. **SB**
   a. a lot of b. a few c. lots d. many
9. Has samosa got .... sugar or salt in it? **SB**
   a. some b. any c. a lot d. many
10. Let's not go to the beach. There's .... rain today. القليوبية - طوخ 2022
    a. too many b. a few c. too much d. not enough
11. Would you like .... cold orange juice? المنوفية - السادات 2022
    a. a few b. lots c. few d. some
12. He put .... salt on the chips. البحيرة - البحيرة 2022
    a. a few b. a little c. any d. lots

Bit by Bit Exercises

13. Mustafa always eats ...... healthy snacks.
    a. a lot b. a few c. much d. a little
14. I don't have ...... books.
    a. much b. lots c. some d. any
15. Samir is a good athlete, so he eats .... fast food.
    a. a few b. few c. a little d. much
16. **A:** "There are a few oranges left. .... you like some?" **B:** "Yes, please."
    a. Had b. Were c. Would d. Are
17. Would you like ...... chips?
    a. some b. little c. a lot d. an
18. There was ...... cheese in the kitchen when dad asked to eat.
    a. a few b. any c. a lot d. a little
19. There isn't ...... milk in the fridge. Could you go and buy some?
    a. some b. many c. any d. a few
20. I have a ...... money.
    a. some b. lot of c. many d. any

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. The road is very busy. There are .... (much) cars. القليوبية - طوخ 2022
2. **A:**"............... (Would) you like coffee?" **B:** "No, I don't. I prefer tea." **SB**
3. There are just .... (a little) seats left in the cinema. [illegible] 2023

4. Ramy likes .... (a few) sugar in his tea, but not too much. 2023
5. There are too .... (much) people in the market today. 2023
6. Does Ahmed have .... (a little) friends? 2023
7. When she is playing netball, she drinks .... (a few) water. 2023
8. We eat .... (few) rice and pasta. 2023

Speaking

1 Talking about your favourite food

التحديث عن طعامك المفضل

- نسأل ونجيب عن طعامك المفضل كالآتى:

Question	Answer
A: What's your favourite juicy fruit? ما هى فاكهتك المفضلة المليئة بالعصارة؟	B: ...... is my favourite juicy fruit. ...... هى فاكهتى المفضلة المليئة بالعصارة.
A: Which is your favourite snack? أى الوجبات الخفيفة المفضلة لك؟	B: ...... is my favourite snack. ...... هى وجبتى الخفيفة المفضلة.
A: Is your favourite snack juicy, spicy or sweet? هل وجبتك الخفيفة المفضلة مليئة بالعصارة ام حارة ام حلوة الطعم؟	B: My favourite snack is .... وجبتى الخفيفة المفضلة ....
A: Is it healthy or unhealthy? هل هى صحية أم غير صحية؟	B: It is healthy / unhealthy. إنها صحية / غير صحية .
A: Has it got any sugar or salt in it? هل مضاف إليها أى سكر أو ملح؟	B: Yes, it has. - No, it hasn't.

2 Asking and answering about what you like and dislike

السؤال والإجابة عما تحب وما لا تحب.

Question	Answer
A: What would you like for breakfast? ماذا تحب على الإفطار؟	B: I'd like some beans, please. أود تناول بعض الفول، من فضلك.
A: Would you like some tea? هل ترغب فى بعض الشاى؟	B: Yes, please. نعم، من فضلك.

③ Offering, accepting and refusing food politely

تقديم الطعام، القبول و الرفض بأدب

- لعرض الطعام على شخص نسأل:

• Do you like ....? هل تحب .....؟

Ex. Do you like rice?

• Would you like ...? هل ترغب في .....؟

Ex. Would you like a sandwich?

- للموافقة أو الرفض نقول:

Accepting	Refusing
- Yes, please. - Thank you. I like ..... . - Yes, please, just a few / a little.	- Thank you, but I'm really full. - No, I don't / wouldn't. I prefer...... - No, thank you. - Thank you, but I really couldn't.

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2



يوجد تمرينات إضافية فى كراسة الواجب المنزلى

① Complete the following dialogue:

2023

Khalid and John are talking about snacks.

Khalid : What's your favourite snack, John?

John : ❶ .... What about you?

Khalid : I like chips, too, but I like falafel more.

John : ❷ ....?

Khalid : Yes, falafel is a popular snack in Egypt.

John : Is it a healthy snack?

Khalid : ❸ .... It is made from beans and vegetables.

John : ❹ ....?

Khalid : I eat it in the morning. Would you like to eat it for breakfast tomorrow?

John : ❺ ....

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. It was not easy to join the school .... team. (2022)
   a. tests b. allergic c. athletics d. athlete
2. Children like to eat .... between meals. (2023)
   a. snakes b. snails c. sticks d. snacks
3. She offered me more food, but I was .... (2023)
   a. fit b. hungry c. full d. empty

4. People who do sports like to eat rice and pasta because they give them ....

البحيرة 2022

a. fast food b. salt c. sugar d. energy

5. Sandwiches and pizza are examples of .... food.

a. thirsty b. angry c. lucky d. fast

6. I'm .... to sweets , so I never eat them. بورسعيد 2023

a. kind b. hungry c. polite d. allergic

Exercises on Language

7. She eats ...... fish because it helps to make her strong. WB

a. any b. a lot of c. lots d. a lot

8. My grandmother spends ...... time cooking in the kitchen. إدارة مطوبس 2023

a. a few b. many c. a lot of d. lots

9. She drinks ...... water. WB

a. a little b. any c. many d. a few

10. She eats ...... sweets. WB

a. much b. a lot c. a few d. a little

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I don't have .... (some) cheese in the fridge. القاهرة 2023
2. There is .... (lot) juice for breakfast.
3. Mum bought .... (much) vegetables today.
4. There aren't .... (some) cakes in the supermarket.

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words: WB

to your friend telling her about your favourite snack. (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

- **Your friend's name is Hanaa and her email address is hanaa77@gmail.com.**
- **Your name is Judy and your email address is judy88@hotmail.com.**

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكترونى:

- **What's your favourite snack?**
- **When do you often have it?**
- **How do you make it?**
- **Why do you like it?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **My favourite snack is ....**
- **I often have it when ....**
- **It's easy to make ....**
- **I like it because ....**

Lessons 3 & 4 SB pages 16-18 WB pages 79-80

Key Vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات

dairy products	منتجات الألبان	healthy	صحي
bone	عظمة	fresh	طازج
protein	بروتين	unusual	غير معتاد
delicious	لذيذ	butter	زبد
sense	حاسة		

Verbs for senses & Organs

Verb		Organ		Verb		Organ	
hear	يسمع	ear	الأذن	taste **(d)**	يتذوق	tongue	اللسان
see	يرى	eye	العين	smell	يشم	nose	الأنف
touch **(ed)**	يلمس	hand	اليد				

Cooking verbs & nouns

beat	يخفق/يضرب	(eggs - butter - milk)
chop **(ped)**	يقطَع	(meat - vegetables - tomatoes)
fry **(ied)**	يقلي	(eggs - chicken)
pour **(ed)**	يصب	(water - tea - juice)
heat **(ed)**	يسخَن	(beans - soup - oil - butter)
wash **(ed)**	يغسل	(beans - vegetables)
serve **(d)**	يقدِّم «طعام/شراب»	(food - lunch)
boil **(ed)**	يغلي/يسلق	(water - eggs)
add **(ed)**	يضيف	(salt - sugar)

Special food

fried chicken	دجاج مقلي	dry fish	سمك مجفف
omelette	أومليت	century eggs	بيض القرن (أكلة صينية)
champorado	الشامبرادو (أرز بالشيكولاته)	foul mudammas	فول مدمس
tuyo	تويو (سمك مملح صغير)	durian fruit	فاكهة الدوريان (في منطقة جنوب آسيا)

Vocabulary

quiz	إختبار قصير	instructions	تعليمات
piece	قطعة	fork	شوكة
humans	البشر	soup	حساء (شوربة)
fridge	ثلاجة	square	مربع
dining room	غرفة الطعام	soft	لين (طرى)
chopped	مُقطَع	recipe	وصفة طهى/طريقة للطبخ
bowl	سلطانية	call (ed)	يسمى
frying pan	مقلاة (طاسة القلى)		

Expressions & Prepositions

smell terrible	ذو رائحة فظيعة	serve ... with	يقدم ... مع ...
sleep well	ينام جيدًا	beat ... with	يخفق ... مع.../باستخدام ...
be full	يشعر بالشبع	add ... to ...	يضيف ... إلي ...
have strong bones	لديه عظام قوية	take ... out of ...	يُخرج ... من ....
have a taste	له طعم	on the inside / outside	في الداخل/الخارج
look unusual	يبدو غير معتاد	different from	مختلف عن
keep food	يحفظ الطعام	chop ... into	يقطع ... إلي
taste delicious	ذو طعم لذيذ	pour ... into...	يصب... في...
under the ground	تحت الأرض	pour ... over ...	يصب ... علي ...

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept	kept
beat	يخفق/يضرب	beat	beaten
smell	يشم	smelled / smelt	smelled / smelt
grow	ينمو	grew	grown

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
unusual	غير معتاد	strange	usual	معتاد
heat	يسخن	warm up	cool	يبرد

Definitions

beat	يخفق	mix food quickly using a fork, wooden spoon[1], etc.
bone	عظمة	one of the hard parts of the skeleton[2] inside a person or animal
chop	يقطع	cut something into small pieces

١- ملعقة خشبية
٢- هيكل عظمى

dairy products منتجات الألبان	things that you can eat which are made from the milk of a cow, such as cheese and butter
protein بروتين	- one of the many things found in food such as meat, cheese, fish, or eggs, that is necessary for the body to grow and be strong
fry يقلي	cook something in hot oil or fat
pour يصب	make a liquid[3] flow[4] out of or into something such as a cup or bowl
serve يقدم «طعام/شراب»	provide[5] food or drinks
smell يشم	know what something is using your nose
taste يتذوق	know what something is when you put it in your mouth
unusual غير معتاد	different from others of the same type in a way that is surprising[6] or interesting
delicious لذيذ	very nice to eat

٣- سائل
٤- ينساب/يتدفق
٥- يزود بـ/ يقدم
٦- مدهش / مفاجئ

Language Notes

1) Verbs + adjectives

بعض الأفعال يليها صفة (وليس حال) مثل:

smell / look / feel / be / taste

Ex. This food smells bad. رائحته كريهة.

Ex. I think the cake tastes delicious. مذاقه لذيذ.

كما يمكن أن تستخدم بعض هذه الأفعال كأسماء:

smell رائحة	taste مذاق	look منظر

Ex. Century eggs have a salty taste. لهم طعم مالح.

2) It + be + adjective + to + inf.

يستخدم هذا الاسلوب لوصف حدث معين:

Ex. It's unusual to eat sweet and salty things together.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think that food smells ....
   a. nicely b. nice c. nicer than d. as nice
2. It is usual .... falafel in Egypt.
   a. to eat b. to eating c. eats d. ate

Reading (SB Page (16))




A healthy food quiz[1]

١- اختبار قصير
٢- منتجات الألبان
٣- عظام
٤- بروتين
٥- طازج

1. If you want to be healthy, you should eat ....
   a. only fruit and vegetables
   b. a lot of meat and cheese
   c. some of all types of food
2. We need to drink .... glasses of water every day.
   a. eight b. two c. four
3. Dairy products[2] like milk and cheese help us to ....
   a. have lots of hair b. have strong bones[3] c. run fast
4. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein[4] in them and we need protein to ....
   a. sleep well b. move fast c. have a strong body
5. A lot of sugar ....
   a. makes it difficult to sleep
   b. is bad for your teeth
   c. makes you sleep longer
6. Examples of healthy snacks are ....
   a. fruit and nuts b. chocolate and sweets c. salty chips
7. People need to eat .... pieces of fresh fruit and vegetables every day.
   a. one to two b. five to ten c. one
8. People often like fast food because ....
   a. it has lots of fat and sugar in it
   b. it gives you energy
   c. you can eat a lot of it and not feel full
9. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is ....
   a. expensive b. fresh[5] c. from a big supermarket

Answers:

One point for each correct answer:

1c 2a 3b 4c 5b 6a 7b 8a 9b

Score 7-9: Very good! You know all about healthy eating.

Score 4-6: Quite good. You need to learn a little more to be really healthy!

Score 1-3: Not good. There are a lot of things you need to learn about healthy eating.



SB Page (17)

How to make an omelette

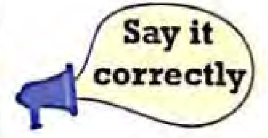
1. Beat[1] two eggs in a bowl[2]* with little milk.
2. Add a little salt to the eggs and milk.
3. Heat[3] some butter[4] in a frying pan[5].
4. Pour[6] the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter.
5. When the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying pan and serve with[7] salad.

How to make a tomato salad

1. Take two big tomatoes and half[8] an onion[9].
2. Chop[10] all the vegetables into small squares.
3. Put the chopped vegetables into a bowl.
4. Add a little oil, salt and lemon juice.
5. Serve the salad with your omelette.



١- يخفق
٢- سلطانية
٣- يسخن
٤- زبد
٥- مقلاة
٦- يصب
٧- يقدم مع
٨- نصف
٩- بصلة
١٠- يقطع



* bowl تنطق هذه الكلمة مثل كلمة (goal) مع اختلاف الصوت الأول فقط.

SB Page (18)

Unusual[1] but delicious

Some food smells bad or looks[2] unusual- but still tastes good!

'Durian fruits'[3] grow in Indonesia[4] and Malaysia[5]. Some fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They are hard[6] and green on the outside[7], but soft[8] and yellow on the inside[9]. Some people don't want to eat them because they smell terrible[10], but they are very healthy and taste delicious[11]. People use durian fruits to make juice, ice creams and soup[12].

In the Philippines[13], people eat something called 'champorado'[14] with 'tuyo'[15] for breakfast. 'Champorado' is sweet chocolate rice and 'tuyo' are small salty fish. For most people, it's unusual to eat sweet and salty things together, but it is popular in the Philippines!

In China[16], people eat eggs that are months or years old! They are called century eggs[17] and they are black and green inside. To make them, people put fresh eggs under the ground for a long time. Century eggs smell a lot and have a salty taste, but lots of people think they are delicious.

١- غير معتاد
٢- يبدو
٣- فاكهة دوريان
٤- دولة إندونسيا
٥- دولة ماليزيا
٦- صلب
٧- الخارج
٨- لين
٩- الداخل
١٠- فظيع
١١- مذاقه لذيذ
١٢- شوربة
١٣- دولة الفلبين
١٤- أرز بالشيكولاتة
١٥- سمك مملح
١٦- دولة الصين
١٧- بيض القرن



Unit 8 You are what you eat

WB Page (79)

How to make foul mudammas[1]

1. Wash some beans and put them in a pan.
2. Add some water and salt to the beans.
3. Heat the beans in the water until it boils[2].
4. Pour some lemon juice over the hot beans.
5. Serve it with warm bread.



١- فول مدمس
٢- يغلي

Audioscript

WB Page (80)

Ashraf: I'm Ashraf. I really like trying unusual food because I like to taste new things.

Dina: My name's Dina. When I was younger, I thought vegetables didn't taste nice at all. Now I like them. I eat a lot of them because I know they are healthy.

Heba: I'm Heba. Yesterday I ate fesikh. This is a dry salty fish. It doesn't taste nice at all, and it smells horrible!

Basel: My name's Basel. I love the smell of cakes when they are cooking, but I never eat cakes at all. I'm allergic to nuts.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is .... (إدارة سيدي سالم - 2023) **SB**
   a. expensive b. terrible c. old d. fresh
2. You need to .... eggs and milk before you make an omelette. **WB**
   a. chop b. wash c. beat d. drink
3. Humans have 210 .... in their bodies. **SB**
   a. legs b. backs c. skeletons d. bones
4. Meat, fish and nuts all have .... in them. (إدارة أبو كبير - 2023) **SB**
   a. sugar b. protein c. bones d. skin
5. When I had a big lunch, I felt .... **WB**
   a. full b. careful c. empty d. delicious

6. Before you fry food, you should .... some oil in a pan. الجيزة - 2022

a. heat b. make c. serve d. fire

7. We only eat a little meat and a few .... products. الجيزة - وادي سليمان 2022

a. day b. diary c. dairy d. paper

8. Mum made lunch and .... it with salad. القليوبية - طوخ 2022

a. chopped b. served c. saved d. felt

9. Which of these is bad for your teeth? إدارة بني سويف 2023

a. fruits b. cheese c. eggs d. sugar

10. We can .... with our ears. إدارة أبو النمرس 2023

a. see b. hear c. touch d. smell

11. Durian fruits are very healthy and .... delicious. إدارة قليوب 2023

a. touch b. see c. taste d. hear

12. A lot of sugar is bad .... your teeth. محافظة المنوفية 2023

a. for b. at c. to d. with

Bit by Bit Exercises

13. Cheese is one of the .... products.

a. daily b. dairy c. diary d. day

14. Some food looks ...., but still tastes good.

a. delicious b. nice c. unusual d. beautiful

15. She added some sugar, flour and .... to make a cake.

a. salt b. meat c. bones d. butter

16. I like this meal. It's ....

a. bad b. delicious c. dirty d. boring

17. We should .... fruit and vegetables before we eat them.

a. wash b. sell c. throw d. hear

18. We use our hands to .... things.

a. see b. smell c. hear d. touch

19. I don't like to eat fesikh. It always .... terrible.

a. smells b. feels c. touches d. smiles

20. Mum chopped the tomatoes .... small pieces with a knife.

a. of b. into c. out d. from

Language

Imperative صيغة الأمر

• تستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء الأوامر والتعليمات.

1- صيغة الأمر المثبت

→ inf. باقى الجملة + مصدر الفعل

→ Always + inf. + باقى الجملة

2- صيغة الأمر المنفى

→ Don't + inf. باقى الجملة

→ Never + inf. + باقى الجملة

Ex. Chop the tomatoes! Don't chop them too small!

Ex. Add salt. Don't add too much salt!

Notes

- يستخدم الفعل (be) فى صيغة الأمر كمايلى:

→ Be + باقى الجملة

→ Don't be + باقى الجملة

Ex. Be careful when you boil the water.

Ex. Don't be late for school.

Exercises on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Take the omelette and ...... it with salad. SB
   a. serving b. serves c. serve d. doesn't serve
2. ...... the eggs in the bowl and beat them with a fork. SB
   a. To put b. Puts c. Putting d. Put
3. ...... the beans in the water until it boils. WB
   a. Heat b. Heats c. Heated d. Heating
4. ...... some lemon juice over the hot beans. WB
   a. Pours b. Pour c. Poured d. Pouring
5. ...... sauce over the pasta. I want it without sauce, please. (إدارة شرق نصر 2023)
   a. Pour b. Don't pour c. Pours d. Pouring
6. ...... the light off before you sleep. (إدارة أبو المطامير 2023)
   a. Turning b. Turns c. Turned d. Turn

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. To be healthy, ... all types of food.
   a. eating b. eat c. eats d. ate
8. ...... the eggs into the frying pan now.
   a. Pours b. Poured c. Pour d. Pouring

9. ...... out alone without telling your parents.
   a. Go b. Never go c. Doesn't go d. Goes
10. ...... enough fruits and nuts. They are healthy snacks.
   a. Get b. Don't get c. Never get d. Gets
11. Don't fry the eggs. ...... them.
   a. Boil b. Boils c. Boiling d. Boiled
12. ...... fast food because it has lots of fat.
   a. Eating b. Eats c. Eat d. Never eat
13. ...... your aunt today. She's really ill.
   a. Visited b. Visit c. Visiting d. Visits
14. ...... me some fresh food. It is really healthy.
   a. Don't get b. To Get c. Getting d. Get

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Wait a little. .... (Not pour) the eggs now. SB
2. .... (Adds) some water and salt to the beans. WB
3. Chop the tomatoes, but .... (didn't) chop them too small. 2023
4. Don't .... (touching) electric wires. محافظة القاهرة 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. .... (Learning) English. It is really useful.
6. Please, ... (heats) the beans now.
7. .... (Having) breakfast early. It will make you feel fresh.
8. .... (Not keep) food in the fridge for a long time. It's not healthy.

Speaking

1 Giving opinion about food إبداء الرأى فى الطعام

- لإبداء رأينا فى الطعام نقول:

- **I think that ..... tastes + (صفة)** اعتقد ان .... طعمه ......

Ex. I think that fried chicken tastes good.

- **In my opinion, ... smells + (صفة)** فى رأيى ..... رائحته ......

Ex. In my opinion, fish smells horrible.

General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Judy and Aliaa are talking about their favourite food.

Judy : Hi Aliaa, what's your favourite food?
Aliaa : ❶ ....
Judy : Oh! ❷ ....
Aliaa : Why don't you like fesikh?
Judy : ❸ ....
Aliaa : I agree with you, but it tastes nice. ❹ ....?
Judy : I like pizza.
Aliaa : I like pizza, too.
Judy : ❺ ....?
Aliaa : Good idea.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Follow these .... to use the tablet well. القليوبية - طوخ 2022
   a. pieces b. advice c. bowls d. instructions
2. .... products like milk and cheese help us to have strong bones. SB
   a. Diary b. Dairy c. Dry d. Wet
3. The soup is cold. Shall we .... it? إدارة قليوب 2023 SB
   a. cool b. freeze c. heat d. wash
4. My mum .... some tea into my cup.
   a. chopped b. beat c. boiled d. poured
5. I liked the perfume so much. It .... really nice.
   a. smelt b. fried c. boiled d. served
6. Which of these is not a dairy product? WB
   a. milk b. rice c. cheese d. butter
7. Do you prefer to boil or .... your eggs? SB
   a. wash b. pour c. serve d. fry
8. My grandparents always .... lunch in the dining room at 4 o'clock. SB
   a. serve b. do c. wash d. play
9. Which of these do you use to make an omelette? WB
   a. sugar b. rice c. eggs d. chocolate

Exercises on Language

10. To have healthy teeth, ... sure you eat dairy products.
    a. being b. are c. is d. be
11. ...... some beans and put them in a pan. WB
    a. Wash b. Washing c. Washes d. To wash
12. ...... come to school on time.
    a. Never b. Always c. Not d. Don't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. .... (Serving) it with warm bread. WB
2. .... (Doesn't forget) to add a little salt.
3. .... (Not) boil oil more than one time.
4. Please, ... (stopped) eating too much chocolate.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on: WB

"Some unusual food that you have tried"

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What was the unusual food you have tried?**
- **How did it smell?**
- **How did it taste?**
- **How did it look?**
- **Would you like to eat it again?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I tried** ....
- **It was called** ....
- **It looked / smelt / tasted** ....
- **I would / wouldn't** .... **to eat** ....



Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 19-20 WB pages 81-82

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

exercise	تمارين	cake	كعكة/تورتة
food	طعام	yellow pepper	فلفل أصفر
hungry	جائع	spinach	نبات السبانخ
sleep	نوم	balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن
sweet potato	بطاطا	tired	مُتعَب

Vocabulary

athletics club	نادى ألعاب قوى	upset	يضايق/يزعج - متضايق
conclusion	خاتمة	furthermore	علاوة على ذلك
perhaps	ربما	What sort...?	ما نوع...؟
amount	كمية - مقدار	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
art school	مدرسة لتعليم الرسم	introduce (d)	يقدم
drawing	الرسم بالرصاص/بالفحم	revise (d)	يراجع
painting	الرسم بالألوان/لوحة فنية	surprise (d)	يفاجئ
situation	موقف	conclude (d)	يختتم (كلامه)
olive oil	زيت الزيتون	relax (ed)	يسترخى
reason	سبب	own (ed)	يملك

Expressions & Prepositions

feel hungry	يشعر بالجوع	make sure	يتأكد من
have energy	لديه طاقة	text friends	يرسل رسائل نصية للأصدقاء
have a snack	يتناول وجبة خفيفة	serve ... on a plate	يقدم .... فى طبق
do some drawing	يقوم ببعض الرسومات	How about + V-ing...?	ما رأيك فى ...؟
try + V-ing.	يجرب ..	depend on	يعتمد على
as you can see	كما ترى	live on an island	يعيش على جزيرة
eight hours' sleep	نوم لثمانى ساعات	stay up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر
that's why	لهذا السبب		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
upset	يزعج	upset	upset
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
mean	يعني	meant	meant

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
tired	فتعب	uncomfortable	comfortable	مستريح
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	unluckily	fortunately	لحسن الحظ

Definitions

spinach نبات السبانخ	a vegetable with wide[1] dark[2] green leaves[3] that go soft when you cook them
pepper فلفل	a kind of vegetables that is usually green, red or yellow, with seeds[4] in the middle
diet نظام غذائي	the kind of food that you eat every day
sweet potato بطاطا	a vegetable that looks like a potato and has purple, yellow or white flesh and a sweet taste

١- عريض
٢- قاتم اللون
٣- أوراق النبات
٤- بذور

Language Notes

① Possessive ('s) or (')

- تستخدم ('s) للتعبير عن الملكية للاسم المفرد والجمع غير المنتظم:

- the boy's bag
- the men's bags

- تستخدم (') للتعبير عن الملكية للاسم الجمع المنتهي بـ (s) :

- the boys' bags

② The present continuous

- يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث مرتب له في المستقبل:

Ex. Your aunt is coming to visit us next week. It's arranged.

③ too many / much

- too many + اسم جمع (كثير جدًا (للعدد
- too much + اسم مفرد لا يعد (كثير جدًا (للكمية

Ex. Mustafa eats too many cookies.

Ex. Mo'men doesn't have too much money.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That is the .... room. They aren't here now.
   a. girl's b. girls c. girl d. girls'
2. I .... a party next week.
   a. has b. am having c. having d. had
3. My mother gives me .... food.
   a. too many b. too few c. too much d. so many

استمع إلى النصوص

Audioscript SB Page (19)

Ali : My name's Ali. My mum and dad own a restaurant and I often help in the kitchen. The cook[1] is my friend and he is teaching me to make different cakes. The problem is, I'm always trying[2] them, so I eat too many cakes. I also know I don't do enough exercise, but that's because I don't have time. When I'm not at school or doing my homework, I'm usually at the restaurant. I don't want to stop helping my parents, so I don't know what to do.

Eman : I'm Eman. I do a lot of sport and I have a very healthy diet[3]. I eat lots of fruit and vegetables and I almost never eat fast food. I never eat snacks either, not even when I'm really hungry after athletics club[4]. I know eating snacks isn't good for you. But I'm tired all the time. I never feel I get enough sleep, even when I go to bed early! I want to have more energy[5].

Tamer : I'm Tamer. I want to go to art school[6] when I'm older, but I don't have enough time to do any drawing or painting at the moment. I'm working really hard at school. I'm worried about my exams. When I feel worried, I don't feel hungry. My mother doesn't think I eat enough, so then she gives me even more food. I don't want to upset[7] her, so I can't tell her it's too much!

١- طباخ
٢- يجرب
٣- نظام غذائي صحي
٤- نادي ألعاب القوى
٥- طاقة
٦- مدرسة لتعليم الرسم
٧- يزعج

Reading SB Page (19)

It's good that you don't eat fast food, but if you feel very hungry between meals[1], it's a good idea[2] to have a snack. How about bringing[3] a few healthy snacks to school on the days when you have athletics club? If you want to have more energy, why don't you try eating more food that gives you energy like rice and pasta? Perhaps[4] you could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning, too.

١- وجبات
٢- فكرة
٣- إحضار
٤- ربما

SB Page (20)

The Okinawan[1] diet

I come from Okinawa in Japan and the diet on my island*[2] is very healthy.

This is for three main[3] reasons[4]. Firstly, we eat a lot of fresh vegetables. We eat green, purple[5] and yellow vegetables like spinach*[6], sweet potato[7] and peppers[8]. Furthermore[9], we don't have much fat in our diet: we only eat a little meat and a few dairy products. Another important thing is that we eat a very healthy breakfast. We have soup with spinach or eggs with rice, and this gives us lots of energy to start the day.

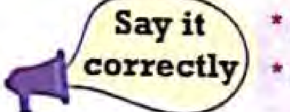
As you can see, our diet is healthy. That's why Okinawans[10] live a long time. Some of the oldest people in the world live on my island!

١- خاص بجزيرة أوكيناوا باليابان
٢- جزيرة
٣- رئيسى
٤- أسباب
٥- أرجوانى اللون
٦- نبات السبانخ
٧- بطاطا
٨- فلفل
٩- علاوة على ذلك
١٠- شعب جزيرة أوكيناوا





sweet potato | **yellow pepper** | **spinach**



* island
* spinach

لاحظ أن حرف (s) لا ينطق فى هذه الكلمة.
-لاحظ أن الجزء الملون فى هذه الكلمة ينطق مثل نطق الجزء الملون من كلمة (cheese) مع عدم نطق حرف (a).

SB Page (21)

Lelia : Is there any cheese in the fridge? I don't need any now, but I want to make a salad later.

Mother: I think there is a little cheese. I'm going shopping now. Would you like me to buy some cheese at the market?

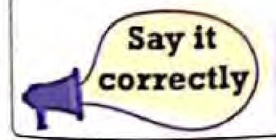
Leila : Yes, please! Could you get a few tomatoes, too? I don't have enough for the salad.

SB Page (21)

1- Your cousins are coming to visit on Saturday next week. They always make wonderful cakes and sweets for you and you want to make something for them. Unfortunately[1], you do not know how to cook!

2- You are studying for exams at the moment and you are staying up late[2] and eating a lot of chocolate and biscuits*[3]. You do not do any exercise and you spend your free time texting[4] your friends. You feel tired[5] and unhealthy.

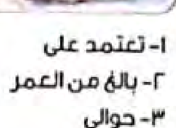
١- لسوء الحظ
٢- يسهر لوقت متأخر
٣- بسكويت
٤- يرسل رسائل نصية
٥- متعب



* biscuits

لنطق هذه الكلمة نقسمها الى نصفين (bis - cuits) وينطق النصف الأخير (kits)

WB Page (81)



How much sleep should we have? The answer depends on[1] your age. Very small babies sleep for about 14 or more hours a day! Children aged[2] six to seventeen should sleep for about[3] ten hours a night. Then you need less sleep. Most people aged 18-65 need about eight hours' sleep.

١- تعتمد على
٢- بالغ من العمر
٣- حوالي

WB Page (82)

A healthy diet

It may surprise[1] you to know that West African countries[2] have one of the healthiest diets in the world. Why is this?

Firstly, people in countries such as Senegal[3], Mali[4] and Sierra Leone[5] eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, which are very healthy. Furthermore, the people eat a lot of rice, nuts and fish. These have a lot of protein.

Another important point[6] is that the people of West Africa don't eat much food with a lot of salt and sugar in it.

To conclude[7], a healthy diet means[8] eating enough healthy things like fish and vegetables, and not eating a lot of salt, sugar and fast food.

١- يدهش
٢- دول غرب افريقيا
٣- دولة السنغال
٤- دولة مالي
٥- دولة سيراليون
٦- نقطة
٧- ختاما
٨- يعني

WB Page (83)



A recipe for pizza

- Firstly, chop some tomatoes.
- Then put the tomatoes onto the pizza bread.
- Add some cheese and pour on a little olive oil[1].
- Cook the pizza in the oven[2] for ten minutes.
- Add a few olives and a little salt.
- Serve with a fresh salad.

١- زيت زيتون
٢- فرن

Videoscript

SB Page (19)



Narrator:

There is a lot of delicious, healthy Egyptian food. Dishes[1] like kushari[2] and rozzme'ammar[3] are enjoyed by many in Egypt and around the world. But which Egyptian food is good for you before and after you play sport?

Foul mudammas is a dish made of beans. People usually

١- أصناف طعام
٢- كشرى
٣- أرز معمر

eat this with a little bread. The beans and the bread contain[4] something called carbohydrate[5]. Carbohydrate gives you energy to do sport.

Rice, pasta, fruit and vegetables contain a lot of carbohydrate, so why don't you eat these things before you go swimming or do athletics[6]?

Sugar also gives us energy to do sport. You can find sugar in chocolate, sweets, honey and some desserts like basbousa[7] and kahk[8]. But you should only eat a little sugar because it is bad for your health.

After you play sport, how about eating food that contains protein? Protein is something that helps our body to recover[9] after exercise.

Meat, fish and dairy products, like milk and cheese, contain a lot of protein. So, you should eat things like kofta[10], sayadiya[11] or shakshouka[12] after you play sport.

It is important to look after your body. You should do exercise and eat a healthy diet.

٤- يحتوي على
٥- مواد كربوهيدراتية
٦- يمارس ألعاب القوى
٧- البسبوسة
٨- الكعك
٩- يتعافى
١٠- كفتة
١١- أرز صيادية
١٢- الشكشوكة

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. .... is a vegetable that is very healthy. WB
   a. Sugar b. Salt c. Spinach d. Apple
2. When Tamer is worried, he doesn't feel .... SB
   a. big b. hungry c. salty d. cheap
3. A/An .... can be green, red or yellow. إدارة منيا القمح 2023 WB
   a. pepper b. diet c. omelette d. spinach
4. Your .... is the kind of food that you eat every day. كفر الشيخ - مطوبس 2022 WB
   a. work b. exercise c. diet d. homework
5. Try to have a / an .... diet to keep you healthy. إدارة أبو النمرس 2023
   a. balanced b. long c. bad d. old

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. .... is important as it gives us energy.
   a. Cotton b. Cloth c. Ice d. Food
7. The sailor decided to live .... the island.
   a. of b. on c. for d. with

8. You should add a/an .... of olive oil to the food.
   a. number b. amount c. mount d. age
9. I felt really .... because I didn't get enough sleep.
   a. hungry b. full c. tired d. fresh
10. To add a good taste to the salad, you should add some yellow ....
   a. paper b. pepper c. diet d. salt
11. .... potato has a nice taste.
   a. Salty b. Bad c. Liquid d. Sweet
12. Ali felt really .... after 14 hours of hard work.
   a. tired b. relaxed c. active d. comfortable
13. Gamila eats too many cakes, but she doesn't do enough ....
   a. snacks b. exercise c. picnics d. trips
14. If you feel ...., you should have a meal at a restaurant.
   a. angry b. full c. careful d. hungry

Speaking

Giving advice (about being healthy)

إسداء النصح (بشأن التمتع بصحة جيدة)

- لإسداء النصح نستخدم العبارات / الأسئلة الآتية:

- **It's a good idea that you ....** إنها فكرة جيدة أن ....

Ex. It's a good idea that you don't eat fast food.

- **It's a good idea to + inf ....** إنها فكرة جيدة أن .....

Ex. It's a good idea to have a snack.

- **How about + V-ing .... ?** ما رأيك فى .... ؟

Ex. How about bringing a few healthy snacks to school?

- **Why don't you + try + V-ing ....?** لم لا تجرب .... ؟

Ex. Why don't you try eating fruit that gives you energy?

- **You could + inf ......** يمكنك أن .....

Ex. You could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Yasmin's mother is asking her about what she'd like to eat.

Mum : Are you hungry, Yasmin?

Yasmin : ❶ ....

Mum : Would you like to eat something?

Yasmin : ❷ ....

Mum : ❸ .... ?

Yasmin : I'd like cheese sandwiches, please.

Mum : ❹ .... ?

Yasmin : Yes, I'd like them with olives.

Mum : Here you are.

Yasmin : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Eman never eats fast food or unhealthy .... SB
   a. sleep b. exercise c. snacks d. restaurants
2. A: How about drinking tea in the garden? B: It's a good .... WB
   a. idea b. food c. meal d. diet
3. I like eating ...., it's very healthy.
   a. painting b. spinach c. conclusion d. plate
4. It is important to have a balanced, healthy ....
   a. trip b. view c. diet d. journey
5. A: I'm really bored. B: How .... going to the zoo?
   a. many b. much c. deep d. about
6. To .... is to cut something into small pieces.
   a. pour b. heat c. shop d. chop
7. Serve foul mudammas .... warm bread.
   a. to b. with c. for d. of

3 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on: WB (مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

"Egyptian food"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What do people usually eat in Egypt?**
- **What are the most popular dishes?**
- **Are they healthy or unhealthy? Why / Why not?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **People in Egypt usually eat ....**
- **There are many dishes in Egypt.**
- **The Egyptian food is healthy / unhealthy because ....**

Unit 8

Review

Key Vocabulary

full	ممتلئ (شبعان)	cake	كعكة/تورتة
snack	وجبة خفيفة	allergic to	لديه حساسية لـ
fast food	الوجبات السريعة	energy	طاقة
dairy products	منتجات الألبان	fresh	طازج
bone	عظمة	unusual	غير معتاد
protein	بروتين	butter	زبد
exercise	تمارين	sense	حاسة
food	طعام	yellow pepper	فلفل أصفر
hungry	جائع	spinach	نبات السبانخ
sleep	نوم	balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن
sweet potato	بطاطا	tired	مُتعَب

Food and Snacks

falafel	الفلافل	rojak	الروجاك (وجبة فواكة شعبية بماليزيا)
fava beans	فول أخضر	sfenj	السفنج (فطائر حلوة شعبية بالمغرب)
chicken	لحم الدجاج/دجاجة	hawawshi	حواوشي (أكلة مصرية)
pizza	بيتزا	samosa	السمبوسة (وجبة حارة شعبية بالهند)
nuts	مكسرات	chips	رقائق بطاطس مقلية
pasta	مكرونة	olives	زيتون
spices	توابل - بهارات	rice pudding	أرز باللبن
watermelon	بطيخ	chocolate	شيكولاته
grapes	عنب	vegetable	خضار

Food and Snacks

delicious	لذيذ	spicy	متبل (كثير التوابل)/حار
juicy	كثير العصارة	sweet	حلو المذاق
salty	مالح	popular	شائع - محبوب

Verbs for senses & Organs

Verb		Organ		Verb		Organ	
hear	يسمع	ear	الأذن	taste (d)	يتذوق	tongue	اللسان
see	يرى	eye	العين	smell	يشم	nose	الأنف
touch (ed)	يلمس	hand	اليد				

Cooking verbs & nouns

beat	يخفق/يضرب	(eggs - butter - milk)
chop (ped)	يقطع	(meat - vegetables - tomatoes)
fry (ied)	يقلي	(eggs - chicken)
pour (ed)	يصب	(water - tea - juice)
heat (ed)	يسخن	(beans - soup - oil - butter)
wash (ed)	يغسل	(beans - vegetables)
serve (d)	يقدم «طعام/شراب»	(food - lunch)
boil (ed)	يغلي/يسلق	(water - eggs)
add (ed)	يضيف	(salt - sugar)

Special food

fried chicken	دجاج مقلي	dry fish	سمك مجفف
omelette	أومليت [أكلة تحتوي علي البيض وإضافات]	century eggs	بيض القرن [أكلة صينية]
champorado	الشامبرادو [أرز بالشيكولاته]	foul mudammas	فول مدمس
tuyo	تويو [سمك مملح صغير]	durian fruit	فاكهة الدوريان

Language

1- Countable & Uncountable nouns

Countable nouns أسماء تعد

١- أسماء مفردة يسبقها (a / an)

a pen - a door - a unit

an umbrella - an apple - an hour

٢- أسماء جمع كالتالي:

a pen → pens / a book → books

a dish → dishes

a watch → watches

a bus → buses

a box → boxes

a tomato → tomatoes

Uncountable nouns أسماء لا تعد

- تأتي دائمًا مفردة ولا يسبقها (a/an) وتأخذ فعل مفرد.

rice - meat - sugar - juice - bread - water - cheese - milk

English - rubber - love

information - news - rain - air

2- some & any

• تستخدم (some) فى الجملة الخبرية المثبتة مع الاسم الذى يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذى لا يعد:

Ex. We saw some friends on our way home.

Ex. Dad always puts some salt on his food.

• تستخدم (some) فى السؤال للعرض أو الطلب.

Ex. Would you like some oranges / pasta?

Ex. Can I have some beans / milk?

• تستخدم (any) فى الجملة الخبرية المنفية وفى السؤال مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. We don't buy any books from that shop.

Ex. Is there any water in the fridge?

3- a lot of / a little / a few

• تستخدم (a lot of) غالبًا فى الجملة المثبتة مع الاسم الذى يعد (الجمع) ومع الاسم الذى لا يعد:

Ex. We have a lot of snacks.

Ex. They eat a lot of rice and pasta.

• تستخدم (a few) مع الاسم الذى يعد (الجمع):

Ex. I eat a few oranges.

• تستخدم (a little) مع الاسم الذى لا يعد:

Ex. They have a little milk.

4- like / would like

• يستخدم الفعل (like) للتعبير عما نفضل:

Ex. They like coffee but they don't like tea.

• تستخدم (would like) لتقديم العروض ولطلب الاشياء:

Ex. What would you like for dinner?

Ex. I'd like (to have) some meat, please.

5- Imperative صيغة الأمر

• تستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء الأوامر والتعليمات.

1- صيغة الأمر المثبت

→ inf. باقى الجملة + مصدر الفعل

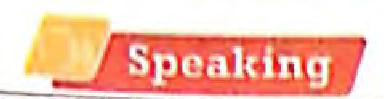
→ Always + inf. + باقى الجملة

2- صيغة الأمر المنفى

→ Don't + inf. باقى الجملة

→ Never + inf. + باقى الجملة

Ex. Chop the cucumbers! Don't chop them all!



Speaking

1) Talking about your favourite food

الحديث عن طعامك المفضل

Question	Answer
A: What's your favourite juicy fruit?	B: ...... is my favourite juicy fruit.
A: Which is your favourite snack?	B: ...... is my favourite snack.
A: Is your favourite snack juicy, spicy or sweet?	B: My favourite snack is ....
A: Is it healthy or unhealthy?	B: It is healthy / unhealthy.
A: Has it got any sugar or salt in it?	B: Yes, it has. - No, it hasn't.

2) Asking and answering about what you like and dislike

السؤال عما تحب وما لا تحب

Question	Answer
A: What would you like for breakfast?	B: I'd like some beans, please.
A: Would you like some tea?	B: Yes, please. or No, thank you.

3) Offering, accepting and refusing food politely

تقديم الطعام، القبول والرفض بأدب

- لعرض الطعام على شخص نسأل:

• Do you like ....? / • Would you like ...?

Accepting	Refusing
- Yes, please. - Thank you. I like ..... . - Yes, please, just a few / a little.	- Thank you, but I'm really full. - No, I don't / wouldn't. I prefer...... - No, thank you. - Thank you, but I really couldn't.

4) Giving opinion about food

إبداء الرأى فى الطعام

- لإبداء الرأى فى الطعام، يقول:

• I think that ..... tastes + (صفة)

• In my opinion, ... smells + (صفة)

5) Giving advice (about being healthy)

إسداء النصح (بشأن التمتع بصحة جيدة)

- لإسداء النصح نستخدم العبارات / الأسئلة الآتية:

- It's a good idea to + inf ....
- It's a good idea that you ....
- Why don't you try + V-ing ....?
- How about + V-ing .... ?
- You could + inf ......

General Exercises on Unit 8

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Marwa has just come from school.

Marwa : What did you cook for lunch, mum?

Mum : ❶ ....

Marwa : Wow! I like koshari very much.

Mum : I know.

Marwa : ❷ .... ?

Mum : Yes, I made some salad.

Marwa : ❸ .... ?

Mum : I made rice pudding.

Marwa : ❹ .... Thanks, mum.

Mum : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. I don't put any salt on my food because I don't like .... food. SB
   a. sweet   b. big   c. fast   d. salty
2. Watermelon is very sweet and .... It contains a lot of juice.
   a. salty   b. allergic   c. spicy   d. juicy
3. If we don't use sugar to make food .... , what other things can we use? SB
   a. sweet   b. fast   c. salty   d. juicy

4. There is not protein in .... WB

a. meat b. milk c. fish d. apples

5. You need to .... the tomatoes into small pieces. SB

a. beat b. heat c. chop d. fry

6. First, ... the eggs in the bowl.

a. hit b. beat c. cut d. chop

7. I'm really tired and I don't have the .... to go out.

a. energy b. light c. electricity d. muscle

Exercises on Language

8. Would you like ...... more beans? WB

a. some b. lot c. lot of d. lots

9. .... the salad with the omelette. SB

a. Serves b. Didn't serve c. Serve d. Serving

10. .... the butter in the frying pan now. Wait a minute.

a. Heating b. Don't heat c. Heats d. Doesn't heat

11. She didn't cook .... meat last night. 2023

a. any b. some c. many d. a lot

12. "......... you like a sandwich?" "Thank you, but I'm really full." SB

a. Are b. Were c. Would d. Had

13. Do you have ...... money is your wallet?

a. lots b. any c. a lot d. many

14. I'd like .... cheese, please. SB

a. a lot b. a few c. many d. a little

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Would you like .... (a few) tea? 2023

2. There aren't .... (some) cakes in the supermarket. 2024

3. My sister cooked .... (a lot) pasta and rice.

4. .... (To add) a little salt to the chips.

5. I couldn't find .... (some) water in the fridge.

6. Pour the eggs into the frying pan and .... (cooking) it in the butter.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

SB / WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Indian diet"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What is the country you are talking about?**
- **What do people usually eat there?**
- **Is their diet healthy or unhealthy? Why / Why not?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I'm from .... The diet in my country is very healthy.**
- **People in ------------------ usually eat ------------------.**
- **Our diet is healthy / unhealthy because ------------------.**

Unit 8

Al Azhar Test



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Fava beans and falafel are very .... in Egypt.
   a. unknown b. popular c. dirty d. unpopular
2. People in Egypt like to eat fava beans and falafel for ....
   a. breakfast b. dinner c. lunch d. supper

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the the following dialogue:

Ola is talking to her mom.

Mom : Would you like some cake, Ola?
Ola : 1 .... But only a little.
Mom : Why do you want a little?
Ola : 2 ....
Mom : 3 ....?
Ola : Thanks, I like tea. I don't like coffee with cake.
Mom : OK, I will make a hot cup of tea.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't .... presents from strangers.
   a. accepted b. accepting c. accepts d. accept
2. I don't put .... salt on salad.
   a. some b. any c. many d. few
3. Let's sit down and .... a rest.
   a. do b. go c. have d. make
4. You should eat healthy food to get the .... you need.
   a. energy b. speed c. diary d. juicy
5. He doesn't do .... exercise.
   a. a b. many c. enough d. few

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ahmed was born into a <u>rich</u> family. He spent a short happy childhood. But his mother died when he was three years old. His father's sadness over his wife made him ill. He was at hospital for a long time, so he lost all his money. Ahmed had to work at an early age. He worked as a driver, a <u>cook</u> and builder. He liked films, so he always went to the cinema. One day, he met a famous film star who took him to work in a film. Since that time he has become famous and rich.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. He was Ahmed's childhood?
....
2. Why did Ahmed's father lose all his money?
....
3. Where did Ahmed always go?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "<u>cook</u>" means a person who .... food.
   a. takes b. finds c. cleans d. makes
5. The opposite of the word "<u>rich</u>" is ....
   a. poor b. famous c. sad d. late

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. own - dad - restaurant - <u>My</u> - and mom - Paris - in. ....
2. you - like - sugar - <u>Do</u> - your - tea - in ? ....
3. eat - <u>I</u> - vegetables - like to - fruits - and. ....
4. some - <u>Wash</u> - them - beans - and - in a pan - put. ....

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on: (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"What you can eat to stay healthy"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **Is healthy food important for everyone?**
- **How does healthy food help us?**
- **What should we eat to be healthy?**
- **What are healthy snacks?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **Healthy food is** ....
- **Healthy food helps us to** ....
- **If you want to be healthy, you should eat** ....
- .... **are healthy snacks.**

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني وردت بالوحدة

Paragraphs

1- Some unusual food I have tried

Once I travelled abroad with my friends. We decided to have lunch at a famous restaurant. We tried a very interesting snack. It was called "Durian fruits". "Durian fruits" grow in Indonesia and Malaysia. They're soft and yellow on the inside. We liked to eat them very much. They were very healthy and tasted delicious. Some people don't want to eat them because they smell terrible. People use durian fruits to make juice, ice creams and soup.

2- Egyptian food

There is a lot of delicious, healthy Egyptian food. Foul mudammas is a dish made of beans. People usually eat this with a little bread. They usually eat beans for breakfast. They like falafel as well. Egyptian people like koshari. It contains rice, pasta, onions and tomatoes. They eat it at home or at special restaurants. People in Egypt eat kebab and kofta. It's a very popular meal. It's very delicious. They eat them with salad and bread. Tourists who come to Egypt like to try Egyptian food. It's very popular in many countries all over the world.

3- Indian diet

I'm from India. The diet in my country is very healthy for many reasons. Firstly, we eat a lot of fresh vegetables. We eat green, purple and yellow vegetables. Furthermore, we don't have much fat in our diet. Another important thing is that we eat very healthy breakfast. This gives us lots of energy to start the day. That's why Indians live long lives. We don't eat much meat and dairy products. Our food is usually spicy. Many people all over the world like to try Indian food.

4- What I can eat to stay healthy

Healthy food is really important for everyone. We should eat all types of food. Dairy products like milk and cheese are healthy. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein in them. People need to eat fresh fruit and vegetables every day.

5- My favourite meal

My favourite food is cheese omelette. It's very delicious. I found the recipe on the internet. I liked to try it very much. I asked my mother about it. She knew the meal and helped me make it. I make it by beating eggs in a bowl. I use some cheese. I heat the eggs in a pan. I don't add salt because the cheese is salty enough. I can eat the meal with tomatoes and hot bread. It tastes delicious. Why don't you try it?

Emails

- My favourite snack

From : judy88@hotmail.com.
To : hanaa77@gmail.com.
Subject : My favourite snack

Dear Hanaa,

How are you? Thanks for your last email. You asked me to describe my favourite snack. I love hawawshi and I often have it when I get home from school. It is easy to make. First, you need some nice bread. Then you put some meat and vegetables inside the bread. You can put some salt on it, too. I don't like to have any salt, though, because it is not very healthy. Now you cook it in the oven. It is delicious! Do you have any favourite snacks? Describe them to me in your next email!

Best wishes.

Yours,

Judy

Unit 8

TEST



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. Durian fruits grow in Indonesia and ....
   a. England b. Malaysia c. Egypt d. France
2. Some fruits can be .... centimetres long.
   a. thirty b. forty c. fifty d. sixty
3. Durian fruits are hard and .... on the outside.
   a. yellow b. blue c. green d. white
4. Durian fruits are very .... and taste delicious.
   a. good b. nice c. well d. healthy

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona is talking to Nada about a meal in a restaurant.

Nada : Hello Mona, 1 ....?
Mona : I'm going to the restaurant.
Nada : Do they serve fast food?
Mona : 2 .... They serve healthy food.
Nada : 3 ....?
Mona : I usually eat chicken and salad.
Nada : Is it expensive?
Mona : 4 .... It's cheap.
Nada : Can I come with you?
Mona : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Our bodies need food like meat, rice, fruit, salt and sugar to be healthy. Food gives us energy, but we need a healthy diet to give us the right quantities of energy. When we do sports, our bodies use more energy and need more food than when we watch

IV. To be healthy, the quantity of food that we eat should be the same as the energy which our bodies use.

If we often eat much fast food, we will start to put on weight. Every day we should eat fruit and vegetables.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Why do our bodies need food?

....

2. What should we eat every day?

....

3. How much energy do our bodies use when we do sports?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Food gives us ....

a. wealth b. energy c. heat d. juice

5. We put on .... if we eat much fast food.

a. height b. high c. length d. weight

6. Our bodies need .... kinds of food.

a. all b. little c. few d. no

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I should buy some .... products from the supermarket.

a. day b. diary c. dairy d. paper

2. A : "........ you like a little sugar in your coffee?"

B : "No, thank you."

a. Would b. Are c. Does d. Were

3. Use a knife to .... vegetables and meat.

a. boil b. heat c. pour d. chop

4. .... a little cheese to the pizza, please.

a. Adding b. Add c. Adds d. To add

5. I can't do my homework because I'm .... WB

a. happy b. active c. tired d. clever

6. Many people are .... to nuts, so they shouldn't eat any of them.

a. addicted b. popular c. allergic d. ready

7. Putting too much sugar makes food .... (إدارة المطرية 2023)

a. sweet b. spicy c. salty d. juicy

8. We should have a .... diet to be healthy. (الدرس 2023)

a. translated b. horrible c. balanced d. bitter

9. We sometimes eat sfenj with .... tea. SB

a. an b. some c. many d. a lot

10. We .... things when we put them in our mouths. SB

a. see b. smell c. taste d. hear

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Hassan eats .... (a lot) fava beans every day.
2. Dad got .... (any) food from the market.
3. .... (Beats) two eggs in a bowl with little milk. SB
4. We haven't got .... (some) juice.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on: WB

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

"Your favourite meal"

....

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What's your favourite meal?**
- **Where did you find the recipe?**
- **How do you make it?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **My favourite meal is ....**
- **I found the recipe ....**
- **I make it by ....**
- **I use .... to make this meal.**



New Hello!





Watch, listen and make

Objectives

Reading:

An internet chat message; a review of an art gallery; Little Women; a review of a film

Writing:

A short review; a paragraph on a musician

Listening:

A report about an orchestra; an invitation on the telephone

Speaking:

Saying what people can do; talking about preferences and giving recommendations; inviting a person somewhere

Language:

Talking about ability: *can, know how to and be able to*

Life Skills:

Collaboration; respect for diversity



Lessons 1 & 2

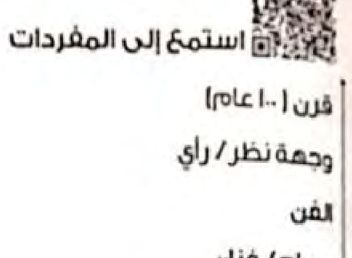
SB pages 22 - 25 WB pages 84 - 85

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

show	عرض (مسرحي مثلاً)	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
cool	رائع	point of view	وجهة نظر / رأي
cartoon	رسم كاريكاتيرى (رسم ساخر)	art	الفن
photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية	artist	رسام / فنان
photography	تصوير فوتوغرافى	favourite	مفضل
drawing	الرسم بالقلم	idea	فكرة
portrait	لوحة فنية (الوجه إنسان)	free	مجانى / حُر
pottery	أوانى فُخّار	think **(thought)**	يعتقد
sculpture	تمثال منحوت / فن النحت	recommend **(ed)**	يوصى بـ / يرشح





Activities

painting scenery
رسم «خلفية لخشبة المسرح»



sewing costumes
خياطة أزياء (ملابس)



playing instruments
عزف على آلات موسيقية



doing make-up
عمل تجميل (مكياج)



writing a script
كتابة نص (سيناريو)



acting in a play
تمثيل فى مسرحية



make sculptures
ينحت تماثيل



make pottery
يصنع أوانى فخارية



take photos
يلتقط صور



do calligraphy
يدرس فن الخط







Vocabulary

concert hall	قاعة حفلات موسيقية	colourful	زاهى الألوان / كثير الألوان
theatre	مسرح	normal	عادى / طبيعى
end-of-year	نهاية العام	recommendation	توصية / ترشيح
drama club	نادى التمثيل	TV programme	برنامج تليفزيونى
review	مقال نقدى	ancient	قديم / أثرى
statue	تمثال	musical	موسيقى
painting	لوحة مرسومة	calligraphy	فن الخط
preference	تفضيل	act (ed)	يمثل (فى فيلم / مسرحية)
Islamic area	المنطقة الإسلامية	paint (ed)	يرسم / يلون

Expressions & Prepositions

such as	على سبيل المثال	help with	يساعد فى
get ready	يستعد	(be) able to	قادر على
make me feel happy	يجعلنى أشعر بسعادة	the best at	الأفضل فى
It sounds fun.	يبدو ممتعاً	interested in	مهتم بـ
quite dark	مظلم إلى حد ما	famous for	مشهور بـ
talk to	يتحدث إلى	from my point of view	من وجهة نظرى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
pay	يدفع	paid	paid
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
sew	يخيط	sewed	sewed / sewn
show	يعرض	showed	shown
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
famous	مشهور	popular	unknown	غير معروف
normal	عادى	ordinary	abnormal	غير عادى
ancient	قديم/أثرى	very old	modern	حديث

Definitions

cartoon	رسم كاريكاتيرى (ساخر)	a funny[1] drawing usually showing people or animals
costume	زى (ملابس لمناسبة خاصة)	clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else
script	نص مكتوب (سيناريو)	the words of a film or play which the actors learn
photography	تصوير فوتوغرافى	the type of art you need a camera to do
artist	رسام/فنان	a person who paints or draws for a job
free	مجانى	without paying money
portrait	لوحة فنية (الوجه إنسان)	a painting or photograph of a person's face
pottery	اوانى فخار	things that are made from clay[2], such as cups and plates[3]
sculpture	تمثال منحوت/فن النحت	art made from stone or wood that looks like people, animals or other things
cool	رائع	great, fantastic
instrument	آلة موسيقية	an object[4] that is used for playing music
make-up	تجميل (مكياج)	what people put on their faces in order to make themselves look nice or different
recommend	يوصى بـ/يرشح	advise someone to do something or go somewhere because it is good or you like it
scenery	خلفية لخشبة المسرح	the painted background[5] of a theatre stage[6]
sew	يخيط	join two pieces of material together using a metal needle[7]
show	عرض	a play or performance[8] for people to watch

١- مضحك
٢- صلصال
٣- أطباق
٤- شئ
٥- خلفية
٦- خشبة المسرح
٧- إبرة
٨- أداء

Language Notes

1) time / times

- **time** (n) وقت (لا يعد)

Ex. What's the time?

- **times** مرات/عصور

Ex. I have seen that film three times.

Ex. The pyramids were built in ancient times.

(2) clothes / costume

- **clothes** (n)
  ملابس (جمع دائمًا)

Ex. This shop sells expensive clothes.

- **costume** (n) زي نرتديه لنبدو في هيئة معينة في مناسبة معينة (حفلة/مسرحية)

Ex. The clown is wearing a colourful costume.

(3) scenery / scene / view

- **scenery** (n) منظر طبيعي (اسم لا يُعد)
  (تستخدم للحديث عن خلفية لخشبة المسرح/ الأماكن الطبيعية التي تراها من حولك وخاصة عندما تكون جميلة)

Ex. The scenery behind the actors of the play was wonderful.

Ex. They drive slowly down the road to enjoy the scenery.

- **scene** (n) مشهد في مسرحية / موقع جريمة (اسم يُعد)

Ex. The final scene of the play was very funny.

Ex. The police arrived at the scene of the crime.

- **view** (n) مشهد/منظر (اسم يُعد)

(تستخدم للحديث عن الأشياء التي يمكن أن تراها من مكان ما)

Ex. The view of the Nile from the Cairo Tower is fantastic.

(4) help

- **help + object** مفعول **+ (to) + inf.**
  يساعد .... أن

Ex. I helped my mother (to) make the birthday cake.

يمكن أن نستخدم (to) بعد المفعول أو نحذفها

- **help .... with +** اسم
  يساعد .... في

Ex. Will you help me with my homework?

(5) cartoon / carton

- **cartoon**
  رسم كاريكاتيري (رسم ساخر)/فيلم كارتون

Ex. This magazine includes funny cartoons.

Ex. Micky Mouse is a cartoon character.

- **carton**
  عبوة من ورق مقوى (كرتونة)

Ex. This carton contains some books.

Ex. We need to buy a cartoon of eggs.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What .... do you get up?
   a. times b. time c. timing d. a time
2. The actors are wearing colourful ....
   a. costumes b. instruments c. customs d. scenes
3. This painting shows a lovely .... of the sea coast.
   a. scene b. scenery c. review d. tool
4. Jana helped a blind man .... the street.
   a. crossed b. to crossing c. crosses d. cross
5. My kids like Disney .... characters.
   a. cartoon b. cart c. carton d. car



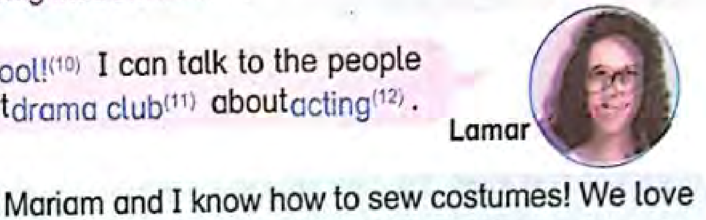
Reading SB page (23)

استمع إلى النصوص



Habiba: Mrs Medhat says we can have an end-of-year show [1]! It will be about the play [2] we read in the English class. I'm very excited [3], but I need help! Can anyone act [4] or write scripts [5]? We also need people who are able to do make-up [6], sew* costumes [7], paint scenery [8] and play instruments [9].

Lamar: Cool! [10] I can talk to the people at drama club [11] about acting [12].



Azza: Mariam and I know how to sew costumes! We love clothes and Lara is THE BEST at doing make-up!

Lara: YES!! I can do make-up.

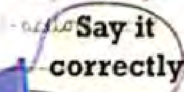
Manal: I can paint scenery if you want, but I can't do make-up. Are you able to help with music, Talia?



Talia: Yes, I can play the music! It sounds fun [13]. Habiba, you are the best at writing, can you write the script?

Habiba: OK, I can try to write something... You are all amazing!!! Thanks so much!

١- عرض
٢- مسرحية
٣- مثار/متشوق
٤- يمثل
٥- نصوص (سيناريوهات)
٦- تجميل (مكياج)
٧- يخيط ملابس
٨- يرسم منظر طبيعي
٩- يعزف على آلات موسيقية
١٠- رائع!
١١- نادي التمثيل
١٢- التمثيل
١٣- يبدو ممتعاً.



Say it correctly

- Sew — تنطق هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة go مع اختلاف نطق الحرف الأول (g)

SB Page (24)

Review[1] of the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art



By Wagdy Badr

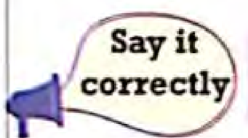
Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art[2] in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient art[3], but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21st centuries[4].

From my point of view, the artists[5] were really good because they showed[6] what life was like in Egypt in the past and now. There were portraits[7] of both important and normal[8] Egyptian people. I thought the cartoons[9] were also really cool! I also saw lots of sculptures*[10], both big and small.

My favourite thing in the museum was a painting[11] called *Al Madina* by Mahmoud Said. It made me feel happy because it was very colourful[12].

The best thing about the museum is that it is free[13] to visit! I recommend[14] visiting it if you are in Cairo, but it's a good idea to go early when it is not very busy.

١- مقال نقدى
٢- متحف الفن المصرى المعاصر
٣- فن قديم
٤- قرن (١٠٠ عام)
٥- رسامين / فنانين
٦- عرضوا
٧- لوحات فنية (الوجه إنسان)
٨- عادى
٩- رسم كاريكاتيرى
١٠- منحوتات
١١- لوحة فنية
١٢- زاهى الألوان
١٣- مجانى
١٤- يوصى بـ



* sculpture

ينطق حرف u الأول فى هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق فى كلمة cup
وينطق المقطع ture مثلما ينطق فى كلمة nature

WB Page (85)

Review of the Textile Museum in Cairo



by Injy Zaki

Last month, I visited the Textile Museum[1] in Cairo. The museum has lots of clothes from different times[2] in history. I thought[3] the clothes from Ancient Egypt[4] were fantastic. From my point of view, the statues[5] showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past. My favourite[6] thing was the Islamic[7] area where you can see different kinds of calligraphy[8]. I recommend looking at the clothes from other countries, too, such as Iran[9]. They are very interesting. If you want to take photos, it is a good idea[10] to take a good camera, because the museum is quite dark[11].

١- متحف النسيج
٢- عصور
٣- اعتقدت
٤- مصر القديمة
٥- تماثيل
٦- مفضل
٧- إسلامى
٨- فن الخط
٩- دولة إيران
١٠- فكرة
١١- مظلم إلى حد ما

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. My dress is damaged, so my mother is .... it. WB
   a. acting b. sewing c. painting d. playing
2. There are many amazing .... of people in this museum.
   a. sculptures b. pottery c. scripts d. views
3. The opposite of "famous" is ....
   a. popular b. known c. unknown d. possible
4. A .... is a funny drawing usually showing people or animals. WB
   a. cartoon b. costume c. script d. carton
5. The children all wore funny .... to the family party. Ahmed was a firefighter! WB
   a. contents b. costumes c. concerts d. customs
6. Which .... can you play? WB
   a. device b. tool c. instrument d. concert
7. Mona can't answer the phone. She is doing her .... WB
   a. scenery b. museum c. wake up d. make-up
8. We need someone to .... a scenery for the play.
   a. write b. paint c. show d. sew
9. A .... is the words for a play.
   a. trip b. step c. script d. scenery
10. The guitar is a musical ....
    a. instrument b. tool c. show d. concert
11. A / An .... is a person who draws or paints as a job.
    a. vet b. cartoon c. artist d. scientist
12. The .... which the actors are wearing are wonderful.
    a. costumes b. instruments c. customs d. scenes
13. .... means without paying money.
    a. Tree b. Free c. See d. Be

Bit by Bit Exercises

14. The .... starts at 10:00 p.m. on Channel Two today.
    a. show b. portrait c. sculpture d. check

15. The students are .... the play well on the stage.
    a. making b. writing c. acting d. sewing
16. The art museum includes sculptures, ... and paintings.
    a. pottery b. poetry c. century d. country
17. You don't need to pay for this pen. It is ....
    a. busy b. free c. expensive d. cheap
18. This magazine has lots of funny ....
    a. cartons b. carpets c. carts d. cartoons
19. Osama painted a fantastic .... of his wife's face.
    a. costume b. portrait c. show d. sculpture
20. My father will take us to the funfair next month. It .... fun.
    a. talks b. acts c. plays d. sounds

Language

Ability القدرة

Affirmative الإثبات

• للتعبير عن القدرة فى المضارع نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

فاعل + can + inf. مصدر الفعل

فاعل + know(s) how to + inf.

فاعل + am/is/are able to + inf.

Ex. I can paint scenery. Ex. Ola knows how to write scripts.
Ex. The girls are able to sew costumes.

Negative النفى

• للتعبير عدم القدرة فى المضارع نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

فاعل + can't (cannot) + inf. مصدر الفعل

فاعل + don't / doesn't know how to + inf.

فاعل + am not / isn't /aren't able to + inf.

Ex. I can't do make-up. Ex. Ola doesn't know how to play instruments.
Ex. The girls aren't able to act.

Question السؤال

• للسؤال عن القدرة فى المضارع نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

Can + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل .....?

Do/Does + فاعل + know how to + inf...?

Am/Is/Are + فاعل + able to + inf...?

Ex. Can you do make-up? Ex. Does Ola know how to play instruments?
Ex. Are the girls able to act?

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Ayman .... able to play basketball. He's very tall. البحيرة - وادى النطرون 2022
   a. are b. can c. is d. will
2. Amal knows how to .... well. She is an excellent cook. البحيرة - التحرير 2022
   a. cooks b. cook c. cooked d. cooking
3. Do you know .... to use a computer? WB
   a. what b. who c. how d. which
4. .... you able to speak French? إدارة سيوس 2023 WB
   a. Do b. Can c. Can't d. Are
5. A: .... you know how to play an instrument? B: Yes, I do. SB
   a. Do b. Are c. Is d. Does
6. .... play tennis? إدارة أبو المطامير 2023
   a. Are you can b. Do you know c. Are you able to d. You can
7. We .... travel to another country without a passport. إدارة طوخ 2023
   a. can b. are able to c. can't d. know how
8. I .... talk to people at the drama club about acting. إدارة أبو حماد 2023
   a. is able to b. can c. am able d. able
9. .... you able to carry the heavy box? إدارة بنها 2023
   a. Do b. Is c. Are d. Can
10. I know how .... a review about a story. إدارة الشرابية 2023
    a. writing b. writes c. wrote d. to write

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. .... your father able to drive a car?
    a. Does b. Are c. Is d. Can
12. Hens have got wings, but they .... fly.
    a. can't b. able to c. can d. aren't able

13. Leila knows .... write a script.
   a. how   b. how to   c. can   d. to be able

14. My sister .... how to cook. She is too young.
   a. can't   b. isn't   c. doesn't know   d. knows

15. I .... able to play well today. I trained well yesterday.
   a. can   b. can't   c. know how   d. am

16. **A:** .... you able to swim? **B:** No, I'm not, but I can play tennis.
   a. Can   b. Are   c. Do   d. Is

17. Mr Saber is blind. He .... to see.
   a. isn't able   b. can   c. knows how   d. is able

18. This artist .... how to paint scenery.
   a. can't   b. can   c. is able   d. knows

19. She is able .... her bedroom. Don't help her.
   a. to tidy   b. tidying   c. to tidying   d. tidy

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. I can .... (playing) the guitar. الجيزة - شمال الجيزة 2022
2. A firefighter .... (are) able to stop fires. WB
3. Yousef .... (can) do exercise because he is too ill. إدارة العريش 2023
4. .... (Do) he able to do his homework? إدارة الزاوية الحمراء 2023
5. .... (Be) he able to speak English? إدارة شرق شبرا الخيمة 2023
6. Rana is .... (able) tidy her room إدارة البدرشين 2023
7. .... (You can) speak English? إدارة رشيد 2023
8. I know how .... (sew) costumes. إدارة الباجور 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. Do you know how .... (use) the internet?
10. Are you .... (ability) to understand this lesson?

Speaking

1) Asking and answering about ability

السؤال والإجابة عن القدرة

• نسأل عن القدرة ونجيب باستخدام التعبيرات الآتية:

Question	Answer
A: Can you + inf..........................? هل تستطيع أن ....؟	B: Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
A: Do you know how to + inf..........? هل تعرف كيف ....؟	B: Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
A: Are you able to + inf.................? هل أنت قادر على ....؟	B: Yes, I'm. / No, I'm not, but I can ....

• ارجع الى الشرح بالتفصيل فى جزء القواعد اللغوية.

2) Talking about preferences

الحديث عن التفضيل

• للتعبير عما نفضله نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية:

- I prefer + n / v+ing .... أفضل ....
- I'd rather + inf. أفضل أن ....
- My favourite (thing) is .... افضل (شئ) لى هو ....
- I'm interested in + v-ing / n .... أنا مهتم بـ ....

Ex. Watching a film is a good idea, but I prefer (watching) a play.

Ex. I'd rather stay at home tonight.

Ex. My favourite sport is football.

3) Asking for and giving recommendations

طلب وإعطاء توصيات

• نسأل عن التوصيات كالآتى:

- Would you recommend + v-ing / n ....? هل توصى بـ/ترشح ....؟
- What do you recommend + v-ing ....? ماذا توصى بـ/ترشح....؟

Ex. Would you recommend an action film or an adventure film?

Ex. What do you recommend reading, a book or a magazine?

• لإعطاء توصيات نقول:

- I recommend (that) + فاعل + inf. / v-ing / n .... أوصى أن...........
- The best thing about .... is that .... افضل شىء عن..... هو أن ....
- It's a good idea to + inf .... أنها لفكرة جيدة أن ....

Ex. I recommend that we watch an action film.

Ex. I recommend (visiting) the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art.

Ex. It's a good idea to watch Oliver Twist.

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

2023

Mazen and Maged are talking about their hobbies.

Mazen : Where are you going, Maged?

Maged : ❶ ....

Mazen : To the club! ❷ ....?

Maged : Because I have a tennis match today.

Mazen : Great! ❸ ....?

Maged : I started playing it a year ago. It's my favourite. What about you?

Mazen : ❹ ....

Maged : Can you teach me how to play the piano?

Mazen : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. This artist makes fantastic .... using stone and wood.
   a. calligraphy b. photos c. drama d. sculptures
2. Mum asked my sister to help her .... the housework.
   a. at b. on c. with d. about
3. The ...... is fantastic in the play, you feel like you are in the mountains! WB
   a. century b. scenery c. make-up d. costume
4. .... are clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else. WB
   a. Costumes b. Scripts c. Cartoons d. Artists
5. I want to know how to .... clothes in the holidays. 2022
   a. cook b. sew c. sing d. think
6. I .... you this film to watch. 2023
   a. request b. decide c. recommend d. invite
7. This famous .... paints nice portraits.
   a. player b. actor c. artist d. archaeologist

Exercises on Language

8. When I was ten, I was able to ....? 2023
   a. swim b. swimming c. swims d. swam
9. I recommend .... this restaurant. 2022
   a. visit b. to visit c. visiting d. to visiting

10. Amany .... do her English homework alone.
    a. can b. are able to c. know how to d. able to
11. Mum .... how to make cakes at home. We don't buy any.
    a. is able to b. can c. knows d. know
12. Do you know .... this mobile? الجيزة – الساحات 2022
    a. fix b. how fix c. how to fixing d. how to fix
13. A film star knows how .... well. WB
    a. to act b. acting c. act d. acts
14. The team .... to win this game. إدارة منيا القمح 2023
    a. can b. able c. is able d. know

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. .... (Are) your father able to lift this heavy weight? القليوبية – حلوج 2022
2. My father can .... (repairs) things easily.
3. Samy can .... (did) karate. القليوبية – قها 2022
4. Can you .... (sewing)? WB
5. Maher is able .... (play) musical instruments. WB
6. .... (Able) you play football or tennis? WB

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on: WB

إجابة عنه في آخر الوحدة

A review of a museum you know "The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art"

....

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- When did you visit the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art?
- What's it famous for?
- Why were the artists really good?
- What was your favourite thing?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Last week, I visited ....
- It's famous for ....
- The artists were really good because ....
- My favourite thing is ....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 26 - 28 WB pages 86 - 87



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

orchestra	فرقة موسيقية (أوركسترا)	concert	حفل موسيقى
musician	موسيقار	hide (hid / hidden)	يخفى/يختفى
blind	كفيف (أعمى)	wonder (ed)	يتساءل - يتعجب
deaf	اصم (أطرش)	cry (ied)	يبكى
disabled	معاق/من ذوى الهمم	hug (ged) (n)	يعانق (يحضن)/عناق
play	مسرحية		

Musical instruments

violin
آلة الكمان



piano
آلة البيانو



flute
آلة الناى



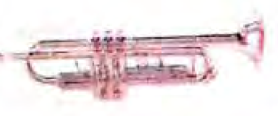
clarinet
آلة المزمار



guitar
آلة الجيتار



trumpet
آلة البوق



cello
آلة التشيللو



trombone
آلة الترمبون



Vocabulary

object	شئ	relationship	علاقة
wheelchair	كرسى متحرك (للمعاقين)	rival	منافس/ند
stairs	درجات السلم	painter	رسام
character	شخصية (فى رواية)	proud	فخور
newspaper / a paper	جريدة	recently	حديثاً - مؤخرا

traffic lights	إشارة المرور (جمع دائما)	difficulties	صعوبات
Braille	طريقة برايل للمكفوفين	practise (d)	يمارس
special school	مدرسة لذوى الهمم	imagine (d)	يتخيل
classical	كلاسيكى	shout (ed)	يصيح/يصرخ
strange	غريب	join (ed)	ينضم إلى/يلتحق بـ
radio reporter	مراسل إذاعى	reply (ied)	يرد
skill	مهارة		

Expressions & Prepositions

play music	يعزف موسيقى	on public transport	فى المواصلات العامة
have difficulties	لدية صعوبات	in a wheelchair	على كرسى متحرك
give a hug	يعانق (يحضن)	come into	يدخل إلى
make notes	يدون ملاحظات	throw .... down	يلقى بـ .... أرضاً
have a good relationship	لديه علاقة جيدة	hide behind	يختبىء خلف
read music with hands	يقرأ موسيقى باستخدام الأيدى	proud of	فخور بـ
		jump up	يقفز لأعلى
practise instruments	يتدرب على الآلات الموسيقية	at the end	فى النهاية
		shout at	يصيح على

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
find	يجد	found	found
leave	يغادر - يترك	left	left
throw....down	يلقى .... أرضاً	threw .... down	thrown .... down

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
special	خاص/مميز	particular	ordinary	عادى
hide	يختفى	disappear	appear	يظهر
classical	كلاسيكى	traditional	modern	حديث

Definitions

wonder	يتساءل	think about something and want to know why it is true
hide	يخفي / يختفي	go to a place where you cannot be seen or found, or put something in a place where it cannot be seen or found
cry	يبكي	produce water from your eyes usually because you are sad, angry or hurt
hug	يعانق	to put your arms[1] around someone and hold them closely[2], usually because you love them
blind	كفيف (أعمى)	not able to see
deaf	أصم (أطرش)	not able to hear
disabled	معاق	not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can
orchestra	فرقة موسيقية (أوركسترا)	a large group of musicians who play many different instruments together
musician	موسيقار	someone who is very good at playing music, usually as a job

1- الذراعين
2- عن قرب

Language Notes

1) feel / fall / fill / fail

- **feel (felt / felt)** يشعر

Ex. How do you feel when your father hugs you?

- **fill (ed)** يملأ

Ex. Mona filled her bag with books.

- **fall (fell / fallen)** يسقط / يقع

Ex. Snow began to fall from the sky

- **fail (ed)** يفشل

Ex. He failed his maths test.

2) start + v-ing / to + inf.

يأتي بعد الفعل (start) إما (to + inf.) أو (v-ing) بدون فارق في المعنى

Ex. She sat down and started to read / reading the story.

3) paper

- **a paper = a newspaper** جريدة (اسم يُعد)

Ex. Many people like to read papers / newspapers.

- **paper** ورق (اسم لا يُعد)

Ex. We use paper in writing letters.

4) must + be

تستخدم (must + be) بمعنى (لابد وانه .../من المؤكد أنه ....) لعمل استنتاج مؤكد في المضارع.

Ex. It must be very difficult to read music with your hands.

5) the + adj

عندما نضع (the) أمام بعض الصفات فإنها تفيد الاسم الجمع ممن يتصفون بهذه الصفة.

blind	كفيف (اعمى) →	the blind	المكفوفين
deaf	أصم (الطرش) →	the deaf	الصم
disabled	معاق →	the disabled	المعاقين/ذوى الهمم
poor	فقير →	the poor	الفقراء

6) orchestra / band

- **orchestra** اوركسترا
  (مجموعة كبيرة من العازفين لموسيقى كلاسيكية.)

Ex. I play the flute in an orchestra in the Opera House.

- **band**
  فرقة موسيقية (تعزف موسيقى شعبية)

Ex. There was a nice band in my sister's wedding.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... happy when I get high marks in my exams.
   a. fill b. fall c. feel d. fail
2. After dinner, I started .... TV.
   a. to watch b. to watching c. watch d. watched
3. A reporter wrote about the accident in a daily ....
   a. papers b. pipe c. pepper d. paper
4. He always gets high marks. He .... clever.
   a. mustn't be b. must be c. won't be d. can't be
5. .... should help poor people.
   a. Rich b. A rich c. The rich d. Riches
6. This .... plays lovely pop music.
   a. band b. bomb c. pond d. tool



SB Page (26)



استمع إلى النصوص

Radio reporter[1]:



Today I'm visiting a very special[2] school in Cairo. This is a music school for girls. All the students study their normal[3] subjects in the morning and then practise[4] their instruments in the afternoon.

Many of the students at this school join[5] an orchestra[6] called the Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra. This orchestra plays concerts[7] in Australia, Germany, China and all around the world. What is most special about the school and the orchestra is that all the students here are blind[8] !

The orchestra plays international classical[9] and Arabic music. All the students learn to read the music using Braille[10] , a type of reading you can do with your hands. Then, they have to remember the music because they can't read and play at the same time. Let's go to meet some of the musicians*[11] .

١- مراسل إذاعي
٢- خاص
٣- معتاد
٤- يمارس
٥- ينضم إلى
٦- أوركسترا (فرقة موسيقية)
٧- حفلات موسيقية
٨- كفيف (أعمى)
٩- كلاسيكي
١٠- طريقة بريل للمكفوفين
١١- موسيقيين



* musician — ينطق المقطع الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق المقطع (tion)

WB Page (86)

The Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra is at a school for blind girls in Cairo. Eman Badr is one of the musicians. She is able to play the violin[1] very well. She started playing when she was six. Eman became blind when she was two years old. She likes playing in the orchestra because she loves music and being with her friends. Recently[2] , she visited Oman[3] and France with the orchestra.



I think the orchestra is amazing[4] . It must be very difficult to read music with your hands and then remember it. I would like to go to one of their concerts.

١- آلة الكمان
٢- حديثًا
٣- دولة عمان
٤- مدهش

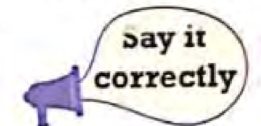


Reading SB page (28)

Little Women By Louisa May Alcott

Meg, Beth and Amy were sewing when Jo came into[1] the room with a newspaper[2]. She sat down and started to read it.
"Anything interesting?" asked Meg.
"Oh, only a story," Jo replied.
"What's it called?"[3] asked Beth. She wondered*[4] why Jo was hiding behind[5] the newspaper.
"It's called *The Rival Painters*[6]," said Jo.
"Why don't you read it to us?" asked Amy.
Jo started to read it very quickly. The girls listened carefully. The story was very sad.
"I liked it," said Meg at the end. She was crying[7] a little.
"Isn't it strange[8] that the characters[9] are called two of our favourite names?"
Beth saw Jo's face. "Who wrote the story?" she asked.
Jo jumped up, threw the paper down[10] and said, "Your sister!"
"You?" shouted[11] Meg. "It's very good!" said Amy.
"I knew it! I knew it! Oh, I am so proud[12]!" said Beth, hugging[13] her sister.

١- يدخل إلى
٢- جريدة
٣- ما اسمها؟
٤- يتساءل
٥- تختبيء خلف
٦- الرسامون المتنافسون
٧- تبكي
٨- غريب
٩- شخصيات
١٠- ألقت بالجريدة أرضًا
١١- صاحت
١٢- فخور
١٣- تعانق



* wonder — ينطق حرف (o) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق حرف (u) في كلمة (cup)



Videoscript SB Page (27)

Narrator:

Can you sing[1]? Do you know to dance? Perhaps you can act[2]. But are you able to sing and act at the same time? Actors[3] who appear[4] in opera[5] can do all of these things. An opera is a type of play[6] in which the actors sing and sometimes dance. There is also lots of music.

People can watch an opera in a special theatre[7] called an opera house[8], like this famous one in Sydney.

١- يغني
٢- يمثل
٣- ممثلون
٤- يظهر
٥- الأوبرا
٦- مسرحية
٧- مسرح
٨- دار الأوبرا

There are many famous operas, such as *Carmen, The Barber of Seville and Tosca.* Opera singers such as *Maria Callas, Placido Domingo and Luciano Pavarotti* are able to sing really well.

Guiseppe Verdi was an Italian who wrote some important operas in the 19th century. One of his most famous operas is called *Aida.*

Aida is set in Ancient Egypt. It is about a soldier[9] who loves a princess[10]. It was first performed[11] at the Khedivia Opera House in Cairo[12] in 1871. At this time, this opera house was the biggest in Africa and one of the most important opera houses in the world.

It was destroyed[13] in a fire[14] in 1971, but a new opera house opened in 1988. It is called the Cairo Opera House. This is a beautiful building on Gezira Island.

Thousands of people come here every year to watch operas and other performances[15], such as ballet[16] or music.

Do you like opera?

٩- جندي
١٠- أميرة
١١- يؤدي
١٢- دار الأوبرا الخديوية بالقاهرة
١٣- يدمر
١٤- حريق
١٥- عروض مسرحية
١٦- باليه

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. A .... person is the person who can't hear. WB المنوفية – قويسنا 2023
   a. blind b. fast c. tall d. deaf
2. Look at those people in the street. I .... what they are looking at. القليوبية – طوخ 2022
   a. wander b. wonder c. answer d. say
3. My little sister started to .... after she fell and hurt her hand. WB
   a. smile b. hide c. laugh d. cry
4. Lara always gives her grandmother a big .... when she sees her. WB
   a. skill b. fire c. hug d. concert
5. The .... is my favourite musical instrument. البحيرة – التحرير 2022
   a. carriage b. ruler c. violin d. hammer
6. A .... person is the person who is not able to see. WB
   a. blind b. deaf c. wise d. stupid
7. The violin, the piano and the guitar are musical .... شرق شبرا الخيمة 2023
   a. tools b. instruments c. machines d. materials
8. He had a terrible accident that left him .... حدائق القبة 2023
   a. disabled b. messy c. happy d. noisy
9. My sister is a/an .... in the orchestra. 2023
   a. pair b. musician c. owner d. musical

10. Try to help .... people by solving the problems that they have. 2023
    a. sleepy b. lazy c. disabled d. brave
11. Ahmed was .... behind the door, so as not to be seen. 2023
    a. hiding b. escaping c. coming d. playing

Bit by Bit Exercises

12. Samah played the cello in the .... last night.
    a. court b. country c. century d. concert
13. We have a good .... with our neighbours.
    a. relative b. relationship c. transport d. difficulty
14. Amr likes to play the guitar in a large ....
    a. character b. orchestra c. object d. musician
15. The opposite of "hide" is ....
    a. disappear b. leave c. appear d. disobey
16. He can't walk, so he uses a ....
    a. chair b. wheel c. wheelchair d. mirror
17. I .... how the ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids.
    a. wander b. promise c. advise d. wonder
18. The robbers went behind the building to .... from the policemen.
    a. hide b. show c. hit d. appear
19. The trumpet and .... are musical instruments.
    a. trombone b. tram c. tomb d. team
20. He is a famous .... He plays music in a big orchestra.
    a. magician b. architect c. musician d. dentist

General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The girl is .... She can't hear you. 2023
   a. blind b. deaf c. strong d. rich
2. The guitar is a musical 2023
   a. instrument b. tool c. show d. concert
3. Judy's little sister hurt her hand and started 2022
   a. hiding b. laughing c. crying d. wondering
4. Al Nour Wal Amal .... is amazing. It plays nice music. 2022
   a. orchestra b. reporter c. object d. game
5. To get a good job, you should have many 2022
   a. skulls b. skills c. scales d. score

6. A/An .... person is the person who is not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can.
WB محافظة العربية 2023

a. excited b. delighted c. interested d. disabled

7. The company put many advertisements in the.......... .

a. carton b. paper c. box d. notebook

8. Nada .... her father when he gave her a new mobile.

a. hugged b. hated c. hanged d. harmed

9. My cousin is .... He uses sign language.

a. blind b. tired c. strong d. deaf

2 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words: WB

to your friend Salah about someone in your family that you are proud of.

- **Your name is Ramy and your email address is ramypost@gmail.com**
- **Your friend's email address is salah666@yahoo.com**

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

....

....

....

....

....

....

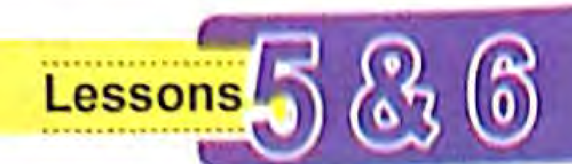
....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكترونى:

- **Who is the person you're proud of?**
- **What does he / she do?**
- **Is he/she famous?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I'm so proud of** ....
- **He / she is a famous** ....
- **Many people know him/her** ....



SB pages 29 - 31 WB pages 88 - 90



Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

theme park	متنزه ترفيهى (مدينة ملاهى)	adventure film / story	فيلم/قصة مغامرات
action	أحداث (فيلم/رواية)	invite (d)	يدعو (المناسبة)
review	مقال نقدى	escape (d)	يهرب

Words with different meanings

star (n)	نجم (سينما)/ ممثل مشهور	star(n)	نجم (في السماء)
view (n)	وجهة نظر / رأي	view (n)	منظر
park (n)	متنزه/ موقف سيارات	park(v - ed)	يركن سيارة

Vocabulary

actor	ممثل	reviewer	ناقد
invitation	دعوة (المناسبة)	main	رئيسى
request	طلب	picnic	نزهة فى الهواء الطلق
offer	عرض	table tennis	لعبة تنس الطاولة
information	معلومات	wonderland	أرض العجائب
event	حدث هام	schoolboys	طلاب مدرسة
dinosaur	ديناصور	recycle (d)	يعيد تصنيع /يعيد تدوير
exciting	مثير	die (d)	يموت
scary	مخيف	land (ed)	يهبط
real	حقيقى/واقعى		

Expressions & Prepositions

present a summary	يقدم ملخص	nearly dark	شبه مظلم
look very real	يبدو واقعى جداً	How's it going?	كيف تجري الأمور؟
make a film	يصنع فيلماً	instead of	بدلاً من
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة	on the radio	فى الراديو
See you then!	أراك حينها.	live on an island	يعيش على جزيرة
enjoy his time	يستمتع بوقته	from the top of.....	من على قمة.....
stop fires	يطفئ حرائق	think about	يفكر فى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
bring	يُحضر	brought	brought
ride	يركب (دراجة/آلة)	rode	ridden

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
real	واقعى/حقيقى	true	unreal	غير واقعى/غير حقيقى
exciting	مثير/شيق	interesting	boring	ممل
main	اساسى/رئيسى	major	minor	غير اساسى

Definitions

action أحداث (فيلم/رواية)	the things that happen in a film
escape يهرب	- leave a place that you should stay in - succeed in leaving a place where you don't want to be
review مقال نقدى	present[1] a summary, opinion and recommendation of a film, book or play
theme park متنزه ترفيهي (مدينة ملاهى)	a large park that you usually pay to go in, with big machines[2] to ride[3] on or play games on, and with cafés, restaurants, etc.
adventure مغامرة	an exciting and sometimes dangerous experience[4].
adventure film فيلم مغامرات	a film that has a lot of exciting events

١- يقدم
٢- آلات
٣- يركب (آلة)
٤- تجربة حياتية

Language Notes

1) ride / drive

- **ride** (rode / ridden) يركب (آلة - حيوان - دراجة)

Ex. The children like riding the wheel in the theme park.

Ex. Tarek always rides his bike to school.

- **drive** (drove / driven) (يقود (سيارة مثلاً

Ex. Do you know how to drive your father's car?

2) enjoy

- **enjoy + V-ing / Noun** يستمتع بـ

Ex. I enjoy (reading) adventure stories.

3) scary / scared

* **scary (adj)** مخيف

Ex. This film is about scary dinosaurs.

* **scared (adj)** خائف/مرعوب

Ex. Noura always feels scared of insects.

4) nearly / nearby

* **nearly (adv)** تقريبا

Ex. I nearly finished my homework.

* **nearby (adj)** قريب

Ex. My father works in a nearby school.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can you .... a bike, Ayman?
   a. drive b. wave c. ride d. read
2. Children usually enjoy .... cartoons.
   a. watch b. to watch c. to watching d. watching
3. I couldn't sleep after I had watched a .... film.
   a. scary b. scared c. funny d. nice
4. Amira is .... 13 years old now.
   a. near b. nearby c. nearly d. rarely



SB Page (29)

استمع إلى النصوص



Rawia : Hi, Warda!

Warda : Hi Rawia, how's it going?[1]

Rawia : Fine thanks, how are you?



Warda : Yeah, I'm good. I was wondering[2] if you would like to come to watch a film at my house tonight.

Rawia : Yeah, cool, I'd love to. Which film?

Warda : I've got the film of a famous book. Would you like to watch *Little Women*?

Rawia : Oh, yes please - I love the book! Shall I bring some drinks or snacks[3]?

Warda : I have lots of snacks but not much to drink. Could you bring some fruit juice[4]?

Rawia : Of course, no problem. What time should I come?

Warda : About 7 p.m?

Rawia : Great! See you then.

١- كيف الأحوال؟
٢- اتساءل
٣- وجبات خفيفة
٤- عصير فواكه

SB Page (31)

Sami : Hi Omar, I was wondering if you were busy[1] tonight.
Omar : No, I'm not busy. Why?
Sami : Would you like to come to my house to listen to some music?
Omar : Yes, that sounds cool! Shall I bring anything?
Sami : Yes, could you bring your guitar and we can play some songs, too?
Omar : Good idea[2]! What time should I come?
Sami : About 8 p.m. See you then!

١- مشغول
٢- فكرة جيدة



Reading SB P. (30)



A review[1] of *Jurassic World*

Jurassic World[2] is an adventure film[3]. The stars[4] of the film are Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas Howard. It is about a theme park[5] where scientists[6] have helped dinosaurs[7] to live again! Then some of the dinosaurs escape[8]. What will happen?

I thought the action[9] was exciting[10] and my favourite thing was the scary[11] dinosaurs; they look very real[12]. But, in my opinion the story isn't very interesting or new. I recommend this film if you like exciting and scary films, but not if you want a good story.

١- مقال نقدى
٢- العالم الجوارسى (زمن وجود الديناصورات)
٣- فيلم مغامرات
٤- نجوم سينما
٥- متنزه ترفيهى «مدينة ملاهى»
٦- علماء
٧- ديناصورات
٨- يهرب
٩- أحداث فيلم/رواية
١٠- مثير
١١- مخيف
١٢- حقيقى/واقعى

WB Page (88)

Salem : Hi Nader. I was wondering if you would like to come to my cousin's house tomorrow.
Nader : Yes, I would love to. It's a big house, isn't it?
Salem : Yes, he's got table tennis[1] in the garden. Would you like to play?
Nader : Yes, please! Shall I bring some table tennis balls?
Salem : No, he's got those. Could you bring some food? We'll have a picnic[2].
Nader : Of course, I'll bring some sandwiches. What time should I come?
Salem : We're leaving my house at 10 a.m.
Nader : Great! See you then.

١- لعبة تنس الطاولة
٢- نزهة فى الهواء الطلق

WB Page (89)



A review of Lord of the Flies

Lord of the Flies[1] is an adventure story[2]. It is by the British writer[3] William Golding.

It is about some schoolboys[4] who have to live on an island[5] after their plane lands[6] in the sea and the pilot[7] dies. How will the boys live on the island, and will they escape?

I thought the action was exciting and many amazing[8] things happen to the boys. My favourite part was early in the story, when the children enjoy their time on the island. But, in my opinion[9], some of the children are horrible[10] and I did not like them.

I recommend the book because it makes you think about what it is like to live only with other children, but it is not a very happy story.

١- أمير الذباب «اسم رواية»
٢- قصة مغامرات
٣- كاتب بريطاني
٤- طلاب مدرسة
٥- جزيرة
٦- تهبط
٧- طيار
٨- مدهش
٩- في رأيي
١٠- فظيع/سيء جدًا

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Don't .... your car outside the school. WB
   a. bark b. land c. mark d. park
2. .... is the things that happen in a film. WB
   a. Action b. Nation c. Review d. Picnic
3. Let's go to the .... I want to play and fly our kites. إدارة رشيد 2023
   a. work b. bank c. park d. market
4. Every night I see a lot of .... in the sky. إدارة سنورس 2023
   a. stars b. reviews c. parks d. picnics
5. The actor became a .... after he was in that famous film. WB
   a. thief b. star c. park d. review
6. A .... park is a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc. WB
   a. thin b. same c. scene d. theme
7. The lions in the zoo were very .... إسنا 2022
   a. scary b. proud c. difficult d. friendly

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. The scenery in this painting looks very .... I like it.
   a. real b. horrible c. scared d. boring
9. Policemen were everywhere, so the thief wasn't able to ....
   a. park b. present c. offer d. escape
10. The big wheel is a wonderful machine you can .... at the funfair.
   a. drive b. read c. ride d. land
11. I will .... my friends to my house for dinner.
   a. die b. invite c. invent d. recycle
12. I have read a .... of an adventure film. It showed that it is a good film.
   a. star b. park c. picnic d. review
13. I want to live .... an island with my family.
   a. about b. off c. on d. form
14. I think the thief .... from the policemen.
   a. invited b. recycled c. enjoyed d. escaped
15. Many people like to watch .... films.
   a. memory b. adventure c. invitation d. rough
16. I hope we will .... our time at the park tomorrow.
   a. recycle b. escape c. enjoy d. invite

Speaking

1 Making invitations

تقديم الدعوات

• لتقديم دعوات نقول:

- I'd like to invite you to + inf. .... — اريد ان ادعوك إلى ....
- I'd like you to + inf. .... — اريدك ان ....
- Would you like to + inf. ....? — هل تريد ان ....؟
- I was wondering if you would like to + inf. ..... — كنت أتساءل إذا كنت تريد ان......

Accepting	Refusing
- I'd love to. احب ذلك.	- I'm afraid. It won't be possible. أسف سيكون ذلك غير ممكن.
- That / It sounds great. (ذلك) يبدو رائعا.	- I'd love to, but I can't because .... أود ذلك ولكنى لن أستطيع لأن.....
- OK, with pleasure. حسنا، بكل سرور.	

Ex. A : I was wondering if you would like to come to my house tomorrow.
B : I'd love to. / I'm afraid. It won't be possible.

2) Asking about and giving opinion

السؤال عن وإبداء الرأى

• نسأل عن الرأى كالآتى:

- Do you think (that) ....? هل تعتقد (أن)..........؟
- What do you think of / about ....? ما رأيك فى.............؟
- What is your view of / about ....? ما هى وجهة نظرك فى.........؟

• للتعبير عن الرأى نقول:

- In my view,........../ From my point of view..... من وجهة نظرى.......
- In my opinion, ... فى رأيى............
- I think ..... أعتقد ....
- No, I don't think so. لا . لا أعتقد ذلك.

Ex. A: What do you think about the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art?
B: In my view, the paintings are really good.

3) Making offers

تقديم عروض

• لتقديم عرض نقول:

- Shall I + inf. ....? هل .....؟
- Would you like me to + inf. ....? هل تريدنى أن ......؟

Ex. Shall I bring some food for the picnic?
Ex. Would you like me to play music?

4) Making requests

تقديم الطلبات

• للطلب نقول:

- Could you + inf..............? هل بمكنك أن.............؟
- I was wondering if you could + inf..... كنت أتساءل هل بمكنك أن.......

Ex. Could you bring some food for the picnic?
Ex. I was wondering if you could bring some food for the picnic.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

2022 إدارة ...

Sami is inviting Ali to attend his birthday party.

Ali : Hi Sami.

Sami : Hi Ali. It's my birthday party tomorrow.

Ali : ❶ ....

Sami : Will you come to the party?

Ali : ❷ ....?

Sami : It starts at 7 o'clock.

Ali : ❸ ....?

Sami : All our friends will come.

Ali : Where will you have the party?

Sami : ❹ ....

Ali : What present would you like for your birthday?

Sami : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. This .... encourages me to read the book.
   a. accident b. park c. review d. invention
2. A: What do you think .... "Lord of the Flies"?
   B: I think it's a fantastic story.
   a. in b. on c. at d. about
3. A: Who should we .... to my birthday party?
   B: All your friends.
   a. invite b. invent c. discover d. call
4. "Jurassic World" is an exciting .... film. I always enjoy watching it.
   a. review b. adventure c. camera d. theme
5. .... my point of view, this artist is not very good.
   a. From b. On c. In d. For

Exercises on Language

6. .... you lend me some money, Hazem?
   a. Are b. Has c. Could d. Was
7. Would you like me .... this bag for you?
   a. carry b. to carry c. to carrying d. carrying

Unit 9 Review

Key Vocabulary

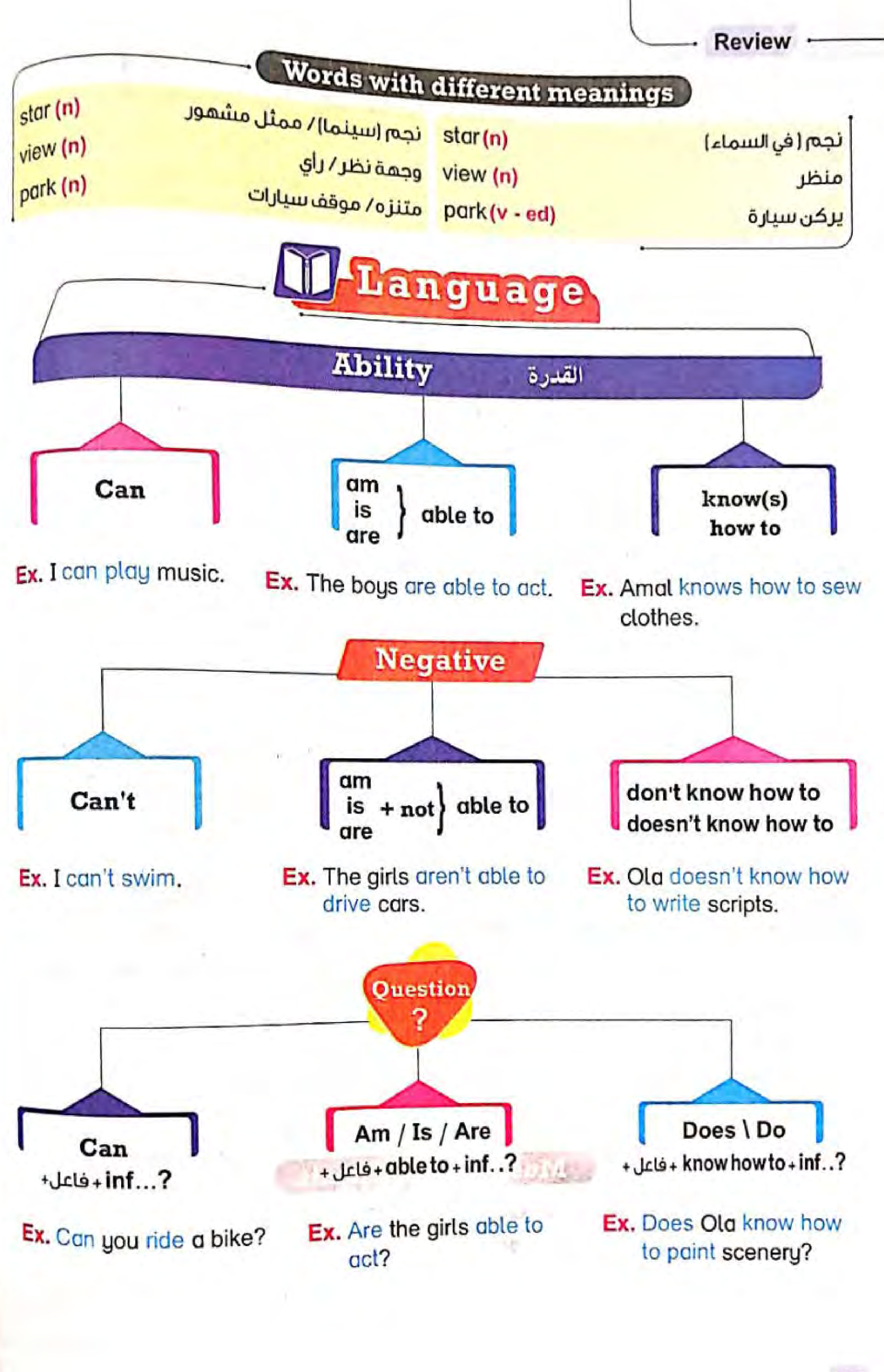
show	عرض (مسرحي مثلًا)	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
cool	رائع	point of view	وجهة نظر/رأي
cartoon	رسم كاريكاتيرى / رسوم متحركة	art	الفن
photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية	artist	رسام/فنان
photography	تصوير فوتوغرافى	favourite	مفضل
drawing	الرسم بالقلم	idea	فكرة
portrait	لوحة فنية (لوجه إنسان)	free	مجانى/حر
pottery	أوانى فخَّار	concert	حفل موسيقى
sculpture	تمثال منحوت/فن النحت	adventure film / story	فيلم/قصة مغامرات
orchestra	فرقة موسيقية / (أوركسترا)	think (thought)	يعتقد
musician	موسيقار	hide (hid / hidden)	يخفى/يختفى
blind	كفيف (أعمى)	recommend (ed)	يوصى بـ/يرشح
deaf	اصم (أطرش)	wonder (ed)	يتساءل - يتعجب
disabled	معاق (من ذوي الهمم)	cry (ied)	يبكى
theme park	متنزه ترفيهى (مدينة ملاهى)	hug (ged) (n)	يعانق (يحضن)/عناق
action	أحداث (فيلم/رواية)	invite (d)	يدعو (المناسبة)
review	مقال نقدى	escape (d)	يهرب
play	مسرحية		

Activities

painting scenery	رسم «خلفية لخشبة المسرح»	sewing costumes	خياطة أزياء (ملابس)
playing instruments	عزف على آلات موسيقية	doing make-up	عمل تجميل (مكياج)
writing a script	كتابة نص (سيناريو)	acting in a play	تمثيل فى مسرحية
make sculptures	ينحت تماثيل	make pottery	يصنع أوانى فخار
take photos	يلتقط صور	do calligraphy	يدرس فن الخط

Musical instruments

violin	آلة الكمان	guitar	آلة الجيتار
piano	آلة البيانو	trumpet	آلة البوق
flute	آلة الناى	cello	آلة التشيللو
clarinet	آلة المزمار	trombone	آلة الترمبون



Words with different meanings

star (n)	نجم (سينما) / ممثل مشهور	star (n)	نجم (في السماء)
view (n)	وجهة نظر / رأي	view (n)	منظر
park (n)	متنزه / موقف سيارات	park (v - ed)	يركن سيارة

Language

Ability القدرة

Can	am / is / are } able to	know(s) how to
Ex. I can play music.	**Ex.** The boys are able to act.	**Ex.** Amal knows how to sew clothes.

Negative

Can't	am / is / are + not } able to	don't know how to / doesn't know how to
Ex. I can't swim.	**Ex.** The girls aren't able to drive cars.	**Ex.** Ola doesn't know how to write scripts.

Question ?

Can + فاعل + inf...?	Am / Is / Are + فاعل + able to + inf..?	Does \ Do + فاعل + know how to + inf..?
Ex. Can you ride a bike?	**Ex.** Are the girls able to act?	**Ex.** Does Ola know how to paint scenery?

Speaking

1) Asking about and answering about ability

السؤال الإجابة عن القدرة

• نسأل عن القدرة ونجيب باستخدام التعبيرات الآتية:

A: Can you + inf. ....? B: Yes, I can./ No, I can't.
A: Do you know how to + inf. ....? B: Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
A: Are you able to + inf. ....? B: Yes, I'm. /No, I'm not, but I can............

2) Talking about preferences

الحديث عن التفضيل

• للتعبير عما نفضله نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية:

- I prefer + n / v+ing ....
- My favourite (thing) is ....
- I'd rather + inf.
- I'm interested in + v-ing / n.

3) Asking for and giving recommendations

طلب وإعطاء توصيات

• نسأل عن التوصيات كالآتى:

- Would you recommend (n / v-ing) ....?
- What do you recommend + v-ing. ....?

• لعمل التوصيات نقول:

- I recommend (that) فاعل + inf. / v-ing / n ....
- The best thing about + noun .... is that ....
- It's a good idea to + inf. ....

4) Making invitations

تقديم الدعوات

• لتقديم دعوات نقول:

- I'd like to invite you to + inf. ....
- I'd like you to + inf. ....
- Would you like to + inf. ....?
- I was wondering if you would like to + inf. ....

Accepting	Refusing
- I'd love to.	- I'm afraid. It won't be possible.
- That / It sounds great.	- I'd love to, but I can't because ....
- OK, with pleasure.	

5) Asking about and giving opinion

السؤال عن وابداء الراي

• نسأل عن الراى كالآتى:

- Do you think (that) ....?
- What is your view of / about ....?
- What do you think of / about ....?

• للتعبير عن الراى نقول:

- In my view, / From my point of view,.......
- In my opinion, ...
- I think .....
- No, I don't think so.

6) Making offers

تقديم عروض

• لتقديم عرض نقول:

- Shall I + inf. ....?
- Would you like me to + inf. ....?

7) Making requests

تقديم طلبات

• للطلب نقول:

- Could you + inf..............?
- I was wondering if you could + inf.....

General Exercises on Unit 9

1 Complete the following dialogue: زملي 2023

Ali is asking Ahmed about his favourite hobby.

Ali : **What's your favourite hobby, Ahmed?**

Ahmed : ❶ ....

Ali : What musical instrument do you play?

Ahmed : ❷ ....?

Ali : ❸ ....

Ahmed : I started playing the violin last year.

Ali : ❹ ....?

Ahmed : No, it's very easy to play.

Ali : Could you teach me how to play it?

Ahmed : ❺ .... Let's start tomorrow.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. There is a .... of the king at the entrance of the museum.
   a. sculpture b. skill c. view d. show
2. This museum was built in the 18th ....
   a. country b. concert c. century d. character
3. It is nearly dark. Look, I can see a/an .... WB
   a. star b. review c. sun d. picnic
4. The blind man is not able to .... the traffic lights. WB
   a. hear b. smell c. see d. taste
5. Mr Ali gave his children a quick ...., then he got into his car.
   a. hug b. hair c. heart d. head
6. We want to eat outside. Which restaurant do you ....?
   a. burn b. recover c. mend d. recommend
7. Is it all right to .... my car here?
   a. mark b. park c. bark d. escape
8. Mickey Mouse is a .... character. ادارة المطرية 2023
   a. cartoon b. musical c. real d. true

Exercises on Language

9. A clever student knows how .... an exam easily.
   a. to pass b. pass c. to passing d. passes
10. Our teacher .... explain the lessons wonderfully. WB
    a. is able b. can c. knows how d. able to
11. .... you read this English word; I can't read it?
    a. Does b. Does c. Can d. Are
12. .... you help me answer these difficult questions?
    a. Is b. Does c. Can d. Are
13. I know .... to make coffee.
    a. whose b. what c. which d. how
14. .... you able to speak English? ادارة بني سويف 2023
    a. Are b. Do c. Is d. Can

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. I .... (can) go to school on foot; it's too far.
2. .... (Be) they able to write scripts? البحيرة – التحرير 2022
3. .... (Do) your brother know how to fly a kite?
4. Mr Ashraf .... (can't) speak English very well. He is very good at it.
5. Do your sisters know how .... (sewing) clothes?
6. .... (Do) you able to speak German? إدارة حدائق القبة 2023
7. Mother is able .... (play) basketball.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on: WB

(مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

"Difficulties that disabled people have"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Who are disabled people?
- How can we help them?
- How should we treat them?
- Are they important to our country? How?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Disabled people can't ....
- We can help disabled people by ....
- We should treat them ....

Unit 9

Al Azhar Test



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. Eman Badr is a/an ....
   a. mechanic b. electrician c. musician d. engineer
2. She started playing the violin when she was ....
   a. six b. seven c. sixteen d. eight

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the the following dialogue:

Taha is telling Salah that his team are playing a match next week.

Taha : We are going to play a match next week?

Salah : 1 ....

Taha : We are going to play against the Red team.

Salah : 2 ....?

Taha : The match will be at the National Club.

Salah : Will it be cool?

Taha : 3 ....

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can't go out with you. I am very ....
   a. lazy b. easy c. busy d. free
2. He likes music. He wants to be a / an ....
   a. engineer b. musician c. waiter d. writer
3. I can't eat this food. It's ....
   a. delicious b. nice c. horrible d. healthy
4. I don't know .... do this exercise.
   a. what to b. how to c. how for d. who to
5. I can .... this heavy box.
   a. carries b. carry c. carried d. carrying

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

On Monday, an exciting new shop is opening in the city centre. The Eco-shop only sells things that are environmentally-friendly. Last week, we talked to the owner, Mariam, about her new shop. She is going to sell local fruit, vegetables and other local things that don't damage the environment.People can also bring glass, plastic and paper to the shop for recycling. Mariam decided to help the environment and had the idea of a shop. **It** is having an opening party at 1 pm. in three days' time.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where is the shop opening?

----

2. What is the name of the shop?

----

3. Why did Mariam decide to open her shop?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The shop sells things that --------- the environment.
   a. damage   b. protect   c. kill   d. carry
5. The underlined "**it**" refers to ---------
   a. the idea   b. the party   c. the shop   d. recycling

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. come - should - **What** - I - time? ---------------------------------
2. have - dinosaurs - helped - to live - **Scientists** - again. ---------------------
3. famous - is - **Egypt** - its - for - art - ancient. ---------------------------
4. I - **Last month**, - Cairo - in - visited - the museum. ---------------------

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

"A review of a film you have just watched (Jurassic World)"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What's the name of the film?**
- **What's it about?**
- **What do you think of it?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I watched a film called** ---.
- **The film is about** ---.
- **In my opinion, the action is** ------------------- / **the story is** ------------.

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني وردت بالوحدة

Paragraphs

1- A review of a museum I know "The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art"

Last week, I visited the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art. It is in Cairo. It's famous for art in Egypt from the 20th and 21st centuries. The artists were really good. They showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now. The cartoons were also really cool! I also saw lots of sculptures. My favourite thing was a painting called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said. I recommend it to all my friends.

2- Difficulties that disabled people have

We see disabled people around us. There are blind people who can't see. There are deaf people who can't hear. There are some people who can't walk. They are useful to our country. Some of them do important jobs. Try to help disabled people. Do not leave bags on the floor on public means of transport. Tell a blind person about objects on the street. Shout at a person if you think they can't hear you. Ask a person in a wheelchair if they need help. We should all treat them as normal people like us.

3- A review of a film I have just watched "Jurassic World" (Azhar)

I watched a film called "Jurassic World." It is an adventure film. I think the action is exciting. But, in my opinion, the story isn't very interesting or new. I recommend this film if you like exciting and scary films.

Emails

1- Someone in my family that I'm proud of

From : ramypost@gmail.com
To : salah666@yahoo.com
Subject : Someone in my family that I am proud of

Dear Salah,
How are you? How is your family? I write this email to tell you about my family. My grandparents live with us. I am so proud of my grandfather. He doesn't work now. He was a famous musician in the past. He played the violin. He played in a famous orchestra. Many people know him. They like his music very much. You can see his shows on YouTube. I'd like to know about your family, too. Write to me soon.
With my best wishes.
Yours,
Ramy

2- An invitation to my birthday

From : hassanpost@gmail.com
To : emad666@yahoo.com
Subject : An invitation
Dear Emad,
How are you and your family? It's a pleasure to tell you that my birthday is next Sunday. I was wondering if you could come to my house on that day. I'll be very happy if you come. All our friends will be there. We are having a big party. We will spend a nice time. We will eat cakes, play games and have fun. The party will start at 8 p.m. Please, don't be late.
Yours,
Hassan

Unit 9



TEST

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker visited a .... last month.
   a. theatre b. museum c. pyramid d. temple
2. The place that the speaker visited was in ....
   a. Cairo b. Aswan c. Luxor d. Giza
3. Egypt is famous for its ancient ....
   a. music b. history c. art d. monuments
4. The speaker was interested in seeing art by ....
   a. Americans b. Africans c. Japanese d. Egyptians

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Galal is inviting Mustafa to the zoo.

Galal : Hi, would you like to go to the zoo with us?

Mustafa : ❶ ....

Galal : We can spend a nice time there.

Mustafa : ❷ ....?

Galal : No, but could you bring some fruit?

Mustafa : Of course. ❸ ....?

Galal : At 7 a.m.

Mustafa : Where will we meet?

Galal : ❹ ....

Mustafa : OK. Goodbye! ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I read a review of the story "Oliver Twist". The story is about a child whose mother died when he was born. Oliver was a sad boy. He worked hard when he was a child and he had no money. He escaped to London. In London, he met Fagin, the leader of some thieves, who taught children how to steal. Luckily, Oliver found people who took good care of **him** and helped him. My favourite character is Mr Brownlow, who took care of Oliver and loved him.

In my opinion, the story is very exciting. I liked the fact that Fagin tried to change Oliver, but Oliver continued to be a good boy. I liked the end of this story.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the passage about?

----

2. Who was Fagin?

----

3. Why do you think Oliver escaped?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer read a .... of "Oliver Twist".
   a. review b. letter c. film d. message
5. Oliver's mother .... when he was born.
   a. married b. worked c. escaped d. died
6. The underlined pronoun "**him**" refers to ....
   a. the writer b. Fagin c. Oliver d. Mr Brownlow

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In my ...., Egypt has the finest weather.
   a. vision b. view c. review d. revision
2. I .... play music, but I can't paint.
   a. can't b. am not able to
   c. don't know how to d. am able to
3. .... people cannot walk. WB الجيزة - شمال الجيزة 2022
   a. Disabled b. Deaf c. Dumb d. Strong
4. My father knows how .... his car himself.
   a. repair b. repairing c. to repairing d. to repair
5. Many famous .... act in that new film. I recommend it.
   a. moons b. stars c. writers d. reviewers
6. My little child is skillful at ...., he uses a pencil.
   a. drawing b. sewing c. painting d. acting
7. Manal opened her arms and gave her mother a big ....
   a. harm b. half c. hug d. hit
8. This deaf boy is not able to .... me. WB
   a. see b. talk c. walk d. hear

9. Hamid .... able to play basketball. He is very tall.
   a. is   b. are   c. knows   d. can
10. "Titanic" is a film that is full of ....
   a. act   b. review   c. action   d. report

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. All the students in my class know how .... (writing) in English.
2. I .... (can) read this English word. I'll ask Mr Ali to help me.
3. Miss Walaa .... (are) able to teach young children cleverly.
4. .... (you know) how to do any of the types of arts?

البحيرة - وادي النطرون 2022

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on: WB (مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

to your friend Emad inviting him to your birthday party.

-Your name is Hassan and your email address is hassanpost@gmail.com

-Your friend's email address is emad666@yahoo.com

....

....

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكتروني:

- **Why do you send this email?**
- **What do you invite your friend to?**
- **Who will be in the party?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **It's a pleasure to tell you that** ....
- **I was wondering if you** ....
- **The party will start at** ....



SB pages 32 - 33 WB pages 91 - 92

Key Vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات

play	مسرحية	mistakes	أخطاء
acting	تمثيل	ruler	حاكم
Julius Caesar	يوليوس قيصر	mask	كمامة
COVID 19	مرض فيروس كورونا «كوفيد ١٩»	committee	لجنة
safely	بأمان	food stall	كشك لبيع الطعام
mostly	غالباً	Handball World Championship	بطول العالم لكرة اليد
medical	طبي		



SB page (32)




استمع إلى النصوص

Medical advice for people at the 2021 Handball World Championship

- Stand 1.5 metres from other people.
- Enter and leave the stadium[1] through the correct doors.
- Take a test for COVID 19[2] every 72 hours.
- Only players do not need to wear a mask[3].
- Only online interviews[4] after games.

١- استاد
٢- فيروس كورونا
٣- كمامة
٤- مقابلة شخصية

SB Page (32)

There will be a lot of players at the 2021 Men's Handball World Championship[1]. The Championship's medical committee[2] want to make sure that all the people at the competition are able to play together safely[3]. For that reason[4], they want only a few people to use the doors to the stadium at the same time. People who are not playing need to wear a mask. You can find a lot of these just outside the stadium and they are free[5] to use. All players should know how to get a COVID 19 test[6] every 72 hours.



١- بطولة
٢- لجنة طبية
٣- بأمان
٤- سبب
٥- مجاني
٦- فحص/اختبار

SB Page (32)



Review of Julius Caesar

Last night, I went to see *Julius Caesar*. It's a play[1] by the English writer William Shakespeare, but it's about a Roman ruler[2]. Caesar's costume[3] made him look very important! The scenery[4] was amazing and it really looked like Ancient Rome.

In my opinion, the story is very sad and I cried at the end. From my point of view, the actor[5] who played Caesar was the best but all the acting[6] was very good. I will never forget this play, but there wasn't much action[7]: it was mostly talking. And it was three hours long! If you watch a Shakespeare play, you should know that the language of the script[8] is different to modern English so it can be difficult to understand, but I liked it.

١- مسرحية
٢- حاكم
٣- زى
٤- منظر طبيعى «خلفية»
٥- ممثل
٦- تمثيل
٧- حركة/احداث
٨- نص/سيناريو

SB Page (33)



HELP WITH SPECIAL CONCERT AT CHILDREN'S HOSPITAL!

You don't need to know how to play an instrument[1] or sing, but we need people who can paint scenery, help with make-up and costumes and help the children before and after the concert[2].

Email Mr Zaki, the music teacher, if you would like to help.

١- آله موسيقية
٢- حفلة موسيقية

WB Page (92)

(1) Review for a play

The people look like they are from Ancient Egypt because the costumes are very good, but the person who painted the scenery did not know how to paint! It was very long, and I didn't like the music. I wouldn't recommend[1] this.

(2) Review for a magazine

The articles are always really interesting to read and they have fantastic photographs[2], too. I really like the cartoons[3] because they make me laugh! If you want to learn about the world today, you should buy this!

(3) Review for a museum

From my point of view, this is the best place to find out about life in the last century. There are interesting sculptures[4] of people and some amazing old technology. I loved the big, old phones[5]!

(4) Review for a book

The story was very slow and there was very little action. I didn't really enjoy it because it made[6] me feel sad. The best[7] thing about it was learning what it is like to be blind. That must be very difficult.

١- يوصى بـ
٢- صور فوتوغرافية
٣- رسوم كاريكاتير
٤- منحوتات
٥- هواتف
٦- تجعل
٧- افضل

Audioscript SB Page (33)

Heba : What's your favourite food, Sara? I like fruit, such as a nice juicy mango! I like fruit more than anything else .... and the fruit I like best of all ... It's difficult to decide".

Sara : I like fruit too Heba, but my favourite food is a nice, fresh falafel[1]. There is a food stall[2] near my house where they are very good, and my mum sometimes cooks them, too.

١- فلافل (طعمية) طازجة
٢- كشك لبيع الطعام

Heba : What things do you know how to cook, Sara? I can make omelettes and salads, but I don't know how to make many things.

Sara : I know how to make cakes. My grandmother taught me. I love making cakes, but I eat too many of them. I should eat more fruit.

Heba : Yes, I eat too many cakes, too! I don't do enough exercise. I have a sports lesson at school once a week, and I go for a walk a few times a month with my cousins but that's all. What about you?

Sara : I play tennis twice a week and I run with my father at the weekend, so I do enough exercise, but I often spend too much time playing computer games in the evenings, so I go to bed late.

Heba : Yes, I spend too much time online in the evenings, too. Let's try to do more exercise next week, Sara!

Sara : Good idea, Heba!

WB Page (91)

Amal : It's Mum's birthday. Let's make her some breakfast.
Dalida : That's a good idea, Amal. We could make her a fruit salad.
Amal : I think she prefers salty food to sweet food, Dalida. What about a cheese omelette?
Dalida : Omelette is a good idea. Would you like to get the butter from the fridge, Amal?
Amal : OK.
Dalida: Shall I beat the eggs? I like doing that. How many eggs should I use?
Amal : Thanks. Dalida. If there are four of us, you should use eight eggs.
Dalida : Do you know how to chop the cheese, Amal.
Amal : Of course.
Dalida : It's a good idea to chop the cheese really small. I'll heat some butter in the pan and pour in the eggs.
Amal : How long should it cook for?
Dalida : We'll leave it for a few minutes.
Amal : It looks really nice. I'd like a lot please.
Dalida : We can all have a little. Mum will be very pleased!

Test on Units 7, 8 & 9



A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. The articles in the book are always ....

a. boring b. interesting c. bad d. horrible

2. The articles have fantastic ...., too.

a. stories b. news c. writings d. photographs

3. The speaker really likes the ....

a. cartoons b. papers c. men d. writers

4. The cartoons make the speaker ....

a. cry b. study c. laugh d. speak

B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Adel and Hossam are talking about a play.

Adel : Last night, I went to see Julius Caesar.

Hossam : What is it?

Adel : ❶ ....

Hossam : ❷ ....?

Adel : The English writer William Shakespeare.

Hossam : ❸ ....?

Adel : It's about a Roman ruler.

Hossam : What do you think about it?

Adel : ❹ .... The story is very sad.

Hossam : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

One day a crow picked up a piece of cheese from the ground in its beak. It flew up into a tree. A hungry fox saw the crow with the cheese.

The fox wanted to make the crow get away from the cheese. He looked up and smiled at the crow. "What a beautiful bird you are," he said.

The crow said nothing.

"What lovely feathers you have got,!" the fox said.

The crow said nothing.

"Have you got a beautiful voice as well?" the fox asked.

The crow opened its beak to sing so that she could show the fox. **It** fell to the ground. The fox ate it up greedily.

"Thank you," said the fox and ran off.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What did the crow do after it picked the piece of cheese?

....

2. What did the fox want?

....

3. Do you think the crow had a beautiful voice?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The fox is a/an .... animal.

a. lazy   b. clever   c. fool   d. honest

5. The underlined word "**It**" refers to the..........

a. fox   b. crow   c. cheese   d. ground

6. In the end, the fox .... the piece of cheese.

a. got   b. lost   c. threw   d. sold

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you meet other people, you .... stand 1.5 metres away from them. SB

a. will   b. should   c. are   c. have

2. There are .... people on the bus. WB

a. a few   b. much   c. a lot   d. any

3. The .... in that magazine really make me laugh.

a. rulers   b. screens   c. cartoons   d. cartons

4. We watched really amazing .... at the museum.

a. trips   b. sculptures   c. picnics   d. beds

5. That film isn't very interesting. I'd never .... it.
   a. hate b. dislike c. comment d. recommend
6. The best part of the play was the fantastic ....
   a. camera b. scenery c. cartoon d. screen
7. All of us should wear .... to help stop COVID19.
   a. masks b. glasses c. trousers d. caps
8. .... you able to help with make-up, Leila?
   a. Do b. Have c. Are d. Will
9. .... clothes is an interesting work.
   a. Playing b. Writing c. Acting d. Sewing
10. This.......... shows all the details of an old man's face.
   a. portrait b. crop c. script d. scenery

⑤ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1- If you .... (not study) well, you will get low marks.

2- If you know how to cook, you .... (work) in a restaurant. SB

3- There were not .... (some) students at school yesterday.

4- This player .... (can't) run fast, but he can't score goals.

E Writing

⑥ Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

"A review of something you enjoyed"

....

....

....

....

....

....



New Hello!



We are what we wear

Objectives

Reading:
An article about Egyptian clothes now and in the past; a blog about what teenagers wear; a text about linen and cotton; an advert

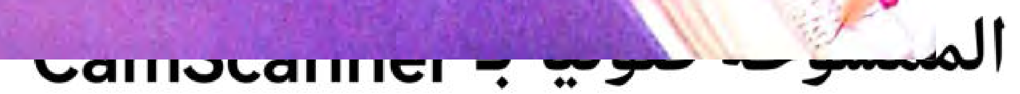
Writing:
An advert to sell something

Listening:
People talking about their clothes; a conversation in a clothes shop

Speaking:
Discussing and describing clothes; shopping for clothes

Language:
Adjective order; one, ones
this / that, these / those (revision)

Life Skills:
Respect for diversity



Key Vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات

	belt	حزام
	earrings	قرط (حلق)
	headscarf (headscarves)	غطاء للرأس (حجاب)
	galabeya	جلباب
	scarf (scarves)	شال / وشاح / كوفية
	sunglasses	نظارة شمس
	handbag	حقيبة يد (حريمى)
	sandals	صندل
	trainers	حذاء رياضى

Adjectives for clothes

smart	أنيق / مهندم	pretty	جميل
traditional	تقليدى	colourful	زاهى الألوان / ذو ملابس زاهية
comfortable	مريح (للملابس) / مستريح (للشخص)	casual*	غير رسمى (ملابس)
uncomfortable	غير مريح	nice	لطيف
loose	فضفاض / واسع	simple	بسيط
strange	غريب	striped*	مقلم / مخطط

Clothes and materials

shirt	قميص	cotton	القطن
jumper	بلوفر	linen	الكتان
trousers	بنطلون	gold	الذهب
skirt	جيبة	metal	المعدن
shorts	شورت	leather	الجلد المدبوغ
jeans	بنطلون جينز	glass	الزجاج
		plastic	البلاستيك
		wool	الصوف

Vocabulary

sheet	ملاءة	a bit	قليلاً
material	مادة خام	necklace	عُقد
boot	حذاء برقبة (بوت)	similar	مشابه/متشابه
shoes	حذاء	differently	بشكل مختلف
climate	مناخ	flat	شقة
relaxed	مسترخى/مستريح	electric	كهربي (يعمل بالكهرباء)
style	نمط/أسلوب	wooden	خشبى
size	حجم/ مقاس	protect (ed)	يحمى
clothing	الملابس (الملبس)	dress (ed)(n)	يرتدى / فستان
jewellery	مجوهرات		

Expressions & Prepositions

look like	يشبه	with a belt	بحزام
keep warm / cool	يحتفظ بالدفء/بالبرودة	look for	يبحث عن
most of the time	معظم الوقت	protect.... from	يحمى...... من
the same as	مثل	take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
feel relaxed	يشعر بالراحة	dress in a traditional style	يرتدى زى تقليدى
look smart	يبدو أنيقًا	type of	نوع من
(be) made of	مصنوع من		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
make	يصنع	made	made

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
loose	واسع / فضفاض	baggy	tight	ضيق
heavy	ثقيل	weighty	light	خفيف
cheap	رخيص الثمن	inexpensive	expensive	غالى الثمن
similar	مشابه	alike	different	مختلف

Definitions

Word		Definition
cotton	قطن	material made from the cotton plant, used to make shirts, trousers etc.
glass	زجاج	a hard[1] material which is used to make windows, bottles and other objects
gold	ذهب	made of a very valuable[2] yellow metal used to make coins and jewellery
leather	جلد مدبوغ	a material made from an animal, used to make shoes, bags, clothes etc.
linen	كتان	a strong material made from part of the flax plant[3]
plastic	بلاستيك	an artificial[4] material which has many different uses
metal	معدن	a hard, strong material often used to make bridges, the inside of buildings, etc
wool	صوف	the soft, thick material that comes from the hair of sheep and some other animals
handbag	حقيبة يد (حريمى)	a small bag, usually carried by women, used for money, keys, make-up,etc.
casual	غير رسمي	casual clothes are not formal or not suitable[5] for special occasions[6]
galabeya	جلباب	a long, loose piece of clothing
earring	قرط (حلق)	a piece of jewellery, usually one of a pair, worn in or on an ear
headscarf	غطاء رأس (حجاب)	material that women wear to cover their hair
jewellery	مجوهرات	objects that you wear on your clothes or body that are usually made from valuable stones or metals, such as gold and silver

١- صلب
٢- ذو قيمة
٣- نبات الكتان
٤- اصطناعى
٥- مناسب
٦- مناسبات

belt	حزام	a strip of leather or material that you wear to support clothes or for decoration.
sandals	صندل	open shoes that you usually wear in warm weather.
scarf	شال	a long piece of material that you wear around the neck or shoulders.
smart	أنيق	looking clean and tidy.
sunglasses	نظارة شمس	dark glasses that you wear to protect your eyes from the sun.
trainers	حذاء رياضي	light, comfortable shoes that people wear for sport.

Language Notes

1) cloth / clothes / clothing

- **cloth** قماش (اسم مفرد لا يعد)

Ex. The tailor showed me several rolls of cloth.

- **clothes** الملابس (اسم جمع دائمًا)
- تشير إلى الأشياء التي يرتديها الناس مثل (البنطلون - السترة)

Ex. My clothes are new.

- **clothing** ملابس/ثياب (مفرد لا يعد)

• تشير إلى الملابس بصفة عامة أو أنواع معينة من الملابس مثل winter / warm clothing وردت في SB 37

Ex. My favourite item of clothing is the jumper.

2) shoes / trousers / earrings / sandals / trainers / sunglasses

- تتكون بعض الملابس من جزئين غير منفصلين مثل (sunglasses - trousers) وتكون دائمًا جمع.

- أو جزئين منفصلين مثل (earrings - shoes) وهذه الكلمات جمع إذا قصدنا الجزئين ويمكن الإشارة إلى جزء واحد منهما مثل (earring - shoe).

Ex. My new trousers are loose. I like wearing them.

Ex. These earrings are made of gold.

- ونستخدم (زوج من a pair of) امام الكلمات السابقة ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد.

Ex. I have a lovely pair of boots.

Ex. A pair of sandals is good in hot weather.

3) wear / dress / put on

• **wear** (wore / worn)
يرتدي (ملابس/مجوهرات/ اكسسوارات.. الخ)

Ex. I wear trousers and a T-shirt to school.

Ex. Women usually wear jewellery to look beautiful.

• **dress** (ed)
يلبس (لا يأتي بعدها ملابس)

Ex. Every morning, I wash, dress and go to school.

• **put** (put / put) **on** يرتدي (قطعة من الملابس/نظارة/قبعة الخ...)

Ex. I felt cold, so I put on my jacket.

Ex. Mr Ali put on his glasses to read the letter.

4) glass / a glass / glasses

• **glass** (n) زجاج (مادة خام) (اسم لا يُعد)

Ex. The window is made of wood and glass.

• **a glass** (n) كوب زجاجي (اسم يُعد)

Ex. Give me a glass of water, please.

• **glasses** (n) نظارة

Ex. He can't read without his glasses.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I bought some nice .... to make new kitchen curtains.
   a. cloth b. clothing c. clothes d. clothings
2. Whose sunglasses .... these?
   a. are b. is c. was d. have
3. This pair of boots .... useful when it rains.
   a. were b. is c. are d. have
4. We .... sunglasses on sunny days.
   a. dress b. dressed c. get dressed d. wear







استمع إلى النصوص

Audioscript

SB Page (26)

1. **Narrator: Huda**
   I'm Huda. These are the types of clothes I usually wear. I like to be comfortable[1] and feel relaxed[2] in my clothes. These sunglasses[3] were a present[4] from my Mum and I love them. I think I wear them outside most days!
2. **Narrator: Tarek**
   I'm Tarek and I wear these clothes when I'm helping my father. It's really hot outside today and these traditional clothes[5] keep me cool and protect[6] me from the sun when I'm working.
3. **Narrator: Sara**
   I'm Sara and I'm wearing my favourite colour today! I think I dress in a traditional style[7] but I like to be colourful[8]. My headscarf[9] is from the market. It's a cool colour, isn't it?
4. **Narrator: Adam**
   My name's Adam and I'm going for a special meal[10] with my grandparents, which is why I'm wearing these clothes. I usually wear jeans[11]. I quite like looking smart[12], but I think I look a bit like my father when he is going to work!

١- مستريح
٢- مسترخي
٣- نظارة شمس
٤- هدية
٥- ملابس تقليدية
٦- يحمى
٧- نمط تقليدى
٨- ذو ملابس زاهية
٩- غطاء رأس (حجاب)
١٠- وجبة مميزة
١١- بنطلون جينز
١٢- يبدو أنيقاً





Say it correctly

* luxury

ينطق حرف (u) الأول فى هذه الكلمة مثلما فى كلمة (but)
بينما ينطق حرفى (xu) مثلما ينطق المقطع (ctio) فى كلمة (action)

Reading

SB Page (28)



Clothes in Ancient Egypt

In Ancient Egypt[1], men and women wore[2] similar[3] clothes. They both wore loose[4], white, linen[5] clothes with a belt[6]. Most of[7] the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but people sometimes wore expensive leather sandals[8]. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents.

Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy[9], metal jewellery[10]. Like some people today, they liked to wear beautiful gold necklaces[11] and other jewellery.

١ - مصر فى العصر القديم
٢ - يرتدى
٣ - متشابه
٤ - فضفاض/واسع
٥ - كتان
٦ - حزام
٧ - معظم
٨ - صندل من الجلد
٩ - ثقيل
١٠ - مجوهرات
١١ - عقود ذهبية

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. It is a beautiful jacket. You look very 2022
   a. strange b. smart c. long d. intelligent
2. It's a long, blue.......... You wear it around your neck. 2022 SB
   a. belt b. handbag c. sandals d. scarf
3. Are his clothes smart or..........? WB
   a. greedy b. casual c. clever d. snowy
4. Do her clothes look .... or uncomfortable? WB
   a. comfortable b. similar c. gold d. electric
5. In Ancient Egypt, clothes made of .... were popular. SB
   a. oil b. plastic c. linen d. wheat
6. .... are jewellery that women wear around their necks. SB
   a. Handbags b. Headscarves c. Galabeyas d. Necklaces
7. In Ancient Egypt, men and women didn't .... very differently. سمسطا 2023 SB
   a. call b. dress c. cost d. press
8. I cover my bed with a nice .... made of linen. البدرشين 2023
   a. sheet b. skirt c. belt d. shell
9. Your watch isn't expensive. It's made of .... بنا 2023
   a. wool b. plastic c. linen d. gold
10. There are a lot of .... flowers in the park in spring. منيا القمح 2023
    a. ugly b. colourful c. colourless d. funny

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. .... clothes are usually comfortable.
    a. Tight b. Wooden c. Lost d. Loose
12. This .... is made of expensive leather.
    a. handbag b. earrings c. necklace d. glass
13. Rasha couldn't wear these .... because her ears hurt.
    a. trainers b. sandals c. earrings d. trousers
14. My grandfather likes to wear loose .... in hot weather.
    a. galabeyas b. handbags c. sheets d. jumpers
15. .... are usually made of leather.
    a. Scarves b. Belts c. Galabeyas d. Jewellery
16. Gamal always wears .... in summer.
    a. earrings b. handbags c. sandals d. skirts

17. Famous players usually wear expensive.......... that help them run fast.
  a. trainers b. galabeyas c. skirts d. scarves
18. I always wear .... to protect my eyes from the sun.
  a. trainers b. earrings c. sunglasses d. sandals
19. My new pair of shoes .... black.
  a. were b. is c. are d. have

Language

Adjective order ترتيب الصفات

• عندما نريد وصف شئ بأكثر من صفة لابد أن نضع الصفات فى الترتيب الصحيح لها كالاتى:

Size / Description المقاس / الوصف	Shape الشكل	Age العمر	Colour اللون	Material المادة	Noun اسم الشئ
big / pretty	long	old	green	cotton	dress

• لاحظ استخدام الفواصل (,) **commas** بين الصفات عند الترتيب.

Ex. The ancient Egyptians wore

Description	Material	Noun
beautiful,	gold,	necklaces.

Notes

١- هناك إضافات أخرى للصفات مثل (الكمية **Amount**/العدد **Number**)

Ex. I have got

Number	Description	Shape	Age	Material	Noun
one,	beautiful,	square,	old,	brick,	house.

٢- أحيانًا يمكن استخدام مسميات أخرى للوصف مثل:

Description = Opinion رأى

ادرس هذا الجدول الذى يوضح الصفات المستخدمة فى كل مسمى:

Description / opinion	Size	Shape	Age	Colour	Material
beautiful	big	long	old	pink	cotton
pretty	small	loose	modern	green	linen
colourful	large	striped	new	red	wooden
expensive	medium	short	traditional	purple	plastic
cheap				colourful	gold
strange					
nice					
smart					

٣- عند وجود صفتان من نفس التصنيف يمكن ان تبدا باى منهما: (shape) → long, loose

لاحظ الأمثلة الآتية من كتاب الطالب:

Ex. I love wearing my long, loose, cotton galabeya, because it is very cool in the summer. (WB 94)

Ex. She's also wearing a loose, long dress with flowers on it. (WB 115)

٤- تعامل الصفة electric كنوع type وتأتى فى اخر الترتيب:

Ex. Hoda's father has bought a new, red, electric car. (WB 94)

٥- الصفة (colourful) يمكن أن تأتى (Description) أو تأتى (colour).

Ex. These colourful, modern carpets look amazing.

Ex. We saw a big colourful bird.

٦- الصفة (cool) بمعنى رائع لوصف (الملابس/الاثاث) وتعتبر هنا صفة (Description) .

Ex. A cool, old wooden chest of drawers. (WB 98)

- (cool) بمعنى رطب لوصف (الملابس والمشروبات) بالأخص فى وقت الحر وتعتبر صفة (حالة مادية) تأتى بعد الشكل.

Ex. loose, cool clothes for the day. (SB 64)

٧- منشأ أو بلد الشىء (origin) بعد اللون وقبل المادة الخام.

Ex. Luxury, Egyptian cotton (SB 65)

٨- يتم استخدام (and) فى حالة استخدام صفتين من نفس المجموعة.

Ex. It's a beautiful brown and orange necklace. (SB 37)

- أو يمكن الاستغناء عنها .

Ex. A big, old, traditional flat in Aswan. (WB. 94)

٩- الصفتان (light and heavy) تندرج تحت (size).

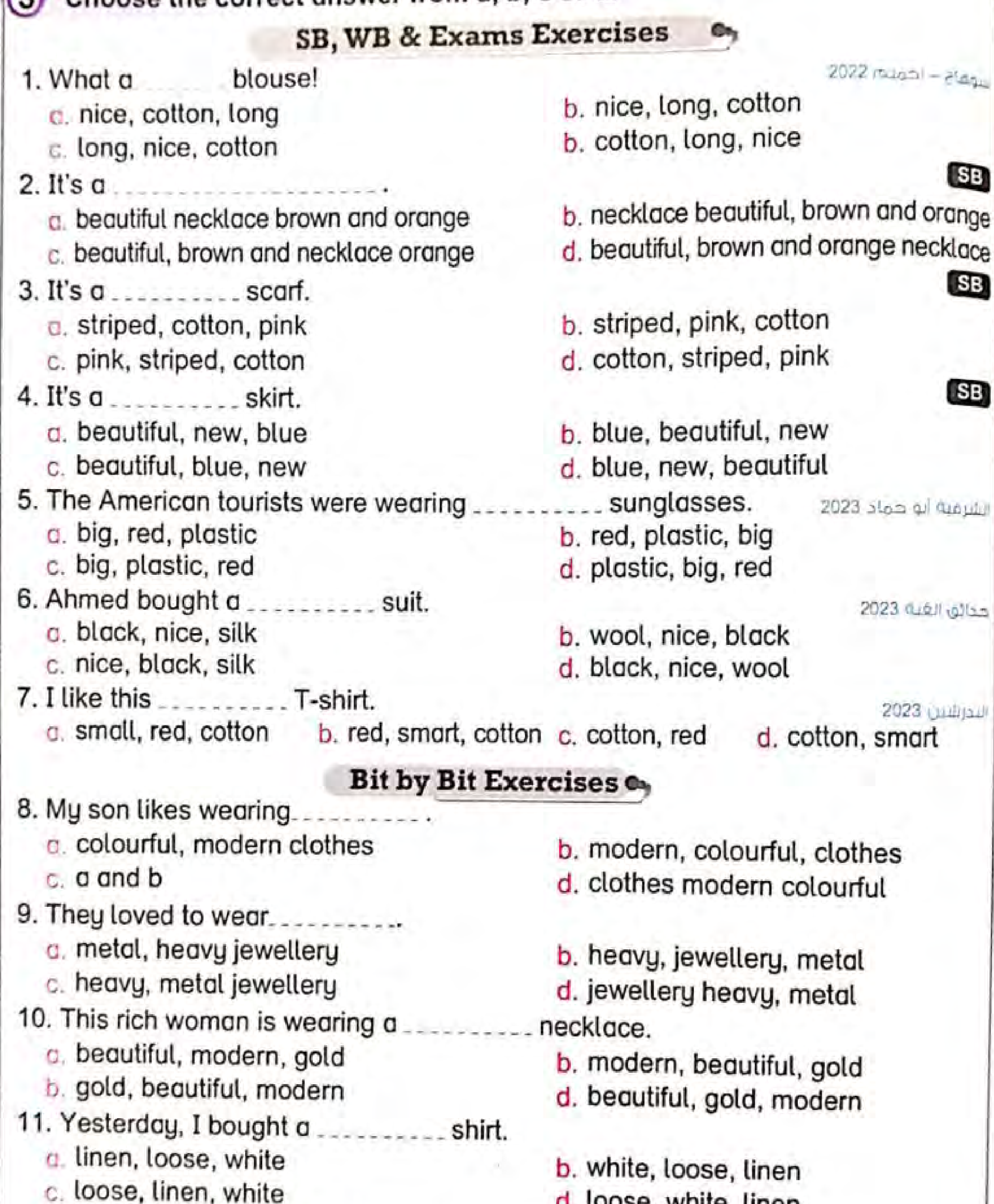
Ex. Heavy metal jewellery. (SB 36)

Ex. It's a light blue, wool scarf. (SB 43)

١٠- الصفة (thin) صفة شكل (shape).

Ex. She is wearing a long, thin, leather belt. (SB 43)

Exercises on Language



3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. What a .... blouse! (سوهاج – اخميم 2022)
   a. nice, cotton, long b. nice, long, cotton
   c. long, nice, cotton b. cotton, long, nice
2. It's a .... (SB)
   a. beautiful necklace brown and orange b. necklace beautiful, brown and orange
   c. beautiful, brown and necklace orange d. beautiful, brown and orange necklace
3. It's a .... scarf. (SB)
   a. striped, cotton, pink b. striped, pink, cotton
   c. pink, striped, cotton d. cotton, striped, pink
4. It's a .... skirt. (SB)
   a. beautiful, new, blue b. blue, beautiful, new
   c. beautiful, blue, new d. blue, new, beautiful
5. The American tourists were wearing .... sunglasses. (الشرقية أبو حماد 2023)
   a. big, red, plastic b. red, plastic, big
   c. big, plastic, red d. plastic, big, red
6. Ahmed bought a .... suit. (حدائق القبة 2023)
   a. black, nice, silk b. wool, nice, black
   c. nice, black, silk d. black, nice, wool
7. I like this .... T-shirt. (البدرشين 2023)
   a. small, red, cotton b. red, smart, cotton c. cotton, red d. cotton, smart

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. My son likes wearing ....
   a. colourful, modern clothes b. modern, colourful, clothes
   c. a and b d. clothes modern colourful
9. They loved to wear ....
   a. metal, heavy jewellery b. heavy, jewellery, metal
   c. heavy, metal jewellery d. jewellery heavy, metal
10. This rich woman is wearing a .... necklace.
    a. beautiful, modern, gold b. modern, beautiful, gold
    b. gold, beautiful, modern d. beautiful, gold, modern
11. Yesterday, I bought a .... shirt.
    a. linen, loose, white b. white, loose, linen
    c. loose, linen, white d. loose, white, linen
12. Manal's mother has bought a .... dress.
    a. green, new, smart b. green, smart, new
    a. smart, new, green d. new, smart, green
13. I always wear my .... sunglasses.
    a. big, black, plastic b. black, plastic, big
    c. plastic, black, big d. plastic, big, black

14. Eman has a / an .... jacket.
   a. brown, strange, old
   b. old, strange, brown
   c. strange, old, brown
   d. old, brown, strange
15. My grandparents live in a .... house on the beach.
   a. big, new, wooden
   b. new, big, wooden
   b. wooden, big, new
   d. new, wooden, big

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. They are beautiful .... (plastic, white, new) sunglasses. البحيرة 2022
2. It's a/an .... (cotton, old, striped) scarf. SB
3. Look at that .... (pretty, gold, long) necklace. WB
4. Karma bought a .... (brown, leather, beautiful) bag. البدرشين 2023
5. I like this .... (cotton, smart, red) T-shirt. بنا 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. Emad loves wearing his................. (linen, loose, red) T-shirt.
7. Ancient Egyptians wore .... (linen, white, loose) clothes.
8. My grandfather usually wears a .... (green, long, cotton, loose) galabeya.
9. This poor man is wearing a/an .... (old, wool, simple) shirt.

Speaking

1) Describing clothes

وصف الملابس

- نصف الملابس من حيث الآتي:

size المقاس	colour اللون
shape الشكل	material المادة المستخدمة
age العمر	

- ويراعى في الوصف اتباع الترتيب (ارجع الى شرح هذا الموضوع في Grammar)

- It's a striped, pink, cotton scarf.
- It's a beautiful brown and orange necklace.

كما يمكن أن نصف الملابس باستخدام صفات التفضيل كما يلي:

- This shirt is the smartest. هذا القميص هو الأكثر أناقة.
- That dress is the nicest. ذلك الفستان هو الأجمل.
- These trousers are the most comfortable. هذا البنطلون هو الأكثر راحة.
- That scarf is the most colourful. ذلك الوشاح هو الأكثر ألوانا.

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

2023 البحيرة

Mona is talking to Soha about scarves.

Mona : Your scarf is very pretty ❶ ....?

Soha : Yes, it is new.

Mona : What is it made of?

Soha : ❷ ....

Mona : Cotton! ❸ ....?

Soha : I bought it from the clothes shop near our house.

Mona : ❹ ....?

Soha : It is 80 pounds.

Mona : Great! Are there any more scarves like this there?

Soha : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This cloth is made from a mixture of .... and cotton. WB
   a. wood b. electricity c. plastic d. linen
2. Hoda's father has bought a/an .... car. WB
   a. red, new, electric b. new, red, electric
   c. electric, red, new d. red, electric, new
3. I usually wear a cotton .... inside the house.
   a. earrings b. galabeya c. handbag d. trainers
4. The opposite of "loose" is ....
   a. heavy b. cheap c. light d. tight
5. I always .... relaxed when I wear these clothes.
   a. feel b. fall c. fail d. fill
6. The snake is .... not spotted. 2023 المنوفية
   a. striped b. fast c. slow d. thick

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. It's a ....(linen, beautiful, new, blue) dress. WB
2. It's a .... (blue, cotton, beautiful) skirt. المنوفية – قويسنا 2023
3. She is wearing a ....(gold / expensive / long) necklace. SB
4. It's a ....(purple, nice, wool) jumper. البحيرة – السادات 2022 SB

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words: (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

to your friend Ihab describing the clothes you usually wear.

-Your name is Tamer and your email address is tamer505@yahoo.com

-Your friend's email address is ihabomar22@gamil.com

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكترونى:

- **What do you usually wear?**
- **Do your clothes look comfortable or uncomfortable?**
- **Are they smart or casual?**
- **Do you like what you wear? Why / Why not?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I usually wear ------------------------------.**
- **My clothes are ------------------------------.**
- **I like ------------------------------ clothes.**

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 38 - 40 WB pages 95 - 96

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

special occasion	مناسبة خاصة	soft	ناعم / لين
luxury	شئ فخم/فاخر	chemical	مادة كيميائية
industry	صناعة	crop	محصول
perfect	مثالى (فى أحسن حال)	borrow (ed)	يستعير / يستلف
environment	البيئة	pick (ed)	يقطف (نبات) / يلتقط
famous	مشهور	protect (ed)	يحمى
size	مقاس/حجم		

Vocabulary

school uniform	زى مدرسى موحد	teenager	مراهق
school day	يوم دراسى	basket	سلة
wedding	حفل زفاف	bamboo	نبات الخيزران (البامبو)
family member	فرد فى العائلة	pollution	التلوث
factory	مصنع	sports clothes	ملابس رياضية
clothes shop	محل ملابس	process	عملية إجرائية
soil	تربة زراعية	change (d)	يغير/يتغير
greener future	مستقبل أكثر حماية للبيئة	cause (d)	يسبب
relatives	أقارب	own (ed)	يمتلك
device	جهاز	shop (ped)	يتسوق
sewing	الخياطة	produce (d)	ينتج

Expressions & Prepositions

make a lot of money	يدر مال كثير	instead of	بدلاً من
We are the same size.	نرتدى نفس المقاس	amazing at	مدهش فى
grow crops	يزرع محاصيل	good / bad for	مفيد/غير مفيد لـ
all over the world	فى كل أنحاء العالم	perfect for	مثالى لـ
protect the environment	يحمى البيئة	famous for	مشهور بـ
use less water	يستخدم ماء أقل	for special occasions	لمناسبات خاصة
as a result	نتيجة لذلك	used to own	اعتاد أن يمتلك
cause pollution	يسبب تلوث	by the Nile	بجوار النيل
keep the cotton soft	يحافظ على نعومة القطن	give ... back	يرد (شئ/مال)
as good as (it is) possible	جيد قدر المستطاع	from time to time	من وقت لآخر

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
give	يعطي	gave	given
sell	يبيع	sold	sold

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
protect	يحمي	keep	damage	يتلف
perfect	مثالي	excellent	bad	سيئ
near	قريب	close	far	بعيد

Definitions

soft	ناعم	not hard to touch[1]
luxury	شئ فخم/مترف	something expensive and of good quality[2]
pick	يقطف	break flowers or fruit off[3] a plant
crop	محصول	a large amount of plants that are grown[4] to be sold
chemical	مادة كيميائية	something produced by a scientific process[5]
special occasion	مناسبة خاصة	an important event for you
perfect	مثالي	as good as it is possible to be
industry	صناعة	- a business making things to sell - the companies and activities that produce things you can sell, especially in a factory or special area
borrow	يستعير/يستلف	get something from someone that you plan to give back[6] after a period of time[7]
size	مقاس/حجم	how big or small something is
environment	البيئة	the people and things around you in your life

١- يلمس
٢- جودة
٣- يقطف ... من
٤- تُزرع
٥- عملية علمية
٦- يرد
٧- فترة من الوقت

Language Notes

(1) chemical / chemistry

• chemical (adj) صفة بمعنى كيميائي

Ex. This chemical liquid kills insects.

• chemical (s) اسم يعد بمعنى مادة/مواد كيميائية

Ex. Farmers shouldn't use chemicals, they're harmful.

- **chemistry** (n) اسم لا يعد بمعنى الكيمياء

Ex. We study chemistry at the school this year.

2) borrow.. (from) / lend... (to)

- **borrow...** (from) يستعير/يستلف ... من

Ex. I sometimes borrow clothes from my brother.

- **lend...** (to) يعير/يسلف ... إلى

Ex. Do you usually lend money to people?

3) soil / land / ground / floor

- **soil** تربة زراعية (الطبقة العليا التى نزرع فيها)

Ex. The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton.

- **ground** أرض (خارج المنزل) (أرضية الشارع)

Ex. My mobile fell to the ground and broke.

- **land** اليابسة

Ex. The ship reached land after sailing for ten days.

- **floor** أرضية الحجرة/طابق فى مبنى

Ex. She cleaned the floor with water and soap.

Ex. The library is on the first floor.

4) a / an

- نضع (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت ساكن ونضع (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت متحرك.

a uniform / a university - an hour

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Medicines usually contain many ....
   a. chemicals b. chemistry c. chemical d. chemically
2. Could I .... your dictionary, please?
   a. lend b. burn c. park d. borrow
3. The .... by the Nile is very good for growing crops.
   a. floor b. roof c. soil d. wall
4. Mr Hamdy is .... honest man.
   a. a b. no article c. these d. an



SB Page (38)





استمع إلى النصوص

What do you wear?

This week, we asked three Egyptian teenagers what they wear and why.



Noha : I bought this shirt from a shop in Cairo, but I'm trying to buy fewer[1] clothes. Clothes factories cause[2] a lot of pollution[3], so they are bad for the environment[4]. So sometimes I borrow[5] my sister's clothes. She borrows mine, too, because we are the same size[6].

Ayman : These trainers[7] were my dad's. He never wore them, so I asked if I could have them. I like doing sport and these trainers are much better[8] than the ones I used to[9] wear. I usually wear sports clothes because they are comfortable[10].

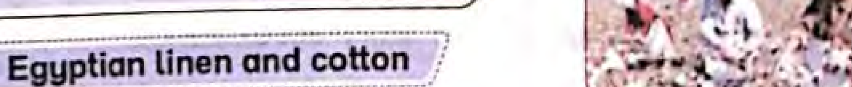


Dalida : This is my school uniform[11]. I have to wear it every school day[12]. That beautiful dress is the one my grandmother made me for my cousin's wedding[13]. She's amazing at[14] sewing. She always makes us clothes for special occasions*[15].

١- أقل
٢- يسبب
٣- التلوث
٤- البيئة
٥- يستلف
٦- مقاس
٧- حذاء رياضي
٨- أفضل كثيراً
٩- اعتاد أن
١٠- مريح
١١- زي مدرسي موحد
١٢- يوم دراسي
١٣- حفل زفاف
١٤- مدهش في
١٥- مناسبات خاصة



* occasion تنطق حروف (cc) مثل حرف (k) في هذه الكلمة وينطق حرف (s) مثلما ينطق في كلمة (television)



SB Page (40)

Egyptian linen and cotton

1- Linen in the past

Egypt is famous for growing crops[1] to make material[2]. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen[3]. Almost[4] everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants to make baskets[5].

١- زراعة المحاصيل
٢- مادة خام
٣- الكتان
٤- تقريباً
٥- سلال «جمع سلة»

2- Modern cotton

Today, Egyptian cotton[6] is famous all over the world. Because cotton from Egypt is very good, it is often used to make luxury clothes[7] and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry[8], from farmers[9] to people making or selling[10] clothes and material.

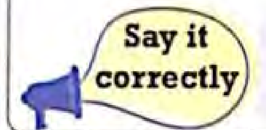
3- Why cotton is grown in Egypt

The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect[11] for growing cotton. Water from the Nile is still used for the crops. All of the cotton is picked[12] by hand to keep it soft[13].

4- A greener future

When you grow cotton, it uses a lot of water and chemicals[14]. Now, the government is trying to help farmers to protect[15] the environment and use less water[16].

٦- القطن المصرى
٧- ملابس فخمة
٨- صناعة
٩- مزارعين
١٠- يبيع
١١- مثالى
١٢- يقطف
١٣- ناعم
١٤- مواد كيميائية
١٥- يحمى
١٦- ماء أقل



• luxury

ينطق حرف (u) الأول فى هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق فى كلمة (but)
بينما ينطق حرفي (xu) مثلما ينطق المقطع (ctio) فى كلمة (action)

WB Page (96)

Is bamboo the new cotton?

Some people are starting to use a plant called bamboo[1] instead of[2] cotton to make clothes. The plant is an important crop in China where the bamboo industry makes a lot of money. However, although bamboo grows very quickly, it is not a perfect plant. After the bamboo is picked, people often use chemicals before they can use it to make clothes. These are bad for nature. Also, the material made from bamboo is not very soft. As a result[3], it is not used for expensive, luxury clothes which are usually made from cotton.

١- الخيزران
٢- بدلاً من
٣- نتيجة لذلك



SB Page (39)

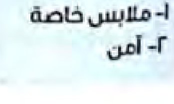


Narrator:

Do you have to wear any special clothes[1] for school? Do your parents have to wear any special clothes when they go to work?

Many people wear a uniform. This is so people know what school they go to or what job they do.

Some workers wear special clothes to keep them safe[2] at work.



١- ملابس خاصة
٢- آمن

These men are repairing a road. They are wearing bright yellow jackets so that car drivers can see them easily. This is a hard hat. Construction workers[3] wear these strong, plastic hats to protect their heads.

٣- عمال البناء
٤- رجال الاطفاء
٥- خوذة
٦- قفازات

Firefighters[4] also wear special clothes while they are working. The jacket and trousers that they wear are made from a material that protects firefighters from the dangerous, hot temperatures. The helmet[5] protects a firefighter's head and eyes from the fire and the gloves[6] protect their hands.

Do you know of any other jobs in which the workers have to wear special clothes?

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. The desert is a difficult .... to live in! بني سويف 2023
   a. park b. city c. village d. environment
2. The cotton .... makes cotton clothes. الشرقية - أبو حماد 2023
   a. electricity b. industry c. occasion d. environment
3. If something is a special ...., it means it is an important event for you. WB
   a. size b. environment c. hobby d. occasion
4. When you wear the same .... clothes as your sister, it means you can wear the same clothes. WB
   a. size b. occasion c. price d. environment
5. .... are a large amount of plants that are grown to be sold. SB
   a. Chemicals b. Baskets c. Crops d. Soils
6. The farm with good .... gives its owner high quality crops. الدقهلية 2023
   a. soil b. sand c. floor d. ground

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. Can I .... your pen, please?
   a. advise b. build c. cause d. borrow
8. It's not good to .... flowers from a garden.
   a. pick b. borrow c. shop d. protect

9. It is a .... hotel with big swimming pools and restaurants.
   a. patient b. poor c. luxury d. teenager

10. Using fewer chemicals may help .... the environment.
   a. protect b. borrow c. damage d. pick

11. The soil in Egypt is .... for growing crops. That's really wonderful.
   a. luxury b. modern c. bad d. perfect

12. We don't use many .... on our farm these days.
   a. chemicals b. classical c. electrical d. fruits

13. Cotton is a .... material.
   a. hard b. rough c. wet d. soft

14. Eating much fat is bad .... your health.
   a. at b. on c. from d. for



Language

1- one / ones

• تستخدم (one) بدلاً من الاسم المفرد و (ones) بدلاً من الاسم الجمع عندما نريد ألا نكرر الاسم/ الأسماء التي ذكرت سابقاً في الجملة:

Ex. That beautiful dress is the one my grandmother made me.

Ex. These trainers are much better than the ones I had before.

• يمكن أن يسبق (one) كلمة (another) بمعنى (آخر).

Ex. This handbag is small. Please, show me another one.

• يمكن أن يسبق (ones / one) كلمة (the other) بمعنى (الآخر/ الآخرون).

Ex. This is my friend Omar. The other one is his brother.

Ex. These books are Class 1B books. Please, get the other ones.

Check ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't like this T-shirt. Please, show me another ....
   a. one b. only c. once d. ones
2. Sameh has got new CDs and old ....
   a. one b. none c. ones d. no one

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

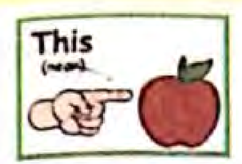
1. This is my seat. Would you sit on another .... (ones)?
2. My glasses are broken. I need new .... (one).

2- this - that / these - those

• نستخدم أسماء الإشارة this / these عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص/الأشياء القريبة منا.

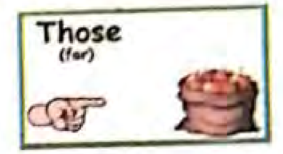
• نستخدم أسماء الإشارة that / those عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص/الأشياء البعيدة عنا.

this	these	that	those
هذا/هذه (للمفرد القريب)	هؤلاء (للجمع القريب)	تلك/ذلك (للمفرد البعيد)	أولئك (للجمع البعيد)









Ex. Take this book, it's yours.

Ex. These books on the shelf are my dad's.

Ex. That car over there is mine.

Ex. Can you see those people standing there?

Notes

• الكلمات news/information/advice/equipment etc. هي كلمات لا تُعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد ولذلك يأتي قبلها this/that:

Ex. I hope you will find this information useful.

Ex. Are you sure this news is true?

• تستخدم this / that مع التعبير (زوج من pair of)

Ex. I like this pair of shoes.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. .... birds are flying very high. — WB الجيزة – شمال الجيزة 2022
   a. These b. This c. Those d. That
2. Should I buy the red chairs or the black ....? — WB
   a. ones b. once c. one d. twice
3. I bought .... shoes last week. — SB
   a. that b. this c. these d. they
4. I really like .... pairs of trousers. — WB العربية–زمنة 2023
   a. these b. this c. that d. a
5. I like .... smart, red, cotton T-shirt. — SB
   a. these b. those c. that d. some
6. How much are .... necklaces in the window? — WB
   a. this b. that c. a d. those
7. Shall I buy this blue T-shirt or that green..........? — SB
   a. ones b. one c. two d. once
8. These stories are funny, but those .... are boring. — القاهرة – الزاوية الحمراء 2023
   a. one b. ones c. only d. once

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. Don't do these exercises, do the other.........
   a. once b. it c. ones d. one
10. This bag is yours. The other .... is mine.
   a. ones b. one c. bags d. none
11. .... pair of black boots is better than the brown pair. I'll take it.
   a. Those b. This c. These d. They
12. These shoes are small, can I try the other..........?
   a. one b. once c. ones d. none
13. .... is my car.
   a. These b. This c. Then d. Those
14. Which of.......... books would you like?
   a. those b. that c. this d. then

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. This ring is silver, but this .... (ones) is gold. الجيزة – شمال الجيزة 2022
2. These trousers are short; I want taller .... (one). القليوبية – قها 2022
3. I don't know ....(these) people over there.
4. This man is the .... (ones) who helped me. البدرشين 2023
5. Look at .... (this) bird in the sky! بنى سويف 2023
6. Look at .... (this) books they are very useful. القاهرة– حدائق القبة 2023
7. I don't like this meal, I want the other .... (ones). القاهرة– هارون الرشيد 2023
8. Wear .... (that) sunglasses to protect your eyes from the sun.
9. Samir has got a blue bag. I have a red .... (ones). المنوفية– قويسنا 2023

Speaking

1) Shopping for clothes

شراء الملابس

- نستخدم الأسئلة التالية للسؤال عن (عدد) الملابس التى يمتلكها/يشتريها شخص ما:

- How many (pairs of) .... do you have/own? كم عدد (زوج من) ....التي تمتلكها؟
- Which ....is / are your favourite? أي .... هو/هم المفضل/المفضلون لديك؟

- How many shirts / pairs of shoes do you have / own?
- Which one /ones is / are your favourite?

- ونجيب عن الأسئلة السابقة كالتالي:

- I have about four pairs of shoes, but my trainers are my favourite ones.

أمتلك حوالى أربعة أزواج من الأحذية، لكن حذائى الرياضى هو المفضل لدى.

- ونسأل عن المحل الذى تحب الشراء منه بالصيغة التالية:

- Which clothes shops do you like? Which one is your favourite?

أى محلات الملابس تحب؟ أيهما المفضل لديك؟

General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Aya wants a dress for a special occasion. القاهرة – هارون الرشيد 2023

Assistant : How can I help you?

Aya : ❶ ....

Assistant : What special occasion do you want a dress for?

Aya : ❷ ....

Assistant : Congratulations! ❸ ....?

Aya : I'd like pink, please.

Assistant : ❹ ....?

Aya : Oh! It's wonderful. I'll take it.

Assistant : Anything else?

Aya : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. When you ... something from a friend, you take something and give it back. WB
   a. give b. borrow c. check d. lend
2. The .... is the people and things around you in your life. SB
   a. crop b. environment c. industry d. wedding
3. .... means expensive and of good quality. القاهرة – المطرية 2023
   a. Week b. Strong c. Luxury d. Silly
4. Chemicals ...... the environment. We don't have to use them. القاهرة – الزاوية الحمراء 2023
   a. collect b. protect c. pollute d. pick

Exercises on Language

5. Where did you get .... sunglasses? SB
   a. those b. that c. this d. then
6. Are you wearing your brown shoes or the black ....? SB
   a. once b. one c. two d. ones
7. .... are my dad's shoes. They are brown. المنوفية – السادات 2022
   a. This b. That c. Those d. It

8. Can I buy .... earrings in the window? SB

a. an b. that c. this d. those

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Those .... (is) interesting stories. الجيزة – شمال الجيزة 2022
2. Which socks are you going to wear? These .... (one) or those ones? SB
3. I like .... (those) black, leather handbag! Is it new? SB
4. This is my seat. Would you sit on another.................. (ones)? سوهاج 2023

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words: WB (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

to your friend about a description of a room in your house.

- **Your name is Reda and your email address is redamail@gmail.com.**
- **Your friend's name is Hani(a) and his/ her email address is hani(a)@yahoo.com.**

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكتروني:
- **What room do you want to describe?**
- **How does it look?**
- **Where are things put?**
- **What is there on the floor?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- **I want to describe** ....
- **My room looks** ....
- **The first thing you see in it is** ....



Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 41 - 42 WB pages 97 - 98



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

customer	زبون	cool	رائع
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج	useful	مفيد
fantastic	رائع	help (ed)	يساعد
jacket	جاكيت	fit (ted)	يناسب/يلائم
tool	أداة (يدوية)	try (ied) ... on	يقيس ملابس
headphones	سماعات الرأس		

Vocabulary

What colour..?	ما لون..؟	changing room	حجرة تغيير الملابس
advert (advertisement)	إعلان	great-grandfather	الجد الأكبر
extra	زائد/إضافى	(be) interested	مهتم
shopkeeper	بائع فى محل	birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد
socks	جوارب (شرابات)	include (d)	يتضمن / يشتمل على
perfectly	بشكل متقن	email (ed)	يرسل رسالة بريد الكترونى

Expressions & Prepositions

What type....?	ما نوع.....؟	buy online	يشترى عبر الإنترنت
get married	يتزوج	for sale	للبيع
looks nice	يبدو لطيفًا	for more information	لمزيد من المعلومات
a bit big	كبير بعض الشئ	look for	يبحث عن
move house	ينتقل لمنزل جديد (يعزل)	keep things in	يحتفظ بالأشياء بداخله
discuss the price	يناقش السعر	in + colour	ملون باللون.....
Let me look.	دعنى أنظر/أبحث.	at the top	فى أعلاه/قمته

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
take	يأخذ	took	taken
fly	يطير	flew	flown

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
useful	مفيد	helpful	useless	غير مفيد
boring	ممل	dull	interesting	شيق
big	كبير	large	small	صغير

Definitions

changing room	حجرة تغيير الملابس	a room where people can change their clothes, for example, in a shop
fit	يناسب/يلائم	be the correct size or shape[1] for someone or something
try .. on	يقيس ملابس	put on[2] a piece of clothing[3] to check[4] if it fits you or if you like it

١- شكل
٢- يرتدى
٣- الملبس
٤- يتأكد

Language Notes

1) Adjectives ending in (-ed) or (-ing)

- تستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) والصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) لوصف العاقل وغير العاقل.
- تشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) الى أن الموصوف يشعر أو لديه هذه الصفة.

Ex. If you are interested, email me and we can discuss the price.

- تشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) إلى من/ما يسبب الصفة.

Ex. The shop has got good clothes. They are very interesting.



- The lion was frightening.
- The lion was frightened when it saw the hunters.

- فى المثال الأول الأسد مخيف (هو من يسبب الصفة).
- فى المثال الثانى الأسد خائف (هو من يشعر بالصفة).

2) would ('d) like

- would ('d) like to = want to + inf. / n   يرغب - يود أن / يريد أن

Ex. I would('d) like / want to go shopping tonight.
Ex. I would('d) like / want tea, please.

3) Which

- نسأل بكلمة الاستفهام (Which) للتخيير بين شيئين أو عدة أشياء.

Ex. Which shirt would you like to buy, the blue one or the green one?
Ex. Which bag is yours?

4) tool / device

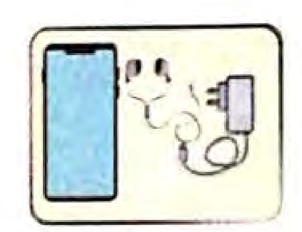
- tool   أداة تحملها في يدك لعمل شئ (فأس / شاكوش / مقص ألخ..)

Ex. Carpenters use tools like hammers and saws.

- device   آلة أو جهاز (العمل وظيفة معينة)

Ex. Scientists use different devices in laboratories.

5) include / contain



- contain   يحتوى على: (بداخله - شيء داخل شيء)

Ex. The box contains a mobile, charger and headphones.

- include   يشتمل على (من ضمن محتوياته - معه - ليس بداخله)

Ex. The phone include a charger and headphones.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

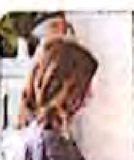
1. Wafaa showed Maha her new dress, but Maha wasn't ....
   a. interest   b. interested   c. interesting   d. interests
2. What would you like .... for lunch?
   a. eating   b. eat   c. to eat   d. to eating
3. .... colour do you like most?
   a. Where   b. Whose   c. Who   d. Which
4. Carpenters use different .... like hammers and saws.
   a. devices   b. tools   c. pools   d. advice
5. The list .... my name.
   a. consists   b. contains   c. includes   d. writes

Audioscript



SB Page (41)

استمع إلى النصوص





Shopkeeper[1]: Hello, can I help you?

Eman: Hi, yes, I'm looking for a dress for a special occasion[2]. It's my brother's birthday party[3] next week.

Shopkeeper: Oh, nice. What type[4] of dress would you like?

Eman: I'd like something like this one.. but do you have a different colour? I don't like yellow.

Shopkeeper: We have this one in blue[5].

Eman: That's beautiful! Could I try it on[6]?

Shopkeeper: Of course. The changing room[7] is here... What do you think? Does it fit[8]?

Eman: It's a bit[9] big. Do you have a smaller size[10]?

Shopkeeper: Let me look. Yes, here's a smaller one. Try this on.

Eman: Thank you. It fits perfectly[11], I'll take it!

Shopkeeper: Great!

١- بائع في محل
٢- مناسبة خاصة
٣- حفلة عيد ميلاد
٤- ما نوع
٥- باللون الأزرق
٦- يقيس ملابس
٧- حجرة تغيير الملابس
٨- يناسب
٩- قليلاً
١٠- مقاس
١١- بشكل مثالي

WB Page (97)

Shopkeeper: Hello, can I help you?

Ayman: Hi, yes, I'm looking for a jacket for a special occasion. My cousin is getting married[1] next week.

Shopkeeper: That's nice. What type of jacket would you like?

Ayman: I'd like something loose[2] but smart.

Shopkeeper: We have this black jacket, or that red one in the window.

Ayman: They're both nice. Could I try on the blue one?

Shopkeeper: Of course[3]. The changing room is there.

Ayman: What do you think? Does it fit?

Shopkeeper: It's bit big. I have a smaller one you can try on.

Ayman: Thank you. Yes, this one fits perfectly. I'll take it!

Shopkeeper: Good.

١- سيتزوج
٢- فضفاض
٣- بالتأكيد

Reading



SB Page (42)

BAG FOR SALE

I'm selling a beautiful, new, black leather handbag. It was a present[1] for my birthday[2] but I already have one that is the same! It is very large[3] and perfect for work or school. The price[4] is LE500. Email[5] me for more information[6].



١- هدية
٢- عيد ميلاد
٣- كبيرة الحجم
٤- سعر
٥- يرسل رسالة بريد الكتروني
٦- معلومات

SB Page (43)

Shopkeeper : Can I help you?
Customer : Yes, I'd like to buy these jeans, but could I try them on first?
Shopkeeper : Of course, the changing room is over there.
Customer : Thank you.
Shopkeeper : Do they fit you?
Customer : No, they're too small. Do you have a bigger size?
Shopkeeper : Yes, here you are.
Customer : They're great. I'll take them.

WB Page (98)

I'm selling a cool, old wooden chest of drawers[1]. It was made in 1910 for my great-grandfather[2]! It's large and perfect for keeping things in, but we have moved house[3] and our new home is too small for it. If you are interested[4], email me and we can discuss the price[5].

١- خزانة ذات ادراج
٢- الجد الأكبر
٣- ينتقل من المنزل (يعزل)
٤- مهتم
٥- يناقش السعر
٦- أداة مفيدة
٧- يزرع خضروات
٨- غالى الثمن

Would you like to buy a really useful tool[6]?

I'm selling a nice strong one that you can use in the garden. It is made of metal with wood at the top. It's perfect for people who want to grow vegetables[7]- and the price is not expensive[8]. It's very cheap!

Email me if you are interested.





WB Page (99)

Usually, Hamdi and his sister Lama like wearing casual clothes such as[1] T-shirts and trainers. Today, they are wearing clothes for a special occasion. It is their grandfather's 70th birthday! Hamdi is wearing a smart, blue jacket. Lama is wearing a loose, cotton dress with a pretty[2] pair of earrings.

Hamdi also has a new pair of trousers. He bought them online, so he did not try them on first. They are a bit big, so he is wearing a leather belt, too.

١- مثل
٢- جميل

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She is using .... to listen to music. الشرقية 2023
   a. glasses b. time machines c. bowls d. headphones
1. There is a big chest of .... in my room.
   a. adverts b. drawers c. drums d. drawings
2. The prices in that shop are .... I can buy many things.
   a. useless b. terrible c. fantastic d. loose
3. We wear .... in winter to keep warm.
   a. jackets b. earrings c. sandals d. glasses
4. I succeeded because I followed your .... advice.
   a. bad b. careless c. useless d. useful
5. When I .... the dress on, I found it very big.
   a. kept b. tried c. helped d. tired
6. There are many .... rooms in that clothes shop.
   a. changing c. charging d. choosing d. sharing
7. A hammer is one of a carpenter's.......... . قليوب 2023
   a. devices b. programs c. machines d. tools
8. These trousers don't .... me very well. They are too tight.
   a. fit b. try c. check d. discuss
9. The shopkeeper gave the .... the right size.
   a. concert b. custom c. customer d. costume
10. .... colour do you want the jacket?
   a. Who b. What c. Why d. Whose
11. She was listening to the radio through.......... .
   a. phones b. heads c. headphones d. tools

Speaking

At a clothes shop

في محل ملابس

- العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها بائع في محل للزبون:

- Can I help you?	هل أستطيع مساعدتك؟
- Does it fit you?	هل يناسبك المقاس؟
- The changing room is there.	حجرة تغيير الملابس هناك.
- It's .... pounds.	ثمنها ...... جنيهاً.

- العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها الزبون للبائع:

- I'd like .... like this.	أريد .... مثل هذا.
- Could I try it on?	هل أستطيع قياسها؟
- Do you have a smaller size?	هل لديك مقاس أصغر؟
- How much is it / does it cost?	كم ثمنها؟
- I'll take it.	سوف آخذها.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

SB

Ali is at a clothes shop.

Shopkeeper : Hello sir, can I help you?

Ali : ❶ .... I want a T-shirt like this, please.

Shopkeeper : Here you are, sir.

Ali : ❷ .... ?

Shopkeeper : Sure. The changing room is there.

Ali : It's a bit big. ❸ .... ?

Shopkeeper : ❹ ....

Ali : How much is it?

Shopkeeper : ❺ ....

Ali : OK! I'll take it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The shopkeeper asked me to try the shirt.......... in the changing room.
   a. of   b. on   c. off   d. over
2. ....book is Sameh's?
   a. Which   b. When   c. Who   d. Where
3. My parents ....married twenty years ago.
   a. included   b. gave   c. got   d. took
4. If you are interested, email us and we can.......... the price. WB
   a. talk   b. speak   c. discuss   d. skip
5. I was talking to Ali, but he wasn't ....in my talk.
   a. interested   b. interest   c. interests   d. interesting

Unit 10

Review

Key Vocabulary

belt	حزام	chemical	مادة كيميائية
headscarf	غطاء للرأس (حجاب)	crop	محصول
scarf	شال / وشاح / كوفية	customer	زبون
handbag	حقيبة يد (حريمى)	chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج
trainers	حذاء رياضى	fantastic	رائع
earrings	قرط (حلق)	jacket	جاكيت
galabeya	جلباب	tool	أداة (يدوية)
sunglasses	نظارة شمس	headphones	سماعات الرأس
sandals	صندل	cool	رائع
special occasion	مناسبة خاصة	useful	مفيد
luxury	شئ فخم/فاخر	borrow (ed)	يستعير / يستلف
industry	صناعة	pick (ed)	يقطف (نبات) / يلتقط
perfect	مثالى (فى أحسن حال)	protect (ed)	يحمى
environment	البيئة	help (ed)	يساعد
famous	مشهور	fit (ted)	يناسب/يلائم
soft	ناعم / لين	try (ied) ... on	يقيس ملابس

Adjectives for clothes

smart	أنيق / مهندم	pretty	جميل
traditional	تقليدى	colourful	زاهى الألوان / ذو ملابس زاهية
comfortable	مريح (للملابس) / مستريح (للشخص)	casual	غير رسمى (ملابس)
uncomfortable	غير مريح	nice	لطيف
loose	فضفاض / واسع	simple	بسيط
cheap	رخيص	striped	مقلم / مخطط
expensive	غالى الثمن	heavy	ثقيل
strange	غريب		



1- Adjective order ترتيب الصفات

• يراعى الترتيب الآتي عند وصف شئ:

Size / Description	Shape	Age	Colour	Material	Noun
big / lovely	square	new	black	leather	bag

Ex. He wore a long, green, cotton shirt.

2- one / ones

• نستخدم (one) بدلاً من الاسم المفرد و (ones) بدلاً من الاسم الجمع عندما نريد ألا نكرر الاسم / الأسماء التى ذكرت سابقاً فى الجملة:

Ex. This watch is the one my father bought me.

Ex. These books are the ones I borrowed from the library.

3- this - that / these - those

• نستخدم أسماء الإشارة الآتية عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص/الأشياء القريبة منا.

this	هذا/هذه (للمفرد القريب)	these	هؤلاء (للجمع القريب)

• نستخدم أسماء الإشارة الآتية عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص/الأشياء البعيدة عنا.

that	تلك/ذلك (للمفرد البعيد)	those	أولئك (للجمع البعيد)

Speaking

1 Describing clothes

وصف الملابس

- نصف الملابس من حيث الآتي:

size المقاس	colour اللون
shape الشكل	material المادة المستخدمة
age العمر	

- ويراعى فى الوصف اتباع ترتيب الصفات كما سبق شرحه:

Ex. It's a beautiful, big, modern house.

كما يمكن أن نصف الملابس باستخدام صفات التفضيل كما يلي:

- This jacket is the nicest.
- This striped galabeya is the most traditional.

② Shopping for clothes

شراء الملابس

- نستخدم الأسئلة التالية للسؤال عن (عدد) الملابس التى يمتلكها/يشتريها شخص ما:

- How many (pairs of) .... do you have / own?
- Which ....is / are your favourite?

- ونجيب عن الأسئلة السابقة كالتالى:

- I have four pairs of socks, but the yellow pair is my favourite.

- ونسأل عن المحل الذى تحب الشراء منه بالصيغة التالية:

- Which clothes shops do you like? Which one is your favourite?

③ At a clothes shop

فى محل ملابس

- العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها بائع فى محل للزبون:

- Can I help you?
- Does it fit you?
- The changing room is there.
- It's .... pounds.

- العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها الزبون للبائع:

- I'd like .... like this.
- Could I try it on?
- Do you have a smaller size?
- How much is it / does it cost?
- I'll take it.

General Exercises on Unit 10

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Noura is asking Jana about her clothes.

Noura : Do you have dresses, Jana?

Jana : ❶ ....

Noura : ❷ .... ?

Jana : I have two, a yellow one and a blue one.

Noura : ❸ .... ?

Jana : The blue one is my favourite.

Noura : How many pairs of shoes do you have?

Jana : ❹ ....

Noura : Do you have any trainers?

Jana : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Plastic, linen and glass are all 2023
   a. foods b. plants c. subjects d. materials
2. The price is not .... it's very cheap. WB
   a. funny b. inexpensive c. expensive d. loose
3. I can't find clothes to .... me in this shop.
   a. keep b. fit c. hit d. try
4. We .... house to a bigger one last week.
   a. grew b. turned c. moved d. helped
5. I'm saving these clothes for a special ....
   a. occasion b. crop c. industry d. equipment

Exercises on Language

6. We went to the island in a/an .... boat. SB
   a. long, old, wooden b. wooden, long, old
   c. old, wooden, long d. old, long, wooden
7. We saw a / an .... statue in the museum. WB
   a. old, gold, big b. big, gold, old
   c. gold, big, old d. big, old, gold
8. .... market it amazing! There are so many cool things here. SB
   a. These b. That c. Those d. They
9. The man wore .... sunglasses. WB
   a. green, pretty, plastic b. pretty, plastic, green
   c. pretty, green, plastic d. plastic, green, pretty
10. Those earrings are the .... my mum gave me. SB
    a. ones b. none c. once d. one

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. These glasses don't fit me. I want the red .... (one). 2022
2. Where did you buy .... (these) pair of socks?

3. He wore a .... (blue, nice, wool) jumper. سلوروس 2023

4. How much .... (be) that necklace in the window? WB

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on: SB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"An advert for a mobile phone you want to sell"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What is the advert about?**
- **What is the description of what you want to sell?**
- **How did you get it?** - **How much is it?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I'm selling a/an** ....
- **It's** ....
- **It was a present from** ....
- **It is** .... **pounds.**

Unit 10

Al Azhar Test



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Leila has --------- pairs of sandals.
   a. three b. two c. four d. five
2. Leila bought them last --------- .
   a. year b. month c. week d. summer

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the the following dialogue:

Sara is talking to Mona who bought some clothes last weekend.

Sara : Hi! Mona, where did you go last weekend?

Mona : 1 ---.

Sara : Shopping! 2 ---?

Mona : I bought a T-shirt and a pair of sunglasses.

Sara : 3 ---?

Mona : I went with my brother and sister.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Look at these trousers. Which --------- do you like more?
   a. one b. ones c. one's d. once
2. He --------- some flowers and gave them to his mum.
   a. picked b. backed c. broke d. booked
3. Some people still like --------- clothes.
   a. white, linen, loose b. linen, loose, white
   c. loose, white, linen d. loose, linen, white
4. Women prefer wearing --------- in their ears.
   a. necklaces b. rings c. sunglasses d. earrings
5. He began to look --------- a new job after he left his old one.
   a. forward b. up c. at d. for

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The computer is widely used these days. you can find one in every house. Old people and kids use it. People use computers to help them with their work. Teachers, nowadays, use it in teaching different subjects. They can prepare their lessons by using the PowerPoint program. Students, also use it for their studies. The young use it to make friends all over the world using the internet. Businessmen use it in their trade to import and export their goods. **They** can do agreements from their offices instead of travelling long distances. By using the internet, you can read news from all over the world through any website.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do students use computers?

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to?

....

3. How are computers useful?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. .... people can use computers.

a. Old b. Young c. Old and young d. No

5. According to the passage, teachers can use the .... program in teaching.

a. Access b. PowerPoint c. Excel d. Windows

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. selling - a cool, - chest of drawers - **I'm** - old - wooden. ....
2. have - a - size - **Do** - have - you - smaller? ....
3. if - you - interested - **Email** - are - me. ....
4. a beautiful, - leather - , new, - black - **I'm selling** - handbag. ....

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

(أجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Industry in Egypt"

....

....

....

....

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني وردت بالوحدة

Paragraphs

1- An advert for a mobile phone I want to sell

I'm selling a mobile phone. It's new. I didn't use it. I already have one that is the same. It is very modern. It is black with a large touch screen. It can go on the internet. It has got an MP3. You can listen to music and watch videos on it. It can store 3000 phone numbers. It has got a wonderful camera. It can take many photos at one time. It's perfect for work or study. The price is LE 5000. If you are interested, email me for more information "hero55@yahoo.com".

2. Industry in Egypt

Egypt has many types of industry. Cotton industry is one of these. Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world. It is often used to make luxury clothes and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry.

3- A special occasion I am going to

I am going to a special occasion next week. My friend's sister is getting married next Sunday. He invited me to the wedding. It will be a big party. It will be at a big hotel. Unfortunately, I don't have something new to wear. I want to look smart in the party. I will go to a clothes shop tomorrow. I will buy a jacket. I saw it in its window last week. I will buy a new pair of shoes, too. I like black, leather shoes. I think these items will be perfect for this occasion.

Emails

1- A description of the clothes I usually wear

From : tamer505@yahoo.com
To : ihabomar22@gmail.com
Subject : A description of my clothes

Dear Ihab,

How are you and your family? I want to tell you something about the clothes I wear. I usually wear casual clothes. They are very comfortable. They look nice. I don't like wearing traditional clothes. I need clothes that help me move freely. I buy my clothes by myself at the clothes shops. They are a little expensive, but I like that. I want to hear from you soon.

Yours,
Tamer

2- A description of a room in my house

From : hani(a)@yahoo.com
To : redamail@gmail.com
Subject : A room in my house

Dear Hani(a),

How are you and your family? I want to describe my bedroom. My room looks great, especially when I moved the furniture around. Now, the first thing you see when you walk into the room is my bed. There's a bookshelf above my bed where I put my school books. To the right of my bed, there is a desk with a lamp on top. On the floor there is a yellow carpet. I hope you enjoyed this description of my room! Please, write to me about your bedroom.

Best wishes.

Yours,
Reda

Unit 10 TEST



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. .... is famous for growing crops to make material.
   a. England b. Lebanon c. Egypt d. France
2. The Ancient Egyptians grew .... by the Nile.
   a. fruit b. vegetables c. trees d. plants
3. Almost everyone in Ancient Egypt wore clothes made of ....
   a. linen b. leather c. cotton d. string
4. The Ancient Egyptians also used the plants to make ....
   a. boxes b. baskets c. bags d. shoes

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Belal is at a clothes shop. He wants to buy a shirt.

Assistant : Can I help you?
Belal : ❶ ....
Assistant : What would you like to buy?
Belal : ❷ ....
Assistant : ❸ ....?
Belal : I want it blue.
Assistant : ❹ ....
Belal : ❺ ....?
Assistant : It's 200 pounds.
Belal : Here you are. Thank you.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The type of clothes that is worn usually depends on the occasion. People that attend a wedding usually wear formal clothes. Men often wear suits and women wear dresses. Formal and smart clothes are often worn on special occasions. People often wear different clothes at work. Some jobs require people to wear special uniforms.

People often choose to wear comfortable clothes inside their own homes. This choice of clothes may be very different to the clothes <u>they</u> would wear outside. People often wear clothes which match their size, style and their age.

A. Answer the following questions :

6. What is the main idea of the passage?

----

7. What do people in some jobs have to wear?

----

8. Do you usually wear formal or casual clothes? Why?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

9. People wear clothes depending on the ....
   a. time   b. occasion   c. money   d. food
10. The underlined word "**they**" refers to......... .
   a. clothes   b. uniforms   c. people   d. homes
11. People often choose to wear comfortable clothes inside their own ....
   a. homes   b. seas   c. streets   d. banks

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. These books are funny, but these .... are very boring! WB
   a. ones   b. once   c. one   d. only
2. A necklace is made of .... [illegible] 2023
   a. wool   b. cotton   c. wood   d. gold
3. I love wearing my .... galabeya, because it is very cool in the summer. WB
   a. cotton, long, loose   b. long, cotton, loose
   c. long, loose, cotton   d. cotton, loose, long
4. All people know Mo Salah. He is very .... [illegible] 2023
   a. greedy   b. famous   c. colourful   d. unfamous
5. Could I .... this dress on? [illegible] 2023
   a. try   b. dry   c. fry   d. drought
6. My friend took my jacket as we are the same......... .
   a. colour   b. time   c. size   d. subject
7. She likes to wear a beautiful necklace and other ....
   a. handbag   b. jewellery   c. glass   d. plastic
8. I borrowed .... story from the library yesterday.
   a. this   b. there   c. these   d. those

9. People usually wear smart clothes for .... occasions.
   a. special   b. funny   c. loose   d. tight
10. They have to wear .... clothes in that special party.
   a. traditional   b. electric   c. wooden   d. dirty

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. He wore a .... (long, cotton, red) galabeya. WB
2. These shoes aren't good, I want those .... (one) in the window, please.
3. I am selling .... (pair) of cool, new sunglasses. SB
4. I like .... (these) leather belt.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on: WB

[مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار]

"A special occasion you are going to"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What special occasion are you going to?**
- **Where will it be?**
- **What will you wear for it?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I'm going to** ....
- **It will be in** ....
- **I'll buy a/an** .... **to wear for it.**



New Hello!



The future of our planet

Objectives

Reading:

Online posts about helping the environment; texts about a school trip; an article about teenage inventors; a postcard

Writing:

A paragraph about an environmental problem; a holiday postcard

Listening:

Identifying what is going to happen; a radio programme about environmental problems; a teacher talking about drones; a discussion about making arrangements

Speaking:

Making predictions and future plans; suggesting solutions; giving opinions

Language:

be going to and *the present continuous* for the future

Life skills:

Problem solving; Negotiation; Collaboration

SB / WB Answers جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب

Key Vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات

solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	save (d)	ينقذ/يوفر
rubbish	قمامة	reduce (d)	يقلل
plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيكية	damage (d)	يتلف/يدمر
wildlife*	الحياة البرية	install (ed)	يركب/يثبت «جهاز أو تطبيق»
roof	سطح المنزل	pick (ed) up	يلتقط
drought*	جفاف	plant (ed)	يزرع
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح (مولدات الطاقة من الرياح)	repair (ed)	يُصلح
		melt (ed)	يذوب/ينصهر
reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير (تصنيع)

Nouns & Adjectives

Noun		Adjective	
environment	البيئة	environmental	بيئى
tradition	تقليد	traditional	تقليدى
music	مُوسِيقَى	musical	مُوسِيقِيٌّ
nature	الطبيعة	natural	طبيعى

Vocabulary

planet	كوكب	equipment	معدات
climate change	تغير المناخ	local people	سكان محليون
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	desert animals	حيوانات صحراوية
traffic	المركبات فى حركة المرور/المرور	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
roof garden	حديقة فوق السطح	trekking	رحلة شاقة «على الأقدام»
online post	منشور على الانترنت	washing machine	غسالة
race	سباق	electric cars	سيارات تعمل بالكهرباء
extra	اضافى / زائد	events	أحداث
path	ممر	hunter	صياد
solution	حل	commentator	معلق التلفاز
intention	نية	approach (ed)	يقترب من
vehicle	مركبة «عربة»	flood (ed) (n)	يفيض/فيضان
finishing line	خط النهاية	improve (d)	يحسن / يطور
wherever	فى أى مكان		

* الحياة البرية هى الكائنات التى تعيش فى البرية سواء حيوانات أو نباتات

Verbs & Nouns that go together

install solar panels	يركب الواح الطاقة الشمسية	reduce pollution	يقلل التلوث
recycle mobile phones	يعيد تصنيع هواتف محمولة	cause pollution	يسبب التلوث
pick up rubbish	يلتقط القمامة	damage the environment	يدمر البيئة
plant trees	يزرع اشجار	use too much water	يستخدم الكثير من الماء
reuse plastic bottles	يعيد استخدام زجاجات بلاستيك	leave rubbish	يترك القمامة
save wildlife	ينقذ الحيوانات والنباتات فى البرية	play music	يعزف موسيقى
		build hotels	يبنى فنادق
		win a race	يفوز بسباق

Expressions & Prepositions

get worse	يزداد سوءاً	make money	يكسب مالاً
later this year	فى وقت لاحق هذا العام	save ....from	ينقذ.... من
keep ....safe	يحافظ على سلامة.......	stop....from	يمنع...... من
throw away	يتخلص من	on your own	بنفسك/بمفردك
catch the bus	يلحق بالاتوبيس	dangerous for	خطير على
go to bed	يذهب للنوم	go for his holiday	يذهب فى إجازته
go trekking	يقوم برحلة على الأقدام	at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الاسبوع
come on quick	تعالى بسرعة	across the desert	عبر الصحراء
The alarm o'clock didn't go off	المنبه لم يرن	change into	يتحول إلى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
catch	يلحق بـ/ يمسك	caught	caught
win	يفوز	won	won
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
ring	يرن	rang	rung
throw	يرمى - يلقى - يتخلص من	threw	thrown

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
drought	جفاف	dryness	flood	فيضان
repair	يصلح	fix	damage	يتلف
install	يركب/يثبت (جهاز/تطبيق)	set up	uninstall	يزيل تثبيت
local	محلى	national	international	دولى
reduce	يقلل	decrease	increase	يزيد

Definitions

install يركب / يثبت جهاز	put equipment[1] somewhere so it is ready to use	١- معدات
reduce يقلل	make something less in amount[2] or size	٢- كمية
repair يصلح	fix[3] something that is broken[4]	٣- يصلح
save ينقذ	make something safe from danger[5]	٤- مكسور
solar panels الواح الطاقة الشمسية	equipment that changes the sun's light into electricity[6]	٥- خطر
wind turbine توربينات الرياح	equipment that uses the wind[7] to make electricity	٦- كهرباء
roof سطح المنزل	the top part of a building that protects it from rain, the sun, etc	٧- رياح

Language Notes

1
environment / environmental **nature / natural**
music / musical **tradition / traditional**

- يمكن ان نحول بعض الأسماء الى صفات باضافة (al) إلى الاسم:

Ex. It's a tradition to colour eggs in Sham el Nessim.

Ex. The galabeya is a traditional item of clothing in Egypt.

2 because of / because

- **because of + noun** بسبب
  Ex. I was late because of the bad traffic.
- **because + فاعل + فعل** لأن
  Ex. I was late because the traffic was bad.

3 The prefix "re-"

- نضيف البادئة "-re" لبعض الأفعال لتعطى معنى مرة أخرى "again" مثل:

reuse	يعيد استخدام	rewrite	يعيد كتابة
recycle	يعيد تدوير / تصنيع	redo	يعيد فعل

4 electric / electricity / electronic

- **electric** كهربى (يعمل بالكهرباء)
  Ex. Electric cars are good for the environment.
- **electricity** كهرباء
  Ex. Solar panels make electricity

• **electronic** إليكترونى

Ex. My little brother likes electronic games.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Scientists are trying to solve .... problems.
   a. environment b. environmental c. tradition d. music
2. I was late .... the heavy traffic.
   a. because b. reason c. cause d. because of
3. We add the prefix .... to the verb "use" to give the meaning "again".
   a. re- b. dis- c. un- d. bi-
4. Is your cooker .... or gas?
   a. electronic b. electricity c. electric d. electrician

Reading

SB Page (45)



استمع إلى النصوص

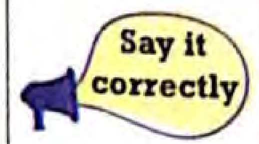


The rivers in Kaziranga National Park[1] in India often flood[2]* and the problem is getting worse because of climate change[3]. Later this year, I'm going to help my father to save wildlife[4] from the flood water. This can be dangerous, but my father works in the park and he knows how to keep me safe!

There's a lot of air pollution[5]* from the traffic[6] in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce[7] air pollution - so next week, we're going to plant trees on the roof[8] of our school and make a school roof garden.

I love phones, but I know that throwing away[9] old phones can be bad for the environment. I started a project[10] in school to recycle[11] mobile phones. From tomorrow, people are going to bring us their old phones and we're going to reuse[12] parts from them to repair[13] other phones.

١- حديقة كازيرانجا الوطنية (بالهند)
٢- يفيض
٣- تغير المناخ
٤- الحياة البرية
٥- تلوث الهواء
٦- المركبات فى حركة المرور
٧- يقلل
٨- السطح
٩- التخلص من
١٠- مشروع
١١- يعيد تصنيع
١٢- يعيد استخدام
١٣- يصلح



* drought	تنطق الحروف (ought) فى كلمة drought مثل كلمة (out).
* flood	ينطق حرفى (oo) فى كلمة flood مثل حرف (u) فى كلمة bus.
* pollution	ينطق حرف (u) فى كلمة pollution مثل حرف (u) فى كلمة (blue) وليس مثل (u) فى كلمة (uniform) .

Audioscript

SB Page (46)



Narrator (1)

Boy : Oh no! Look at the time! It's 9 o'clock! Come on quick!

Narrator (2)

Girl 1 : The water's a bit[1] cold at first but it's lovely. Come on, Huda! Come and join me[2]!

Girl 2 : OK, I'm coming!

Narrator (3)

Voice : We are now approaching[3] Station Square[4].

Boy 1 : Is this our stop[5]?

Boy 2 : Yes, it is. Come on.

Narrator (4)

Commentator[6] : And they're near the finishing line[7] now and suddenly Farida seems to be running faster. Nothing can stop her now. Just look at her go!

Narrator (5)

Boy : Oh, I'm tired. But it's only nine o'clock!

Woman : Yes, but you've got school in the morning, Omar.

Boy : You're right. Good night, Mum. Good night, Ola.

١- قليلا
٢- انضم إلى
٣- تقترب من
٤- ميدان المحطة
٥- محطة
٦- معلق تلفاز
٧- خط النهاية

SB Page (47)

Speaker: Wadi Rum[1] is a large area of desert in the south of Jordan. It's a very beautiful place with mountains, desert plants and wildlife. Unfortunately[2], Wadi Rum has some environmental[3] problems.

Tourists help the local[4] people make money[5], but when tourists go trekking[6] in the desert, they often leave rubbish[7], too.

Some tourists drive across the desert in cars: they don't use roads or paths[8], but drive wherever[9] they want to and this can damage[10] plants and wildlife.

The hotels use lots of water which can be a problem in the desert. But they are building new hotels so even more tourists will go there.

Another big problem is hunters[11] who kill the desert animals. They shouldn't do this but there aren't enough people to stop them. There is much less wildlife now than in the past and soon there won't be any.

١- وادي روم بالأردن
٢- لسوء الحظ
٣- بيئي
٤- محلي
٥- يكسب اموال
٦- يقوم برحلة على الأقدام
٧- قمامة
٨- ممرات / مسارات
٩- حيثما
١٠- يتلف
١١- صيادون

Exercises on Vocabulary

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. The desert is a difficult .... to live in. WB 2023
   a. environment b. environmental c. tradition d. music
2. There was a fire in the flats and firefighters .... a family. WB
   a. recycled b. saved c. reduced d. repaired
3. We like playing .... together. WB
   a. tradition b. musical c. music d. environment
4. My uncle helped us to ..... a new washing machine this morning. أبو حماد 2023 WB
   a. reduce b. plant c. leave d. install
5. My mobile doesn't work, so I asked someone to .... it. المنوفية – السادات 2022
   a. recycle b. repeat c. repair d. replay
6. Green inventions don't .... the environment. البحيرة – التحرير 2022
   a. help b. clean c. need d. damage
7. People use .... to make energy from the sun. الجيزة – أبو النمرس 2023
   a. wind turbines b. time machines c. solar panels d. time lines
8. There is a .... because of the heavy rain. البدرشين 2023
   a. flood b. drought c. float d. flour
9. There is a .... as it hasn't rained for a long time. البدرشين 2023
   a. cloud b. flood c. storm d. drought
10. I will help my father save .... from the flood water. SB
    a. earthquake b. life c. wildlife d. sun

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. We can get electricity from .... turbines.
    a. wind b. grass c. wing d. window
12. We should .... trees to clean the air we breathe.
    a. recycle b. burn c. plant d. cut down
13. We need to .... the amount of salt in our food because it isn't healthy.
    a. increase b. reduce c. add d. recycle
14. The sun .... the snow.
    a. floated b. killed c. melted d. eaten
15. We should .... plastic, paper and glass to help save the environment.
    a. cycle b. burn c. recycle d. kill

16. The supermarket encourages people to .... plastic bags.
a. reread b. redo c. reuse d. rewrite
17. Don't drop .... Put it in the bin, please.
a. rubbish b. music c. tradition d. nature
18. Malak goes up the .... of her house to watch the stars every night.
a. ceiling b. roof c. garage d. bathroom



Future Forms

(be) going to + inf. سوف

Form التكوين

I	am	(not) going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

Usage الاستخدام

١- نستخدم (be) going to + inf.) للتعبير عن نية/خطة مستقبلية/قرار لفعل شئ فى المستقبل ويدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

decide يقرر - **decision** قرار - **plan** يخطط/خطة - **intend** ينوى - **intention** نية

Ex. I'm going to help my father.
Ex. He isn't going to throw away his old phone.

٢- نستخدم (be) going to + inf.) أيضا للتنبؤ بأحداث فى المستقبل فى وجود دليل (نراه او نعرفه) ويدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

predict يتنبأ - **prediction** تنبؤ - **evidence** دليل

Ex. It is going to rain. (I can see some dark clouds.)
Ex. The students are going to do very well in their exams. (They always get good marks.)

Question السؤال

	am	
(كلمة استفهام) +	is	+ subject + going to + inf...?
	are	

Ex. What are you going to do?
Ex. Is she going to help the environment?

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Number four is at the front. She .... the race. WB
   a. will win b. is going to win c. is winning d. wins
2. What are you .... to do at the weekend? SB
   a. go b. going c. goes d. went
3. There are many storms. The man's hat .... come off.
   a. will b. shall c. going to d. is going to
4. He is late so he .... the bus. SB
   a. isn't catching b. isn't going to catch
   c. catches b. caught
5. We are going .... tennis next week.
   a. to playing b. play c. plays d. to play

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. The traffic is slow. We .... to be late.
   a. gone b. are going c. going d. are gone
7. It's very cold. I .... a jacket tonight.
   a. am wearing b. wear
   c. am going to wear d. wore
8. She .... to the clothes shop to buy a dress. She already decided.
   a. walk b. walking c. are walking d. is going to walk
9. **A:** "Any plans for the weekend?"
   B: "Yes, I .... some furniture for my new flat."
   a. is buying b. am going to buy c. buy d. buying
10. Be careful! This old tree........ .
    a. falls b. is fallen c. fell d. is going to fall
11. I can't ride a bike very well. Oh, no I .... crash.
    a. will b. shall c. must d. is going to
12. I think Magdy .... the manager of the company. He is a hard working person.
    a. is going to become b. is becoming c. became d. becomes
13. .... to travel to Luxor?
    a. You will b. You are going c. Will you d. Are you going
14. How is she........ help the environment?
    a. gone b. going c. going to d. goes

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The boy and his father are going to .... (watching) a football match. WB
2. They .... (going) to do extra homework tonight. 2023 SB
3. I .... (is going to) help in a charity. I've planned for that.
4. I feel terrible now. I think I .... (be) sick.

Speaking

1 Talking about future plans

التحدث عن الخطط المستقبلية

نسأل باستخدم (be) going to عن الخطط المستقبلية كالآتى:

What are you going to do at the weekend? ماذا ستفعل فى عطلة نهاية الاسبوع؟

Where are you going to go for your next holiday? أين ستذهب فى اجازتك القادمة؟

How are you going to improve your English? كيف ستطور لغتك الانجليزية؟

Are you going to recycle your mobile phone when it's old?
هل ستعيد تدوير (تصنيع) هاتفك عندما يصبح قديم؟

2 Making predictions

التنبؤ

نستخدم (be) going to للتعبير عن التنبؤ بناء على دليل كالآتى:

Evidence دليل	Prediction تنبؤ
- The students didn't do their homework.	- The teacher is going to be angry. - They are going to have to do extra homework tonight.
- My alarm clock didn't go off this morning.	- I'm going to be late for school.
- It's lunchtime but I forgot my lunch.	- I'm going to be hungry.
- It's nearly the end of the holidays.	- I'm going to go to school.
- Hanna's phone is ringing.	- She's going to answer it.

2) Suggesting solutions to environmental problems

اقتراح حلول للمشكلات البيئية

Environmental problems

المشكلات البيئية

1- Tourists leave rubbish.
يترك السائحون قمامة.

2- Some tourists drive across the desert which can damage plants and wildlife.
يقود بعض السائحون سيارتهم عبر الصحراء مما يمكن أن يتلف النباتات والحياة البرية.

3- Hotels use lots of water.
تستخدم الفنادق الكثير من المياة.

4- Hunters kill desert animals.
يقوم الصيادون بقتل الحيوانات الصحراوية.

نعبر عن الحلول للمشكلات البيئية كالآتي:

- Make... more expensive. — نجعل .... اغلى ثمنا
- Stop people from...v-ing — نمنع الناس من ....
- People should stop driving across the desert. — يجب أن يتوقف الناس عن القيادة عبر الصحراء .
- Use camels... — نستخدم الجمال ....
- Recycle... — نعيد تصنيع ....
- Ask local people to... — نطلب من السكان المحليين أن ....
- Build .... — نقوم ببناء ....

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Alaa are talking about holiday. رشيد 2023

Ahmed : Hi, Alaa. How are you?

Alaa : ❶ ...., what about you?

Ahmed : Fine, thanks. ❷ ....?

Alaa : I'm going to travel to America next holiday.

Ahmed : America! Why?

Alaa : ❸ ....

Ahmed : How long are you going to stay?

Alaa : ❹ ....

Ahmed : ❺ ....?

Alaa : I am going to stay at my uncle's house.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Wadi Rum is a large .... of desert in the south of Jordan. 2023
   a. time b. stone c. rock d. area
2. I think electric cars will help to .... pollution in the future. WB
   a. increase b. add c. win d. reduce
3. I got up late because my alarm clock didn't 2023
   a. throw away b. get off c. put away d. go off
4. She has decided. She .... abroad. SB
   a. travel b. travelling
   c. is going to travel d. travels
5. How are you going to .... your English? SB
   a. improve b. improving c. improves d. improved

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Mum is making a lot of food. Some people .... (visit) us today.
2. My brothers and I are going to .... (watching) Al Ahly final match at the stadium. 2023
3. What .... (is) you going to do in the future?

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

to your friend Salah telling him what you think the weather's going to be today.

- **Your name is Rami and your email address is ramialaa@hotmail.com.**
- **Your friend's email address is salahzaki@yahoo.com.**

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكترونى:

- **Why do you send this email?**
- **How was the weather in the morning?**
- **I think it will be later?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **What do you think the weather ....**
- **The weather was .... in the morning.**
- **I think it's going to be ....**

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 48-50 WB pages 102-103

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

English	Arabic
remote control	جهاز تحكم عن بعد
drone	طائرة بدون طيار
suitable	مناسب
mangrove	شجرة المانجروف
conservation	حماية/ الحفاظ على الكائنات
lend	يقرض/يسلف
system	نظام
environment-friendly / green	صديق للبيئة
location	موقع
chemicals	مواد كيميائية
bacteria	بكتيريا (اسم جمع)
invention	اختراع
filter (ed) (n)	يفلتر - يصفى - مصفى / فلتر
control (led)	يتحكم فى

Vocabulary

English	Arabic
seeds	بذور
forest	غابة
jungle	غابة استوائية
wind energy	طاقة الرياح
gate	بوابة
diving trips	رحلات الغطس
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
sunhat	قبعة للوقاية من الشمس
suitcase	حقيبة سفر
ocean	محيط
farmlands	اراضى زراعية
sea life	حياة (حيوانات) بحرية
midday	منتصف النهار
form	استمارة
STEM School	مدرسة العلوم والتكنولوجيا والهندسة والرياضيات
underground water	مياه جوفية
canal	قناة مائية
volunteer	متطوع
Egyptian tortoises	سلاحف مصرية
recycling bin	سلة اعادة التدوير
smart app	تطبيق ذكى
season	فصل من فصول السنة
irrigate (d)	يروى
solve (d)	يحل
determine (d)	يحدد
film (ed)	يصور فيلم/فيديو
return (ed)	يعود
kill (ed)	يقتل
present (ed)	يقدم
drop (ped)	يلقى - يُسقط

Expressions & Prepositions

go on a trip	يذهب فى رحلة	suitable for	مناسب لـ
take part in	يشارك فى	leave for	يغادر لـ
save water and energy	يوفر الماء والطاقة	take out ..... from	يستخرج ... من
complete a form	يكمل استمارة	work on a project	يعمل فى مشروع
make water safe	يجعل الماء آمن للاستخدام	in two hours	خلال ساعتان
make deliveries	يوصل الطلبات	in ten days' time	بعد عشرة أيام
make much noise	يحدث الكثير من الضوضاء	(be) connected to	متصل بـ
make / cause pollution	يسبب التلوث	according to	طبقاً لـ
drop seeds onto	يُسقط البذور على	fly over a place	يطير فوق مكان
solve problems	يحل مشكلات	look after	يعتنى بـ
present solutions for	يقدم حلول لـ		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
hurt	يجرح/يؤذى	hurt	hurt
lend	يقرض/ يسلف	lent	lent
mean	يعنى/يقصد	meant	meant

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
remote	بعيد	far	near	قريب
suitable	مناسب	fit	unsuitable	غير مناسب
remove	يزيل	take away	add	يضيف

Definitions

filters (n)	فلاتر	tools[1] that take things out of liquids[2] such as water
filter (v)	يفلتر/يصفى	pass a liquid or gas through a piece of equipment in order to remove solid[3] pieces
bacteria	بكتيريا	microorganisms[4] that are everywhere[5] but are too small to see and can make you ill
system	نظام	an organised[6] way of doing something
location	موقع	the place or position[7] of a particular[8] area of land
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	things you can make in chemistry[9]

١- أدوات
٢- سوائل
٣- صلب
٤- كائنات دقيقة
٥- فى كل مكان
٦- منظمة
٧- موقع / موضع
٨- محدد / معين
٩- الكيمياء

Word	Definition
green صديق للبيئة	good for the environment
conservation حماية/الحفاظ على الكائنات	the protection of natural things such as forests, birds and animals
control يتحكم في	make a person, organisation[10] or object do what you want
suitable مناسب	acceptable[11] or right for someone or something
mangrove شجرة المانجروف	a tropical[12] tree, found near water, whose roots[13] grow partly above ground

١٠- مؤسسة
١١- مقبول
١٢- استوائي
١٣- جذور

Language Notes

1) information

- تعامل كلمة information معاملة المفرد ولا نضع قبلها اداة نكرة (a / an) ويأتي بعدها فعل لفاعل مفرد is/has

Ex. The information he gave me was important.

- وينطبق الكلام السابق على الكلمات news / advice / equipment

2) bacteria

- تعامل كلمة بكتريا bacteria معاملة الجمع ويأتى بعدها فعل لفاعل جمع ومفردها (bacterium).

Ex. Some bacteria cause diseases.

3) invent / discover

- **invent** يخترع شئ لم يكن موجود

Ex. Do you know who invented the mobile phone?

- **discover** يكتشف شئ موجود ولم يكن معروف

Ex. Dr Ahmed Zewail discovered the femtosecond.

4) look forward to

- **look forward to** يتطلع إلى - يأتى بعدها (noun / v-ing)

Ex. It's cold. I'm looking forward to visiting Aswan.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My information .... that Mohammed Salah wants to stay with Liverpool.
   a. are b. were c. is d. have
2. Bacteria .... usually dangerous for us.
   a. has b. is c. was d. are

3. Graham Bell .... the telephone.
   a. invented   d. recycled   c. discovered   d. hurt
4. I'm looking forward .... to Alex.
   a. go   d. going   c. to go   d. to going

Audioscript

SB Page (48)

استمع إلى النصوص

١- طائرة بدون طيار
٢- جهاز تحكم عن بعد
٣- توصيل الطلبات
٤- تطير فوق
٥- يفحص
٦- طاقة الرياح
٧- تلقي بالبذور

Scientist : Drones[1] can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them: we can use remote control[2]. This means we can control drones from the ground. In the future, drones are going to help solve some environmental problems.

Boy : Really? How can we do that?

Scientist : Well, companies are going to use drones a lot instead of lorries to make deliveries[3]. This is going to help the environment because drones don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries.

Boy : That's interesting.

Scientist : Yes, and we are also going to use drones to help wildlife. Drones can fly over[4] places where people can't go. We can see if there are any problems. For example, we can use drones to help save wildlife after floods or fires.

Boy : Can they help people, too?

Scientist : Of course! We can send drones to dangerous places. For example, we are starting to use drones to check[5] wind turbines. This is not an easy job. Wind energy[6] is much better for the environment and makes less pollution. We can even use drones to plant trees. Drones can drop seeds[7] onto the ground in places that people can't go to. And they don't need to stop and have a rest!

WB Page (102)

١- المسرح
٢- مسرحية
٣- ممتع
٤- يتطلع إلى
٥- اليونان

Khaled : It's 12 o'clock on Saturday, but I'm going to be busy for the next few days. So, what am I doing? This evening, I'm going to the theatre[1] to see a play[2]. Then tomorrow, I'm playing basketball in the park. The day after tomorrow, I'm helping my uncle in his shop after school. Then, next Saturday, we're taking my cousins to the desert. That should be fun[3]. But I'm really looking forward to[4] our holidays! We're flying to Greece[5], but that's in nine days' time. I can't wait!

Reading SB P. (49)



Dear parents,

The bus will be leaving for Ras Mohammad from the school tomorrow at 6.30 am and returning in five days' time at 12.30 pm on Thursday 11th June. Please make sure(1) that your daughter has suitable(2) clothes for the swimming and diving trips to the coral reefs(3) on Monday and Tuesday. They will also need good trainers(4) and a sunhat(5) for the visit to the mangrove forest(6) on Wednesday. We will be taking part in(7) the conservation(8) project in the mangrove forest and helping to plant new trees.

Hi Laila

We aren't sharing(9) a room. Mrs Nagwa says that the older students have to help look after the younger girls. Can we meet at the school gates(10) tomorrow morning at 6 am? I need to give you the trainers I'm lending(11) you so that you can put them in your suitcase(12).

Habiba

١- يتأكد
٢- مناسب
٣- الشعاب المرجانية
٤- حذاء رياضي
٥- قبعة واقية من الشمس
٦- غابة المانجروف
٧- يشارك في
٨- حماية/محافظة
٩- يشارك
١٠- بوابات
١١- يُسلف
١٢- حقيبة سفر

SB Page (50)

Fantastic green inventions by teenagers



Green inventions are environment-friendly(1). These inventions present solutions(2) to environmental problems without damaging the environment.

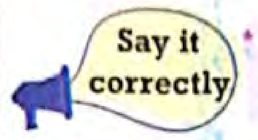
Boyan Slat was a student in Holland(3) when he invented a system(4) to take plastic rubbish from the sea. There is a lot of plastic in our seas, which kills lots of wildlife. Boyan's system is called Ocean Cleanup Array(5). It uses machines whose arms have lots of filters(6) on them. These filters take the plastic out of the sea water, without hurting sea life(7).

Deepika Kurup was 14 when she invented a green system(8) for cleaning water and making it safe for people to drink. When she visited her grandparents in India, Deepika saw children drinking water from a dirty canal. Before this, systems for cleaning water were expensive and used dangerous chemicals(9) which pollute the environment. Deepika's system is cheap and uses light from the sun to kill bacteria(10) in water.

١- صديقة للبيئة
٢- تقدم حلول
٣- دولة هولندا
٤- نظام
٥- نظام تنظيف المحيط
٦- مصافي/فلاتر
٧- الكائنات البحرية
٨- نظام صديق للبيئة
٩- مواد كيميائية
١٠- البكتيريا

Five Egyptian students from Kafr El-Sheikh STEM School were able to develop an app[11] to help small farmers save water and energy. In this app, farmers complete a simple form[12] with information about their farmlands[13]. This form is connected to a smart app which tells farmers the right amount of water that they need to irrigate[14] their lands. The app also determines*[15] the amount of energy and the number of workers the lands need, according to[16] their location[17] and the season[18].

١١- يطور تطبيق
١٢- استمارة بسيطة
١٣- أراضي زراعية
١٤- يروي
١٥- يحدد
١٦- طبقاً لـ
١٧- الموقع
١٨- فصل من فصول السنة



* determine تنطق الحروف (mine) في كلمة determine مثل نطق كلمة (tin) مع اختلاف اول حرف.

Videoscript

SB Page (50)



Narrator:

The Red Sea is very important. People visit from around the world to go scuba diving[1] and it's also home to many different species [2] of wildlife, such as fish, turtles and birds.

The Red Sea also contains many coral reefs. A coral reef is a collection[3] of colourful plants, animals and rocks that you can find under the sea near the coast[4]. Coral reefs are important because they are a habitat[5] for lots of underwater animals, like this sea anemone[6].. and this shark. But many coral reefs around the world are in danger. They are going to disappear because the water in the seas and oceans is getting warmer. The water in seas and oceans is going to be too hot for coral reefs in the future. Plastic is also damaging the reefs.

There are conservation groups that want to conserve[7] the world's coral reefs. One of these is the Red Sea Environment Centre in Egypt. Scuba divers go to the coral reefs in the Red Sea twice a year to investigate[8] their condition[9].

The coral reefs in the Red Sea and all around the world are beautiful. We are going to lose them if we don't look after them.

١- الغطس بمعدات تنفس
٢- سلالات
٣- مجموعة
٤- الساحل
٥- موطن
٦- شقائق نعمان البحر
٧- يحافظ على
٨- يتحقق من
٩- حالة/وضع

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. .... don't need pilots to fly them. (2023)
   a. Planes b. Jets c. Drones d. Helicopters
2. A lot of animals live in the .... forests next to the sea. WB
   a. improve b. mangrove c. roof d. gloves
3. I love playing computer games because I can .... what the people do on the screen. WB
   a. grow b. irrigate c. hurt d. control
4. Scientists can use a .... to take out small pieces of plastic from rivers. WB
   a. filter b. spoon c. gate d. book
5. T-shirt and jeans are not .... for the party. (2023)
   a. suitable b. suitcase c. cheap d. suit
6. Planes, mobiles and helicopters are great .... (2023)
   a. invitations b. pollutions c. views d. inventions
7. I decided to join the .... project to help the environment. (2023)
   a. conservation b. conversation c. ocean d. liquid
8. Green inventions are .... SB
   a. environment-friendly b. environment-friend
   c. environmental d. environmentalist
9. .... are microorganisms that are too small to see and can make you ill. SB
   a. Food b. Boys c. Cats d. Bacteria

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. Farmers use .... to kill insects that destroy their crops.
    a. juice b. soup c. sweets d. chemicals
11. He will sell his house for a good price because of its good ....
    a. location b. photo c. situation d. action
12. When did people first start using a .... for TVs?
    a. mouse b. remote control c. keyboard d. mirror
13. Mr Mohammed has developed a new .... for learning English.
    a. filter b. match c. train d. system
14. Tap water should pass through a .... before we drink it.
    a. fan c. filter d. phone d. plane



1- The present continuous زمن المضارع المستمر ،للتعبير عن المستقبل،

Form التكوين

I	am	(not) verb + ing.
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

Usage الاستخدام

١- نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات فى المستقبل (غالبا مع الاشارة إلى وقت أو تاريخ يدل على المستقبل) ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

arrange يرتب - **arrangements** ترتيبات - **prepare** يعد/ يجهز - **preparation** إعداد/تجهيز

Ex. I'm visiting the dentist at half past four next Thursday.

Ex. We're catching our train at 12.30. We aren't taking the bus.

٢- يستخدم المضارع المستمر ايضا للتعبير عن حدث فى الوقت الحاضر (اثناء الكلام)

Ex. She is drawing a picture now.

• يستخدم للتعبير عن احداث بدأت ولم تنتهى بعد (ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام)

Ex. My sister is learning French.

• يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة.

Ex. They are painting the school this week.

Question السؤال

(كلمة استفهام) + am / is / are + subject + verb + ing?

Ex. When are you painting your house?

Ex. Are you travelling to Luxor tomorrow?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

Look! انظر	Listen! استمع
now الآن	at the moment فى هذه اللحظة/فى الوقت الحال
at present فى الوقت الحاضر	tomorrow غدا
next (week-month-year) (الأسبوع - الشهر - العام) القادم	

(be) going to / The present continuous

Notes

(لاحظ الفرق بينهما فى الاستخدام)

• لا نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن تنبؤ فى المستقبل

- Is it going to rain tonight? √ √ √ (الجملة صحيحة)

~~Is it raining tonight?~~ ××× (الجملة خطأ)

• نستخدم (be) going to للتعبير عن خطط مستقبلية حيث نتحدث عن معلومات غير مهمة وخطط غير مكتملة اما المضارع المستمر يعبر عن خطط مستقبلية مكتملة ومرتبطة بترتيبات كحجز تذاكر سفر او حجرة فى فندق.

- I'm going to travel to Alexandria next month.

(هذه نية المتحدث ولم يتخذ اى ترتيبات للسفر)

- I'm travelling to Alexandria next month.

(هذا يعبر عن ان المتحدث اجرى ترتيبات السفر مثل حجز تذاكر السفر ومكان الإقامة)

• لا نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث خارج سيطرة البشر فى المستقبل

- Summer will be next month and the snow is going to melt. √ √ √

(الجملة صحيحة)

~~Summer will be next month and the snow is melting.~~ ×××

(الجملة خطأ)

Ex. I'm travelling to Aswan now.

هنا المتحدث يقصد أنه يسافر إلى أسوان فى الوقت الحاضر

Ex. I'm travelling to Aswan tomorrow.

هنا المتحدث يقصد أنه سيسافر إلى أسوان غدًا

• لاحظ الفرق بين الجملتين السابقتين فى المضارع المستمر حيث تعبر الاولى عن حدث فى الوقت الحاضر ويدل على ذلك وجود كلمات مثل:

at the moment / now / Look! / Listen!

والجملة الثانية تعبر عن مستقبل ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

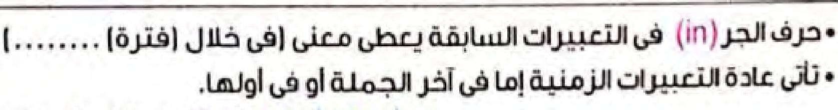
next (week-month-year) tomorrow - in ten minutes

2- Time Expressions التعبيرات الزمنية

- إدرس الشكل الآتى ولاحظ التعبيرات الزمنية المستخدمة من الحاضر حتى المستقبل:

Now in five minutes → this afternoon / evening → tomorrow → the day after tomorrow → next week → in 10 days' time → in three weeks **Future**

Notes



• حرف الجر (in) فى التعبيرات السابقة يعطى معنى (فى خلال (فترة) ....)

• تأتى عادة التعبيرات الزمنية إما فى آخر الجملة أو فى أولها.

Ex. I'm going to New York next week.

OR. Next week, I'm going to New York.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. It's 1:55. Ayman .... to his 2 pm music lesson in five minutes. WB
   a. goes b. was going c. went d. is going
2. Judy is working on her project .... WB
   a. tomorrow b. yesterday c. in the past d. ago
3. My cousins .... at lunchtime tomorrow at 11 am. SB
   a. arrived b. are arriving c. arrives d. arriving
4. It is Tuesday today, so Thursday is .... WB
   a. tomorrow b. next week
   c. the day after tomorrow d. tonight
5. Our class .... a museum next week. Our teacher has bought the tickets. المنوفية - قويسنا 2023
   a. going to visit b. visits c. is visiting d. visit
6. Soliman .... buy a new phone. It's his intention. الشرقية - منيا القمح 2023
   a. will b. is c. going to d. is going to

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. I .... an interesting story at the moment.
   a. reads b. going to read c. am reading d. reading
8. I made all the arrangements. We .... early tomorrow.
   a. are travelling b. travel
   c. are going to travel c. travelled
9. Mum prepared the meal. We .... in five minutes.
   a. were eating b. eating c. are eating d. going to eat
10. The Minister .... our school next week. We made all the preparations.
    a. is going to visit b. visits c. is visited d. is visiting
11. Sorry I can't see you tonight. I .... my lessons.
    a. will study b. is going to study c. is studying d. studied
12. Look! A big bird .... in the sky.
    a. flies b. is going to fly c. is flying d. flew

13. Everything is arranged. I .... to the airport.
a. leaving b. am going to leave c. leave d. 'm leaving
14. We .... the Eiffel Tower next Wednesday. We booked the tickets.
a. are visiting b. are going to visit c. visit d. visited
15. Everything is arranged. I .... to the airport.
a. leaving b. am going to leave c. leave d. 'm leaving
16. We .... the Eiffel Tower next Wednesday. We booked the tickets.
a. are visiting b. are going to visit c. visit d. visited
17. What .... at the moment?
a. do you do b. are you going to do
c. are you doing d. will you do

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Samy .... (fly) to London. He's got the tickets. القاهرة - حدائق القبة 2023
2. At the moment, we .... (stay) in a small hotel near the lake. SB
3. Let's run, because the bus .... (leave) in ten minutes. WB
4. Ali .... (fly) to America next week.
5. He .... (visit) the Egyptian Museum tomorrow. He bought the tickets.
6. Fawzy .... (not work) next week because he has a holiday. WB

Speaking

1 Discussing inventions and environmental problems

مناقشة الاختراعات والمشكلات البيئية:

نسأل ونجيب عن الاختراعات المستخدمة لحل المشكلات البيئية كالآتى:

Question	Answer
A: Which do you think is the best or most useful invention? ما هى أفضل / أكثر الاختراعات نفعاً فى رأيك؟	**B:** I think drones are the best. أعتقد الطائرات بدون طيار هى الأفضل.
A: How can drones be a useful way to solve environmental problems? كيف يمكن أن تكون الطائرات بدون طيار مفيدة لحل المشكلات البيئية؟	**B:** They can be used to make deliveries. يمكن استخدامها فى توصيل الطلبات.
A: How can that help the environment? كيف يساعد ذلك البيئة؟	**B:** They don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries. لا يحدثوا ضوضاء ولا يسببوا تلوث الهواء مثل سيارات النقل.

2) Discussing future arrangements / plans مناقشة الترتيبات والخطط المستقبلية

- يستخدم (the present continuous) للتعبير عن الخطط المستقبلية.
- ارجع إلى شرح القواعد اللغوية

A: What are you doing this afternoon? ماذا ستفعل بعد الظهر؟

B: I'm doing my maths lesson. سأقوم بمذاكرة درس الرياضيات.

General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Aya and Manal are talking about future arrangements.

Aya : What are you doing this afternoon?

Manal : 1 ....

Aya : 2 .... ?

Manal : Because my grandmother is ill.

Aya : 3 .... ?

Manal : No, I'm not going out this evening.

Aya : Are you going to watch TV?

Manal : 4 ....

Aya : OK! See you tomorrow at school.

Manal : 5 ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People sometimes use a .... to film animals from the sky. WB
   a. washing machine b. headphone c. drone d. keyboard
2. Volunteers are working on a .... project to save Egyptian tortoises. WB
   a. conversation b. communication c. connection d. conservation
3. Mr Osman is looking for a .... place to hold the meeting يعقد اجتماع.
   a. noisy b. suitable c. dark d. dirty
4. The water in this lake is used to .... the land.
   a. wash b. clean c. irrigate d. soil
5. Don't drink water from a canal because it can be full of .... WB
   a. location b. bacteria c. filter d. system

6. The workers .... the building now.

a. complete b. are completing c. will complete d. completing

7. After 85 minutes. The Blue team five and the Red team is one. The Blue team is ....

a. winning b. going to c. going to win d. win

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Judy is visiting her grandma the day .... (before) tomorrow.
2. .... (Be/ you /walk) to the museum later? It's very far.
3. We .... (have) a party tomorrow. We arranged everything.
4. She is walking in the mountains .... (last) week.
5. She is visiting a museum in nine days' .... (clock) .
6. Lara is .... (play) handball now.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How to keep our environment clean"

....

....

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- How can we keep the environment clean?
- What are the environmental problems we face?
- How are trees good for the environment?
- What should we do with old mobile phones?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- We should do our best to ....
- The main environmental problems are ....
- Trees help reduce ....
- Throwing old phones can be..........................

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 51 - 52 WB pages 104 -105

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

horse riding	ركوب الخيل	bungee jumping	القفز بالحبال
bird watching	مشاهدة/مراقبة الطيور	hot-air ballooning	التحليق بالمنطاد
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	fishing	صيد السمك
star gazing	مشاهدة النجوم	sandboarding	التزلج على الرمال
hiking in the desert	التجول فى الصحراء	canoeing	التجديف
diving	الغوص	free	غير مشغول - حر - مجانى

Vocabulary

scary	مرعب/مخيف	instead	بدلاً من ذلك
sunset	غروب الشمس	towards	تجاه
fresh dates	بلح طازج	bored	شاعر بالملل
beginner	شخص مبتدئ	towel	منشفة «فوطة»
afraid	خائف	temperature	درجة حرارة
actually	فى الواقع	miss (ed)	يفوته/ يفتقد
ruins of a temple	أطلال معبد	guess (ed)	يخمن
amazing	مدهش	snorkel (led)	يغطس باستخدام أنبوب التنفس تحت الماء
activity	نشاط		

Expressions & Prepositions

go rock climbing	يذهب لتسلق الصخور	one last thing	اخر شئ
looks a bit scary	يبدو مخيف بعض الشئ	Best wishes.	اطيب الامانى.
get cold and bored	يشعر بالبرد والملل	decide on	يقرر
It might be fun.	يمكن ان تكون ممتعة.	on the boat	فى القارب
take turns	يتبادل الادوار	help with	يساعد فى
give your opinion	تعطى رأيك	stay with	يبقى/يقيم مع
have a fantastic time	يقضى وقت ممتع	sit by the water	يجلس بالقرب من الماء
have a picnic	يذهب فى نزهة	for breakfast	على الإفطار
It sounds really exciting / interesting!	تبدو مثيرة / شيقة!		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
get up	يستيقظ	got up	got up
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
agree	يوافق	accept	disagree	لا يوافق

Definitions

scary مرعب / مخيف	frightening
star gazing مشاهدة / مراقبة النجوم	to look at the stars in the sky as a hobby[1]
sunset غروب الشمس	the time in the evening[2] when you last see the sun in the sky

١- هواية
٢- المساء

Language Notes

1) snorkelling / scuba diving

- **Snorkelling** الغوص بأستخدام قناع وأنبوبة للتنفس وتكون قريب من سطح الأرض

Ex. I have a mask. I can go snorkelling.

- **scuba diving** الغطس للذهاب إلى أعماق البحر مرتديًا بدلة غطس واستخدام أنبوبة الأكسجين

Ex. My favourite hobby is scuba diving .

2) picnic / trip / voyage / flight

- **picnic** نزهة خلوية (فى الهواء الطلق)

Ex. We had a picnic when the weather was nice.

- **voyage** رحلة (بحرية)

Ex. The voyage along the Red Sea took a month.

- **trip** رحلة قصيرة (للاستمتاع أو لغرض معين)

a boat trip - a school trip - a business trip

Ex. We took a boat trip around the island.

- **flight** رحلة (جوية)

Ex. At last we arrived at the airport. It was a long flight.

3) lose / miss

- **lose (lost - lost)** يخسر. يفقد شئ

Ex. Our national team lost the last match.

Ex. I lost my keys on the bus.

- **miss (ed)** يفوته (وسيلة مواصلات مثلا) - يفتقد شخص

Ex. I got up late this morning and missed the school bus.

Ex. I miss my old friends very much.

4) agree

- **agree on + n** يوافق على...

Ex. The two families agreed on a date for the wedding.

- **agree to + inf** يوافق أن .....

Ex. They agreed to meet me at 6:00 pm.

- **agree with** يتفق مع شخص (فى الرأى) .....

Ex. I agree with you, horse riding is interesting.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you go ----------, you don't go under water but you are near the surface.
   a. scuba diving b. swim c. snorkelling d. walking
2. My family had a ---------- in the park yesterday.
   a. voyage b. flight b. picnic d. lesson
3. I was absent so I ---------- the last English lesson.
   a. missed b. caught b. gained d. lost
4. Hani agreed ---------- come to my birthday party.
   a. on b. to b. with d. about

Audioscript

SB Page (51)



استمع إلى النصوص

Kamal : Hi Amir. What are you doing this afternoon? I'm going rock climbing[1]. There is a special activity for beginners[2]. Would you like to come?

Amir : I don't know. Rock climbing looks a bit scary,[3] to me! Are you going, Nasser?

Nasser : Yes! I've always wanted to learn rock climbing! Oh, come on, don't be afraid, Amir!

Amir : Actually[4], I can't come this afternoon; I'm helping my father with something.

١- تسلق الصخور
٢- المبتدئين
٣- مرعب/مخيف
٤- بالفعل
٥- بدلاً من ذلك
٦- نشاط

Kamal : How about tomorrow afternoon instead[4]? There's another rock climbing activity[5] then at the same time.

Amir : OK! I'll come. You're right. It might be fun. Also, I wanted to ask you something. Are you and Nasser free this evening?

Nasser : I think so. Why?

Amir : Dad is going to take me star gazing[7] into the desert with my brother Ramy and Uncle Sami and he said I could invite you, too.

٧- مشاهدة / مراقبة النجوم

Kamal : Thank you. We'd love to come, wouldn't we Nasser? I'd love to go to the desert at night. Is your brother Ramy going?

Amir : No, he doesn't want to. He thinks he'd get cold and bored!

Nasser : Well, I think it sounds really exciting!

Amir : Great! We're meeting outside my house at half past ten. See you then.

Reading

SB Page (52)





Dear Nahla,

I'm having a fantastic time with my family in Siwa. Today, we had a picnic[1] on Fatanas Island[2]. At the moment, I'm sitting by the water and watching the sunset[3]. It's very beautiful.

We're staying with my parents' friends and they are very kind. When we arrived the day before yesterday, it was very late. They still wanted to get up and make us dinner and they bring us fresh dates[4] for breakfast every day.

Yesterday morning, we visited Shali Fortress[5] and the Siwa museum[6]. I've always wanted to go there. I learnt such a lot of history in one morning. Tomorrow, we're going to visit the Siwa salt lake[7]. I'm looking forward to visiting it. It sounds really interesting.

Lots of love : Heba

١- نزهة خلوية
٢- جزيرة فطناس
٣- غروب الشمس
٤- بلح طازج
٥- قلعة شالي
٦- متحف سيوة
٧- البحيرة المالحة في سيوة

SB Page (53)

Hi

Are you busy? What are you doing this afternoon? Please could you call me later because I need some help with the English homework! I had to go to the dentist[1], so I missed[2] the last English lesson. What did you study in English class last week? One last thing[3] - are you free on Saturday morning? I'm playing tennis in the park. Would you like to come?

١- طبيب أسنان
٢- فاتني
٣- آخر شئ

WB Page (104)

Baher : Would you like to come diving next weekend, Imad? We are going to go to a coral reef[1]!

Imad : I don't know. Diving under water looks a bit scary[2] to me.

Baher : If you don't like going under water, you could stay on the boat.

Imad : I think I'd get cold[3] and bored[4]. on the boat.

Baher : Why don't you snorkel[5]? Then you don't go under water but you can see the fish.

Imad : Yes, that might be fun[6].

Baher : Great! Let's all snorkel. We don't need a boat, we can go from the beach!

Imad : Thanks, I'd love to

١- الشعاب المرجانية
٢- مخيف بعض الشيء
٣- يصاب بالبرد
٤- يشعر بالملل
٥- يغطس بأنبوب التنفس
٦- ممتعة

WB Page (105)

Hi

Guess[1] where I am? At the moment, I'm walking in the desert in the Nabq Nature Reserve[2]. It's really interesting. Yesterday, we visited the mountains. It was very hot! The day before yesterday, we went diving in the coral reefs at Shoura al Manquata[3]. The fish were amazing. Tomorrow, we're going to visit Wadi Kid[4]. I'm looking forward to seeing the beautiful birds that live there. We're coming home in three days' time. What are you doing? Write to me and tell me your news.

Best wishes, Hamdi

١- خمن
٢- محمية نبق الطبيعة
٣- منطقة شورى المنقطة
٤- وادي كيد

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Deserts are the best places to go .... because stars there are brighter.
   a. horse riding b. rock climbing c. star gazing c. bungee jumping
2. The .... at the Karnak Temple were amazing.
   a. rings b. ruins c. trains d. trainers
3. If the weather's fine, we'll go .... in the desert this weekend.
   a. diving b. canoeing c. fishing d. hiking
4. .... under water looks scary to many people.
   a. Diving b. Climbing c. Riding d. Hiking
5. Tourists go .... in the Great Sand Sea in Egypt.
   a. snorkelling b. sandboarding c. diving d. swimming

6. I enjoyed watching the .... yesterday. Then it got dark.
a. sunrise b. sun cream c. solar system d. sunset

7. .... needs a special kind of boats.
a. Canoeing b. Jumping c. Riding d. Reading

8. Dad likes practising .... using plastic cables. الفيوم-سيوريس 2023
a. horse riding b. star gazing
c. bungee jumping d. rock climbing

9. He likes horses so he goes .... once a week.
a. swimming b. horse riding c. fishing d. sandboarding

10. Going in a hot-air .... is fantastic as the view from the top is magic.
a. cartoon b. drone c. stone d. balloon

11. .... means without paying money. رشيد 2023
a. Tree b. Free c. See d. Bee

12. Every night, I see a lot of .... in the sky. سيوريس 2023
a. stars b. reviews c. parks d. picnics

13. My uncle caught a lot of fish when he went .... last week.
a. climbing b. fishing c. riding d. jumping

14. We have many activities we can do like ....
a. watching b. birds c. bird watching d. bird killing

15. .... looks a bit scary to me. SB
a. Rocks b. Trees c. Sleeping d. Rock climbing

Speaking

1 Doing activities

القيام بأنشطة

نسأل عن رغبة شخص ما فى القيام بأنشطة كالآتى:

- Would you like to come? هل تود أن تأتى ؟
- I invite you to come.......... أدعوك أن تأتى..........
- Why don't you..........? لم لا.......؟

للإجابة بالموافقة أو الرفض نقول:

Agree	Disagree
- Yes, I've always wanted to..... نعم، دائماً ما أردت أن..........	- I don't know. It looks a bit scary. لا أعرف، يبدو مخيفاً بعض الشئ.
- OK! I'll come. حسناً! سوف آتى.	- I can't come. لا أستطيع المجئ.
- Thank you. I'd love to come. أشكرك. أود أن آتى.	- No, I don't want to. لا، لا أود.
- Yes, that might be fun. نعم، هذا يبدو ممتعاً.	

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ziad is going to the Red Sea next week.

Ziad : I'm going to the Red Sea next week.

Adel : Really! ❶ .... ?

Ziad : With my family.

Adel : ❷ .... ?

Ziad : At a hotel. Would you like to come?

Adel : ❸ ....

Ziad : Why? We will go diving there.

Adel : ❹ ....

Ziad : Why don't you stay on the boat?

Adel : OK. ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I need some help .... the English homework.
   a. about b. on c. of d. in
2. I had a really .... dream last night. I was frightened.
   a. scary b. nice c. lovely d. beautiful
3. I .... my family so much during my stay abroad.
   a. lost b. kept c. missed d. wasted
4. I'd love to go .... under water in the Red Sea.
   a. hiking b. diving c. climbing d. riding
5. In summer, tourists can go rock .... or walking.
   a. climbing b. fishing c. jumping d. riding

Unit 11

Review

Key Vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	location	موقع
rubbish	قمامة	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيكية	bacteria	بكتيريا (اسم جمع)
wildlife	الحياة البرية	invention	اختراع
roof	سطح المنزل	hot-air ballooning	التحليق بالمنطاد
drought	جفاف	fishing	صيد السمك
remote control	جهاز تحكم عن بعد	sandboarding	التزلج على الرمال
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	canoeing	التجديف
suitable	مناسب	bungee jumping	القفز بالحبال
mangrove	شجرة المانجروف	free	غير مشغول - حر - مجانى
conservation	حماية/ الحفاظ على الكائنات	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير (تصنيع)
lend	يقرض/يسلف	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام
system	نظام	save (d)	ينقذ/يوفر
horse riding	ركوب الخيل	damage (d)	يتلف
bird watching	مشاهدة/مراقبة الطيور	reduce (d)	يقلل
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	install (ed)	يركب/يثبت «جهاز أو تطبيق»
star gazing	مشاهدة النجوم	pick (ed) up	يلتقط
hiking in the desert	التجول فى الصحراء	plant (ed)	يزرع
diving	الغوص	repair (ed)	يُصلح
environment-friendly / green	صديق للبيئة	melt (ed)	يذوب/ينصهر
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح (مولدات الطاقة من الرياح)	filter (ed) (n)	يفلتر- يصفى - مصفى / فلتر
		control (led)	يتحكم فى

Nouns & Adjectives

Noun		Adjective	
environment	البيئة	environmental	بيئى
tradition	تقليد	traditional	تقليدى
music	مُوسيقَى	musical	مُوسيقِيٌ
nature	الطبيعة	natural	طبيعى



Language

1- (be) going to & The present continuous

1- Going to

Form التكوين

I	am	(not) going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

١- نستخدم ((be) going to) للتعبير عن نية / خطة مستقبلية / قرار لفعل شئ في المستقبل ويدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

decide - decision - plan - intend - intention

Ex. I'm going to watch a movie.
Ex. He isn't going to take a photo.

٢- نستخدم ((be) going to) أيضا للتنبؤ بأحداث في المستقبل في وجود دليل (اما دليل نراه او نعرفه) ويدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

predict - prediction - evidence

Ex. It is going to rain. (I can see some dark clouds.)
Ex. Our players are going to win the cup. (They always train well.)

Question السؤال

اداة استفهام + am - is - are + subject + going to + inf...?

Ex. Where are you going to spend your holiday?

2- The present continuous

Form التكوين

I	am	(not) verb + ing.
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

١- نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات في المستقبل (غالبا مع الاشارة إلى وقت أو تاريخ يدل على المستقبل) ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

arrange - arrangements - prepare - preparation

Ex. My grandma is visiting us next week.
Ex. We're going to Spain for our next holiday. We aren't going to England.

٢- يستخدم المضارع المستمر ايضا للتعبير عن حدث في الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام)

Ex. She is doing her homework now.

Question السؤال

كلمة استفهام + am - is - are + subject + verb + ing...?

Ex. (When) Are you having a party for your birthday?

3- Time Expressions التعبيرات الزمنية

- ادرس الشكل الآتى ولاحظ التعبيرات الزمنية المستخدمة من الحاضر حتى المستقبل:

Now in five minutes → this afternoon / evening → tomorrow → the day after tomorrow → next week → in 10 days' time → in three weeks **Future**

Speaking

1) Talking about future plans التحدث عن الخطط المستقبلية

نسأل باستخدم (be) going to عن الخطط المستقبلية كالآتى:

What are you going to do at the weekend?
Where are you going to go for your next holiday?
How are you going to improve your English?

2) Making predictions التنبؤ

نستخدم (be) going to للتعبير عن التنبؤ بناء على دليل كالآتى:

Evidence دليل	Prediction تنبؤ
- The students didn't do their homework	- The teacher is going to be angry. - They are going to have to do extra homework tonight.
- My alarm clock didn't go off this morning.	- I'm going to be late for school.

3) Suggesting solutions to environmental problems اقتراح حلول للمشكلات البيئية

نعبر عن الحلول للمشكلات البيئية كالآتى:

- Make... more expensive
- Stop people from...v-ing
- Use camels...
- Recycle...
- Ask local people to...
- Build ....

4 Discussing inventions and environmental problems

مناقشة الاختراعات والمشكلات البيئية

نسأل ونجيب عن الاختراعات المستخدمة لحل المشكلات البيئية كالآتى:

Question	Answer
A: Which do you think is the best or most useful invention?	**B:** I think drones are the best.
A: How can drones be a useful way to solve environmental problems?	**B:** They can be used to make deliveries.
A: How can that help the environment?	**B:** They don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries.

5 Discussing future arrangements / plans

مناقشة الترتيبات والخطط المستقبلية

- يستخدم (the present continuous) للتعبير عن الخطط المستقبلية.

A: What are you doing this afternoon?

B: I'm doing my maths lesson.

6 Doing activities

القيام بالأنشطة

نسأل عن رغبة شخص ما فى القيام بأنشطة كالآتى:

- Would you like to come?
- I invite you to come..........
- Why don't you..........?

- للإجابة بالموافقة أو بالرفض نقول:

Agree	Disagree
- Yes, I've always wanted to..... - OK! I'll come. - Thank you. I'd love to come. - Yes, that might be fun.	- I don't know. It looks a bit scary. - I can't come. - No, I don't want to.

General Exercises on Unit 11

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Samir is going to the desert next week.

Samir : I'm going to the desert next week?

Diaa : The desert, why?

Samir : ❶ ....

Diaa : Oh! Is rock climbing scary?

Samir : Yes. ❷ .... But it's really exciting.

Diaa : ❸ ....?

Samir : Sure. You can come.

Diaa : ❹ ....?

Samir : Good idea, I'd love to go hiking, too.

Diaa : OK. ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We'll need a ladder to get up on the .... of the house.
   a. stairs b. bathroom c. roof d. ceiling
2. We are going to .... solar panels. They're good for the environment.
   a. burn b. break c. pollute d. install
3. Habiba's bike isn't working, she is going to .... it.
   a. repair b. redo c. rewrite d. repeat
4. Policemen do their best to .... us safe.
   a. remember b. keep c. plant d. guess
5. It isn't a good idea to throw .... old mobile phones.
   a. way b. road c. a way d. away
6. A .... looks like a plane but it doesn't have a pilot.
   a. kite b. drone c. balloon d. ship
7. When we are at the park, we should .... rubbish.
   a. get up b. wake up c. pick up d. stand up
8. Osama has a towel and is walking towards the sea. He is going .... swimming. WB
   a. to going b. to goes c. to go d. go

9. Injy is ten minutes from the station and the train goes in five minutes. Is she .... the train? WB

a. catching b. going to catch c. catch d. caught

10. Don't use classroom 5 because some men .... it this afternoon. WB

a. is going to paint b. paints c. are painting c. paint

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The boy and his father are going to .... (watching) the match. 2023
2. We .... (go) snorkelling next weekend. Would you like to come?
3. I .... (looked) forward to having a rest next week.
4. What are you .... (do) this afternoon? SB

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Activities you want to do in the future"

....

....

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What activities can you do in Egypt?**
- **What do you want to do in the Red Sea?**
- **Why is going on a hot-air balloon exciting?**
- **What's the most dangerous activity?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **There are many exciting activities ....**
- **I want to .... in the Red Sea.**
- **I think the view ....**
- .... **is the most dangerous activity.**

Unit 11

Al Azhar Test



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. Drones can fly by remote ....
   a. tools b. controls c. people d. ropes
2. We can fly drones from the ....
   a. sky b. sun c. ground d. star

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the the following dialogue:

Jana and Eman are talking about the summer holiday.

Eman : What are you going to do at the summer holiday?

Jana : ❶ ....

Eman : ❷ .... ?

Jana : I am going to travel to Alex by train.

Eman : ❸ .... ?

Jana : We will stay for two weeks.

Eman : I hope you a happy holiday.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can use solar .... to make electricity.
   a. doors b. windows c. panels d. rooms
2. I'll .... arrangements to meet you at the airport.
   a. make b. do c. spend d. give
3. She .... coming to the party.
   a. isn't b. hasn't c. won't d. doesn't
4. What are you .... tomorrow evening?
   a. does b. do c. did d. doing
5. I am going .... the concert
   a. to join b. join c. joining d. to joining

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Yesterday, I went with my brother Ahmed to the shopping centre. My mother asked us to do some shopping there. At the supermarket, I bought eggs, bread and butter. Then we went to a shoe shop to buy my brother Ahmed a new pair of shoes. His size is 38. He bought new black trousers, too. After that, we went to a café to have some drinks.

I had some tea and my brother drank some juice. We went back home at 8 o'clock.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When did they go to the shopping centre?

....

2. What colour are Ahmed's new trousers?

....

3. What size are Ahmed's shoes?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. They bought eggs, bread and butter from the ....
   a. shoe shop b. supermarket c. café d. fruit shop
5. They went back home at ....
   a. 8 o'clock b. 5 o'clock c. 11 o'clock d. 10 o'clock

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. are - **What** - doing - evening - you - this? ....
2. meeting - outside - **We** - at six - are. ....
3. are - inventions - **Green** - environment-friendly. ....
4. Sure - **Make** - your - daughter - that - suitable - has - clothes. ....

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Environmental problems"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- **What's the environment?**
- **How is the environment polluted?**
- **How can we keep our environment clean?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- **The environment is** .... - **Traffic and factories can** ....
- **We should reduce** ....

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني وردت بالوحدة

Paragraphs

1- How to keep our environment clean

There are many environmental problems that we should face. The main problems are water and air pollution and climate change. There's a lot of air pollution from the traffic in cities and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution, so we should plant more trees. We should recycle old mobile phones. Green inventions are environment-friendly. These inventions present solutions to environmental problems without damaging the environment.

2- Activities I want to do in the future

There are many exciting activities that I can do in Egypt. I want to go diving in the Red Sea. The coral reefs there are wonderful. Although diving is a bit scary, I want to try it. I want also to go on a hot-air balloon. I think the view from the top will be fantastic. I think it's dangerous but I'd like to try it one day. I hope I will try bungee jumping. I think it's the most dangerous activity. This activity isn't suitable for people who are afraid of high places.

3- Environmental problems (Azhar)

The world faces many Environmental problems. The main problem is climate change. It happens because of air pollution. All countries should do their best to solve this problem. They should reduce air pollution and plant more trees.

Emails

1- What do I think the weather is going to be today?

From : ramialaa@hotmail.com.
To : salahzaki@yahoo.com.
Subject : The weather today

Dear Salah,

How are you? What do you think the weather is going to be like later today? It was sunny in the mornings but it was a bit windy. I'm looking out of the window now. It's cloudy and cold. I think it's going to rain. Could you send me an email telling me about the weather in your town? I'm waiting. My regards to your family.

Yours,
Rami

2- My holiday

From : habiba2006@hotmail.com.
To : salma2007@gmail.com.
Subject : My holiday

Dear Salma,

I hope you're having a good time. I'm having a good time with my family in Aswan. Today, we had a picnic on Elephantine Island. At the moment, I'm sitting by the water and watching the sunset. It's very beautiful. We're staying with my parents' friends and they are very kind.Yesterday morning, we visited Abu Simbel temple and the Nubian Museum. I've always wanted to go there. Tomorrow, we're going to visit Lake Nasser. I'm looking forward to visiting it. It sounds really interesting. See you soon.

Lots of love,
Habiba

Unit 11 TEST



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. There's a lot air pollution from the traffic in our ....
   a. school b. house c. city d. farm
2. Air pollution is very ....
   a. good b. light c. healthy d. unhealthy
3. .... are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution.
   a. Trees b. Plants c. Apples d. Oranges
4. Next ...., we're going to plant trees on the roof of our school.
   a. year b. month c. week d. day

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer is going to buy his friend Omar a present for his birthday.

Tamer : Our friend Omar's birthday will be tomorrow.
Ayman : Really! 1 ....?
Tamer : Yes, I'm going to buy him a present.
Ayman : What're you going to buy?
Tamer : 2 ....
Ayman : Great! 3 ....?
Tamer : I know a mobile shop near our house. What will you buy him?
Ayman : 4 ....
Tamer : 5 ....
Ayman : I hope so, too.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dirty water can be dangerous to drink. It causes diseases and makes people ill. <u>It</u> can damage the environment, animals and fish. People often throw rubbish into rivers. This makes rivers look <u>horrible</u> and affects the lives of birds and fish. We must keep the water in our rivers, canals and lakes clean. Smoke and gases from factories and cars mix with water vapour in the air and cause pollution. When the water vapour falls to the ground as rain, the chemicals in the smoke and fumes mix with the rain. This can kill trees, plants, fish and animals.

A. **Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
2. How is pollution caused?
3. In your opinion, how can we solve the problem of pollution?

B. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined word "horrible" means very ....
   a. good b. friendly c. pleasant d. bad
5. The underlined word **"It"** refers to ....
   a. rubbish b. dirty water c. environment d. water vapour
6. Smoke and gases .... with water vapour in the air.
   a. fix b. stir c. mix d. plant

D Vocabulary and Structure

4. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We should use .... on buildings in sunny countries like Egypt. WB
   a. solar panels b. snowboards c. washing machines d. tablets
2. You see a lot of .... in windy countries like England. WB
   a. rockets b. sewing machines c. wind turbines d. coins
3. Mona forgot her pen today, so I'll .... her mine. الدقهلية - قويسنا 2023 WB
   a. lend b. install c. borrow d. mend
4. Storms and floods are .... events. WB
   a. nature b. tradition c. musical d. natural
5. Scientists used the new app to determine the .... of underground water. WB
   a. invitation b. location c. conversation d. station
6. We should .... plastic and paper to help save the environment. WB
   a. cycle b. recycle c. burn d. damage
7. How about drinking tea in the kitchen? It's a good .... سوهاج 2023
   a. meal b. food c. idea d. diet
8. Summer will be hotter next month and the snow .... SB
   a. is melting b. melts c. melted d. is going to melt

9. The students .... very well in their exam. They always get good marks. SB

a. will do b. are going to do c. are doing d. doing

10. It's raining heavily and the river .... SB

a. are flooding b. flood c. flooded d. is going to flood

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Lamia's family are learning Japanese. They .... (go) to Japan. WB
2. What is the temperature going to .... (is) this afternoon? WB
3. I'm .... (play) tennis in the park.
4. I .... (not go) to school tomorrow because I'm ill.

E Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:** (مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

to your friend Salma to tell her about your holiday.

-Your name is Habiba and your email address is habiba2006@hotmail.com

-Your friend's email address is salma2007@gmail.com

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكترونى:

- Where was your holiday?
- Who did you travel with?
- When did you arrive?
- How did you spend your time?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I had a good time with ....
- We had a picnic on ....
- Yesterday morning, we ....



New Hello!



12 UNIT

Languages and learning

Objectives

Reading:
A quiz about learning styles; an article about languages in Africa; an advert for a language school

Writing:
An internet post giving advice; a study plan; an application form

Listening:
A conversation about future plans; a radio interview about animal communication

Speaking:
Talking about learning styles; a presentation about your studies; a discussion about study tips; giving advice, opinions and suggestions

Language:
A review of tenses

Life skills:
Self- management; Communication skills; Critical thinking

SB / WB Answers جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب



Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

learner	متعلم (في مرحلة التعلم)	repair (ed) = fix (ed)	يصلح
mostly	غالبا / في الأغلب	fail (ed)	يفشل/ يرسب
take notes	يسجل ملاحظات	pass (ed)	ينجح / يجتاز
disappointed	محبط	decide (d)	يقرر
proud	فخور		

Learning styles

writing	الكتابة	listening	الاستماع
reading	القراءة	doing things	عمل الأشياء
seeing things	رؤية الأشياء		

Vocabulary

TV show	عرض تليفزيوني	summary	ملخص
directions	اتجاهات	laboratory	معمل تحليل
dictionary	قاموس	driving test	اختبار القيادة
result	نتيجة	act (ed)	يمثل
diagram	رسم توضيحي / رسم بياني	achieve (d)	ينجز / يحقق
manager	مدير	continue (d)	يواصل
experiment	تجربة علمية	summarise (d)	يلخص
irregular	غير منتظم	follow (ed)	يتبع
secondary school	مدرسة ثانوية	explain (ed)	يفسر /يشرح
podcast	نشرة صوتية (إذاعية)		

Expressions & Prepositions

(be) often talking	يتكلم كثيراً	learn by	يتعلم بواسطة
feel disappointed	يشعر بالاحباط	discuss with	يتناقش مع
work out	يستنتج	explain ..... to	يفسر / يشرح ... لـ
find out	يكتشف	in different ways	بطرق مختلفة
learn how to	يتعلم كيف	cut down	يقطع

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
make up	يؤلف	made up	made up
spell	يتهجى	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
fly	يطير / يسافر جواً	flew	flown

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
pass	يجتاز / ينجح	succeed in	fail	يرسب/يفشل
continue	يستمر	go on	stop	يتوقف

Definitions

decide	يقرر	make a choice[1] to do something
explain	يفسر	make something clear[2] or easy to understand by giving reasons[3] for it
fail	يفشل / يرسب	not be successful[4]
proud	فخور	feeling happy because you or people you know have done something well
mostly	غالبًا/في الأغلب	in most cases[5] /most of the time
pass	ينجح / يجتاز	be successful in a test or exam
disappointed	مُحبَط	not happy because something you wanted did not happen[6] or was not very good

١- اختيار
٢- واضح
٣- أسباب
٤- ناجح
٥- حالات
٦- يحدث

Verbs and nouns that go together

watch TV show	يشاهد عرض تليفزيوني	play a video game	يلعب ألعاب فيديو
practise a language	يمارس لغة	listen to music	يستمع الى الموسيقى
summarise a text	يلخص نص	ask for advice	يطلب نصيحة
do an experiment	يُجرى تجربة	win medals	يفوز بميداليات
make up a song	يؤلف أغنية	take photographs	يلتقط صور
do research	يُجرى بحثاً	write down instructions	يدوّن تعليمات
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة	spell a word	يتهجى كلمة
find solutions	يجد حلول	achieve a dream	يحقق حلم

Language Notes

1) busy

- **busy + V-ing.** مشغول فى ....

Ex. He is busy studying his lessons.

2) find it + صفة + to + inf.

Ex. I found it difficult / hard to learn Japanese.

Ex. I always find it hard to park my car.

3) most / mostly

- **most (of)** معظم / أكثر

Ex. She plays tennis most Fridays.

Ex. Most of the shops are closed today.

- **mostly** فى الأغلب (حال)

Ex. I am mostly interested in the history of Egypt.

- **the most** الأكثر

- تستخدم فى المقارنة مع الصفات الطويلة

Ex. He bought the most expensive car.

4) fail / pass / succeed

- لا يأتى حرف جر (in) بعد (fail - pass) مع كلمات مثل (test - exam)

Ex. I fail my exam.

Ex. I pass my driving test.

- عند ذكر اسم المادة يمكن استخدام حرف جر (in) أو يمكن حذفها.

Ex. I passed (in) history but failed (in) chemistry.

- لابد من استخدام حرف جر (in) بعد (succeed) + (noun /v-ing).

Ex. I succeeded in my exams.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother is busy .... lunch.
   a. cook b. to cook c. cooks d. cooking
2. Mostafa always finds it easy .... football.
   a. play b. to play c. playing d. played
3. I spend .... of the time reading books.
   a. mostly b. must c. most d. mustn't
4. We .... in repairing the engine.
   a. failed b. passed c. slept d. succeeded



SB Page (54)







استمع إلى النصوص

Quiz

. What type of learner[1] are you?

Take the quiz to find out!

1. Which of these things do you prefer to do in your free time[2]?
   a. Read a book
   b. Watch a film or TV show[3].
   c. Play a video game
   d. Listen to music.
2. If you want to learn how to play a new sport, what do you do?
   a. Read online about how to play it.
   b. Watch a video of people playing it.
   c. Start playing and learn as you play.
   d. Ask for advice from someone who can play it.
3. You need to tell your class about a new English book. What would you prefer to do?
   a. Write a review[4] of it.
   b. Make a short video about it.
   c. Act some of the book with friends.
   d. Read some of the book to your class.
4. Someone asks you for directions[5]. What do you do?
   a. Write down instructions[6].
   b. Draw a map.
   c. Use your hands and body to explain[7].
   d. Tell them where to go.
5. If you don't know how to spell[8] a word, what do you do?
   a. Look in a dictionary.
   b. Try to work out[9] how to spell it.
   c. Write it down to see if it looks right.
   d. Say the word slowly to hear the sounds.

١- متعلم
٢- وقت الفراغ
٣- عرض تليفزيونى
٤- مقال نقدى
٥- اتجاهات
٦- يدون تعليمات
٧- يشرح/يفسر
٨- يتهجى
٩- يستنتج

SB Page (55)

I chose mostly[1] a:



- You learn best by reading and writing.
You like reading books or writing stories. You love words and learn best by reading about something and taking notes[2].

١- غالباً
٢- يدون ملاحظات
٣- رسومات توضيحية
٤- تصليح

I chose mostly b:



- You learn best by seeing things.
You love to watch videos and look at diagrams[3]. You love films and art. You learn things better if you can see them.

I chose mostly c:



- You learn best by doing things.
You are always busy making and repairing[4] things. You learn things best by trying to do them and sometimes find it hard to understand by listening or reading.

I chose mostly d:



- You learn by listening.
You love music and are often talking! You find it easier to learn by listening to people explain things to you and by discussing things with them.

SB Page (57)

When I was young, I wanted to be a scientist. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I will be a scientist! I'm not really sure what I want to do, but my family are always telling me that school is very important and I need to study hard. I know I want to travel so I am learning lots of languages. Next year, I am starting French classes. I am going to take the exam to go to secondary school and I hope I will pass!

WB Page (107)

What sort of learners are the following?

1- Habiba likes summarising[1] a text. For example, if a text is 100 words long, she writes a summary[2] in about 15 - 20 words. Habiba learns best by writing.



١- تلخيص
٢- ملخص

2- Fares remembers things easily. I showed him a map of how to walk to my house yesterday. He says he can see the map in his head today! Fares learns by seeing things.



3- For Dareen, the best way to remember English grammar* is to make up[3] a song about it! Then she sings the song quietly to herself. She says it is a great way to remember irregular verbs![4] Dareen learns best by listening.



٣- يؤلف
٤- أفعال غير منتظمة
٥- تجربة عملية
٦- المعمل

4- Marwan finds it difficult to understand science books, but when he does an experiment[5] in the laboratory[6], he always understands what is happening! Marwan learns best by doing things.



Say it correctly

* grammar

ينطق حرف a في كلمة grammar مثل نطقه في كلمة man وليس مثل نطقه في كلمة car.

WB Page (108)

My village didn't use to have any tourists but now lots of visitors come here every year. Today, lots of American tourists are taking photographs of the castle[1]. Last year, we had visitors from China and Japan, too! Next year, they are going to build a new hotel in the park. I am disappointed[2] about this, because I think they will cut down some of the trees to build it.

١- قلعة
٢- محبط

Audioscript

SB Page (56)



Fares : My name's Fares. When I was young, I didn't use to like studying. But, one day, I failed[1] an exam. My father was disappointed. He said that one day he wanted me to be the manager[2] of our family shop. He explained about all the skills[3] that I needed to work there: maths, reading, writing and English. Now I'm working hard to pass my exams so I can make my family proud[4]. Next year, I'm starting secondary school[5] and I'll continue to study hard!

١- يرسب
٢- مدير
٣- مهارات
٤- فخورين
٥- مدرسة ثانوى
٦- يحقق

Nevine : When I was nine, I was playing with my sister when I fell and hurt my arm. The doctor at the hospital was so clever and kind, so I decided I wanted to be a doctor too! I know it will be hard to achieve[6] my dream. I need to go to university and pass lots of exams. My uncle lives in the USA so I'm going to study there when I'm older and then I want to come back to Egypt and work in a hospital.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. I always listen carefully to my teacher and .... notes. (2022) WB
   a. hunt b. talk c. take d. fill
2. If you .... an exam, you will feel proud. SB
   a. fail b. fill c. succeed d. pass
3. .... study science three times a week during the school term. WB
   a. Learners b. Farmers c. Trainers d. Cleaners
4. If you .... an exam, you will feel disappointed. SB
   a. feel b. fail c. pass d. fall

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. .... books and stories is my favourite hobby.
   a. Reading b. Talking c. Speaking d. Listening
6. .... to music is enjoyable.
   a. Reading b. Speaking c. Listening d. Writing
7. My laptop is broken. I want to .... it.
   a. fail b. follow c. decide d. repair
8. Noha was .... excited by the Karnak Temple in Luxor.
   a. mostly b. friendly c. lovely d. silly
9. What did you .... to do after finishing your study?
   a. leave b. decide c. explain d. act
10. Mohanad could .... a solution to his problem.
    a. do b. lose c. play d. find
11. I was .... because I lost my favourite pen.
    a. pleased b. happy c. disappointed d. glad
12. Heba's parents are very .... of her. She is clever.
    a. disappointed b. angry c. sorry d. proud
13. I like repairing things. I learn best by ....
    a. reading b. listening c. seeing d. doing things
14. Salem turned on his computer to .... a video game.
    a. play b. pass c. explain d. act
15. To listen to the ...., click on the link below.
    a. pod b. cost c. podcast d. view

Language

Review on Tenses مراجعة على الأزمنة

1- Present simple and present continuous

	Present simple المضارع البسيط	Present continuous المضارع المستمر
Form	I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + inf. He / She / It / اسم مفرد + verb + (s-es-ies)	I am He/ She / It / اسم مفرد is We / You / They / اسم جمع are } verb + ing.
Usage	- يستخدم للتعبير عن حقائق أو عادات أو أفعال متكررة. - My uncle lives in the USA. - I play tennis every week. - The sun rises in the east.	- يستخدم ليدل على فعل يحدث أثناء وقت الكلام. - I'm emailing my uncle now. - يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث لم تنتهي بعد (ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام). - I'm learning French. يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة. - They are painting the school this week.
Negative	**Subject + don't / doesn't + inf.** - I don't like playing tennis.	**Subject + am/is/are not + verb + ing.** - She isn't drawing pictures at the moment.
Question	(كلمة استفهام) Do/Does + فاعل + inf..? - What does she want?	(كلمة استفهام) Am/Is/Are + فاعل + verb + ing..? - What are you doing?
Keywords	every (day - week - month - year) always - usually - often sometimes - never	Listen! / now / at the moment Look! / at present

Check ✓

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The sun .... in the morning every day.
   a. is rising b. rose c. rises d. will rise
2. The children .... now.
   a. are sleeping b. slept c. sleep d. sleeps

② Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I .... (take) photos at the moment.
2. My name .... (be) Osman.

2- Past simple and past continuous

	Past simple الماضى البسيط	Past continuous الماض المستمر
Form	Subject + فعل فى التصريف الثانى Subject + used to + inf. - نستخدم used to للتعبير عن عادة فى الماضى وانتهت.	I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد was }verb + ing. We / You / They / اسم جمع were }verb + ing.
Usage	- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى فى الماضى أو عادة كانت فى الماضى ولم تعد موجودة الآن. - I lived in Aswan when I was young. - I used to like tennis when I was young.	- يستخدم ليعبر عن حدوث فعل فى الماضى أثناء حدوث فعل آخر. - I was playing chess with my sister when it started to rain. - يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمراً فى الحدوث اثناء توقيت محدد فى الماضى. - I was waiting for the match to start at 8 last night.
Negative	Subject + didn't + inf. Subject + didn't use to + inf. - I didn't watch the match yesterday. - I didn't use to like tennis! I used to like basketball.	Subject + was/were + not + verb + ing. - She wasn't listening to music when the light went out.
Question	(كلمة استفهام) Did + فاعل + inf.? (كلمة استفهام) Did+ فاعل + use to + inf.? - Where did he travel? - Where did he use to live?	(كلمة استفهام) Was/Were + فاعل + verb + ing? - What were you doing when the bell rang?
Keywords	last (week-month-year) / yesterday / ago / in 2019 / in the past	While / As / Just as / When



• لا تستخدم used to مع حدث تم مرة واحدة فى الماضى واستخدم الماضى البسيط بدلاً منه

Ex. Last Friday, we had visitors from China and Japan.

Check ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... pick up flowers when I was young.
   a. was using to b. use to c. used to d. am used to
2. They .... TV when it started to rain.
   a. are watching b. watch c. watches d. were watching

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. While she was playing, she .... (break) the window.
2. She .... (visit) the museum yesterday.

3- Future: will /(be) going to /present continuous

	will	(be) going to
Form	Subject + will + inf.	I am / He / She / It / اسم مفرد is / We / You/ They / اسم جمع are } going to + inf.
Usage	- يستخدم للتنبؤ بحدوث فعل فى المستقبل بناء على رأى شخصى دون وجود دليل. - اتخاذ قرارات سريعة - I think it will be hard but fun at university.	- تستخدم للتنبؤ بحدوث فعل فى المستقبل مع وجود دليل. - تستخدم ايضا للتعبير عن نوايا او خطط مستقبلية. - I'm going to go to university. I'm not going to get a job.
Negative	Subject + won't + inf. - Osama won't work as a teacher.	Subject + am/is/are + not + going to + inf. - Basma isn't going to travel to Aswan because she is ill.
Question	(كلمة استفهام) Will + فاعل + inf.? - When will they take a test?	(كلمة استفهام) Am/Is/Are + فاعل + going to + inf.? - Who is going to help you?
Keywords	next (week - month - year) / tomorrow	next (week - month - year) / tomorrow /intend / intention / decide / plan

4- Present continuous

• تستخدم المضارع المستمر ايضا للتعبير عن خطط مستقبلية بناءًا على ترتيبات (ويدل على ذلك كلمات) مثل:

arrange - arrangements - prepare - preparation

Ex. I'm visiting the museum next week. I arranged to do that.

Ex. Next year, I'm starting secondary school.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. When I .... young, I wanted to be a scientist. SB
   a. am b. were c. was d. is
2. Ali is feeling ill, so I don't think he .... out this evening. WB
   a. come b. will come c. came d. comes
3. Next Friday, we .... the great show at the school hall. الجيزة 2022 SB
   a. are watching b. watch c. watches d. watched
4. We .... to secondary school in two years. SB
   a. went b. going to go c. are going to go d. goes
5. Hala .... like fruit, but now she loves it. WB
   a. don't b. isn't c. won't d. didn't use to
6. What .... now? الجيزة - شمال الجيزة 2022
   a. are you doing b. you are doing
   c. are you going d. you are going to do

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. Mona .... to school by bus next year.
   a. go b. going c. goes d. will go
8. .... your father work in a factory?
   a. Is b. Do c. Does d. Was
9. **A:** Where do you live? **B:** I .... in Giza.
   a. lived b. live c. am living d. lives
10. I .... my homework after school.
    a. doing b. does c. did d. done
11. She isn't talking on the phone now, she .... her homework.
    a. is doing b. did c. does d. was doing
12. Listen! Salma .... the piano.
    a. plays b. played c. was playing d. is playing
13. My friends .... to school on foot last month.
    a. will go b. went c. goes d. go
14. I will .... to France next month.
    a. travelled b. travels c. travel d. travelling
15. While Leila .... along the street, she met Ola.
    a. walked b. walks c. will walk d. was walking
16. .... your father usually come home early?
    a. Does b. Do c. Is d. Have

2 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Did you .... (used) to drive a car?
2. I .... (visit) Rome in 2010.
3. My mother .... (look) for her keys now.
4. Just as I .... (go) to school, it rained.
5. I want to travel so I .... (learn) lots of languages. **SB**
6. Mona used .... (drink) milk, but now she doesn't.
7. Look! A cat .... (climb) a tree.
8. The kids .... (play) a video game when the bell rang.
9. Are you .... (play) computer games right now?
10. Fatma sometimes .... (help) her mother with the housework.
11. I .... (reads) a funny story yesterday.
12. It's very hot in here. I .... (open) the window.

Speaking

Talking about learning styles

الحديث عن طرق التعلم

نسأل ونجيب عن طرق التعلم كالآتي:

Question	Answer
A: How do you prefer to learn? كيف تفضل أن تتعلم؟	B: I like to learn in different ways. I don't like always doing the same thing. أحب التعلم بطرق مختلفة. لا أحب عمل الشئ نفسه على الدوام.
A: What type of classes are your favourite? ما انواع الحصص التى تفضلها؟	B: I like classes when we get to do things and don't only read or listen. أحب الحصص التى نقوم فيها بعمل اشياء ولا تقتصر الحصة فقط على القراءة أو الاستماع.
A: What type of learning would you like to do more? ما نوع الطرق التعليمية التى تريد القيام بالمزيد منها؟	B: I like to do listening activities more. أحب القيام بأنشطة الاستماع بشكل أكثر.
A: What would you like to do less? Why? ماذا تريد أن تقلل منه؟ لماذا؟	B: I'd like to do less writing activities because I'm not interested in learning by writing. اريد ان اقلل من أنشطة الكتابة لأنى غير مهتم بالتعلم عن طريق الكتابة.

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mustafa is talking about his favourite singer.

Ragab : What do you prefer to do in your free time?

Mustafa : ❶ ....

Ragab : ❷ .... ?

Mustafa : My favourite singer is Amr Diab.

Ragab : ❸ .... ?

Mustafa : Because he has a very lovely singing voice.

Ragab : What kind of music do you like?

Mustafa : ❹ ....

Ragab : Do you usually go to concerts?

Mustafa : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What .... they doing in the garden? البحيرة – وادي النطرون 2022
   a. have b. do c. are d. did
2. When was the last time you .... disappointed? SB
   a. felt b. fall c. filled d. fell
3. It was .... cloudy today. There wasn't much sun. WB
   a. hardly b. never c. rarely d. mostly
4. At the moment, my brother .... in a bank. WB
   a. worked b. is working c. will work d. work
5. Students need to .... what job they want to do. SB
   a. travel b. fix c. repair d. decide
6. I am going to take the exam to go to secondary school and I hope I ....! SB
   a. will pass b. was passing c. passed d. passes
7. When I was three years old, I didn't .... to school. SB
   a. use to going b. using go c. use to go d. used to going
8. The opposite of the word "fail" is .... المنوفية 2022
   a. feel b. fall c. pass d. lose
9. I study grammar easily through .... I learn best by seeing things.
   a. songs b. grams c. experiments d. diagrams
10. The teacher asked us to give a / an .... to the story as it's too long.
    a. presentation b. summary c. introduction d. action

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When I was young, I .... (use riding) a bike. سوهاج - أخميم 2022
2. Look! A cat .... (climb) a tree.
3. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I .... (be) a scientist! البحيرة 2022
4. Ahmed .... (study) for his maths exam at the moment. SB
5. I .... (buy) a book last week. SB 6 أكتوبر - جيزة 2022

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on: WB

(مجاب عنه في اخر الوحدة)

"What sort of learner you are"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **How many learning styles are there?**
- **What are they?**
- **How do you remember English grammar?**
- **How do you understand science books?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **There are many** ....
- **These learning styles are** ....
- **The best way to remember English grammar is** ....



Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 58-60 WB pages 109-110

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

body language	لغة الجسد	national	قومى / محلى
eye contact	تواصل بصرى (بالنظر)	dialect	لهجة
multilingual	متعدد اللغات	advantage	ميزة
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	identity	هوية
sound	صوت (شئ)	connect (ed)	يصل/يربط
voice	صوت (بشرى)	touch (n) (ed)	اللمس / يلمس
expert	خبير		

Vocabulary

difference	اختلاف	frightened	خائف/مرعوب
suggestion	اقتراح	field	ملعب - حقل
spoken	منطوقة/مُتحدث بها (لغة)	scared	خائف/مرعوب
home	وطن	lovely	جميل/فاتن
community	مجتمع	Switzerland	سويسرا
international	عالمى / دولى	communication	اتصال / تواصل
normally	بشكل طبيعى	communicate (d)	يتواصل
soft voice	صوت رقيق	copy (ied)	يقلد/ينسخ
professor	أستاذ جامعى	miss (ed)	يفتقد/ يفوته
bright	ساطع/لامع - ذكى	believe (d)	يعتقد/يصدق
serious	جاد - خطير	wait (ed)	ينتظر

Languages

French	اللغة الفرنسية	Portuguese	اللغة البرتغالية
German	اللغة الألمانية	English	اللغة الإنجليزية
Italian	اللغة الإيطالية	Romansh	اللغة الرومانشية «سويسرا»

Expressions & Prepositions

have advantages	لديه مميزات	on a farm	فى مزرعة
make (a) noise	يحدث ضجيج	on the internet	على الانترنت
make eye contact	يتواصل بصرياً «بالنظر»	go away	يذهب بعيدًا
home language	اللغة الرسمية فى البلد	spend time with	يقضى وقت مع
feel different	يشعر بشيء مختلف (مميز)	disappointed with	محبط من
head down	مطأطئ الرأس	communicate with	يتواصل مع
that's true	هذا صحيح	walk into	يدخل مكان
copy sounds	يقلد الأصوات	connect to	يتصل بـ/يربط بـ
bring together	يجمع	different to	مختلف عن
from my point of view	من وجهة نظرى	at the front door	عند الباب الأمامى
careful about	حريص بشأن		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
spend	يقضى وقت - يصرف مال	spent	spent
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
leave	يغادر	left	left

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
quiet	هادئ	calm	noisy	صاخب/ضوضائى
inside	فى الداخل	indoors	outside	فى الخارج
advantage	ميزة	merit	disadvantage	عيب
true	حقيقى	real	untrue	غير حقيقى

Definitions

dialect	لهجة	- a way of speaking used in one area - a form of a language that people speak in a particular[1] part of a country.
national	قومى/محلى	relating[2] to or typical[3] of a whole[4] country and its people
advantage	ميزة	a good thing about something
expert	خبير	someone who has a lot of skill in or knowledge about something

١- معين
٢- يتعلق بـ
٣- قياسى/ نموذجى
٤- بالكامل

multilingual متعدد اللغات	be able to speak more than two languages
connect يصل/يربط	bring things / people together, join (يجلب/يحضر)
identity هوية	the thing that makes you different to other people
body language لغة الجسد	the way you move your body, that shows people what you are feeling
touch يلمس	put your hand onto something or someone
voice صوت (بشرى)	the sounds that are made when people speak or sing
eye contact تواصل بصرى (بالنظر)	if two people make eye contact, they look at each other at the same time
facial expression تعبير الوجه	the look on someone's face showing what they feel or think

Language Notes

1) voice / sound

- **voice (n)** صوت (بشرى)

Ex. He was ill so I could hardly hear his voice.

- **sound (v-ed)** يبدو

Ex. That sounds a good idea.

- **sound (n)** صوت (شيء)

Ex. Please, turn the sound of the radio down a little.

2) communicate / connect

- **communicate (with)** يتواصل (مع)

Ex. We live in different cities and we communicate with each other by email.

- **connect (to)** يتصل/يربط (بـ)

Ex. Our home language connects us to our country.

3) dialect / accent

- **dialect** لهجة (تشير إلى الاختلافات فى القواعد والمفردات لنفس اللغة من منطقة لأخرى)

Ex. There are many dialects in Egypt like Saidi and Bedouin.

- **accent** لكنة (تشير إلى الطريقة التى ينطق بها الأفراد كلمات أو عبارات معينة)

Ex. Although he spoke English well, I knew he was Indian from his accent.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The kids repeated the song in high ....
   a. sounds b. voices c. talks d. touch
2. Our computer is .... to the internet.
   a. connected b. communicated c. consisted d. contained
3. People in north Egypt speak coastal ....
   a. voice b. language c. dialect d. sound

Audioscript

SB Page (58)



استمع الى النصوص



Munir : What do you know about animals? Do you think they understand you? Today I'm talking to Dr Ahmed who is going to tell us about how animals communicate[1]. Hello, Dr Ahmed.

Dr Ahmed : Hello.

Munir : Let's talk about the animals that you often see on a farm. My brother is a farmer[2] and I think that his cat understands him sometimes. Is that possible?

Dr Ahmed : I'm sure the cat understands when he is angry[3] and understands words like 'dinner', for example.

Munir : But of course, the cat can't talk to him.

Dr Ahmed : No, animals can't speak in the way people can, but some animals like birds can copy[4] sounds. But animals do communicate, both to us and to each other. One way animals communicate is by using body language[5]. For example, horses touch noses to say hello to another horse they like and bees dance when they find a good flower.

Munir : So can I learn to communicate better with animals then?

Dr Ahmed : From my point of view[6], it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you. You should be careful about how you use your body and voice[7]. So, if an animal is scared[7], you should move slowly and use a soft voice[9]. How about listening to the way your cat makes a noise? Does it sound different if it wants some food? I think it will!

١- يتواصل
٢- مزارع
٣- غاضب
٤- يُقلد
٥- لغة الجسد
٦- من وجهة نظرى
٧- صوت بشرى
٨- خائف/مرعوب
٩- صوت رقيق

WB Page (109)

Ola : I'm looking after my baby cousin Lina today. Isn't she lovely[1]?

Injy : Yes, but how can you understand what she wants?

Ola : From my point of view, you should first look at the baby's facial expressions[2], so you know if they are happy or sad.

Injy : That's true.

Ola : I think Lina's tooth is hurting her. You can see from her body language.

Injy : What should we do?

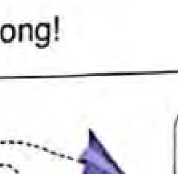
Ola : Let's try to make her laugh.

Injy : Good idea. How about singing a funny song!

١- جميل
٢- تعبيرات الوجه

Reading

SB Page (59)





Can anyone give me some advice? I have an older sister (she's three years older than me). We used to be best friends, but now she doesn't want to talk to me very much. She is always on the internet or talking to people on her phone.
She tells me to go away if I try to talk to her. How can I get her to spend time with me again?
Please give me some advice!
Yours, Radwa.

SB Page (60)



Multilingual Africa[1]

Experts[2] believe that there are more than 2,100 languages spoken[3] in Africa. Many African people speak three languages: their dialect[4] (or home language), the national[5] language and another European[6] language such as English, French or Portuguese[7] that they learn at school. This means they are multilingual! Of course, many people speak more than three languages!

People who speak different languages have lots of advantages[8]. If you speak more than one language, you can talk to different people in different places and in different ways. When you are multilingual, you are able to understand both your home and the world better.

١- أفريقيا متعددة اللغات
٢- خبراء
٣- منطوقة
٤- لهجة
٥- قومى/محلى
٦- اوروبى
٧- لغة برتغالية
٨- مميزات

It also gives people different identities[9]. If you speak your home language, it connects[10] you to your community[11]. Your national language connects you to your country and all the other people in it. An international[12] language, like English, connects your to an international community.

٩- هويات
١٠- يربط
١١- مجتمع
١٢- دولي

WB Page (109)

Form of communication[1]

1- Shady is waiting at the front door[2] of his friend's house. He knows someone is inside the house because he can hear sounds.
2- It's the end of a football match. All the players in the blue team are leaving the field[3] very slowly. They all have their heads down[4]. We know they are disappointed with the result[5] by their body language.
3- A blind[6] man walks into a clothes shop and buys a shirt. He chooses the shirt by touch[7].
4- Malak and Randa are sitting on different sides[8] of a busy library. They must be quiet in the library. Randa knows that Malak wants to leave because she makes eye contact[9] with her.
5- Some children are watching a film. We know the film is scary[10] by their facial expressions.

١- تواصل / إتصال
٢- باب أمامي
٣- ملعب
٤- مطأطئ الرأس
٥- نتيجة
٦- كفيف
٧- اللمس
٨- جوانب
٩- تواصل بصري «بالنظر»
١٠- مرعب/مخيف

WB Page (110)

The languages of Switzerland

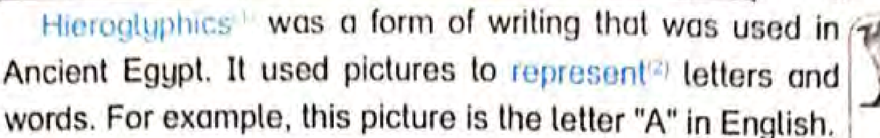


Switzerland[1] is a small European[2] country. Here, you do not need to be an expert to speak many languages. That is because nearly all people in Switzerland are multilingual: they speak the country's four national languages. That is because each area of Switzerland has always had its own identity and its own language.

The parts of Switzerland near Italy speak Italian[3], the parts near Germany[4] speak German[5] and the parts near France speak French[6]. In the southwest[7] of Switzerland, they also speak a dialect called Romansh[8]. Each language connects the people with their area, but they are also very proud of their country.

١- سويسرا
٢- اوربية
٣- اللغة الإيطالية
٤- دولة المانيا
٥- اللغة الألمانية
٦- اللغة الفرنسية
٧- جنوب غرب
٨- اللغة الرومانشية

Videoscript (SB Page (60))



Hieroglyphics[1] was a form of writing that was used in Ancient Egypt. It used pictures to represent[2] letters and words. For example, this picture is the letter "A" in English.

We know how to read these pictures because of the Rosetta Stone[3], which was found in Rashid[4] in the 18th century[5]. The Rosetta Stone is special. It was - perhaps - the world's first language dictionary[6]. That is because the stone[7] has both hieroglyphics and writing in the language of Ancient Greece[8].

Before they found the Rosetta Stone, people didn't understand the meaning[9] of hieroglyphics. However, experts who understood Ancient Greek could work out what the pictures meant.

But did you know that many of us still[10] use a form of hieroglyphics today? These are emojis[11] and people sometimes use them when they are sending text messages to their friends. Like hieroglyphics, emojis use pictures to represent letters or words. This emoji means that the writer is happy...and this one means the writer is sad.

Some emojis even look like hieroglyphics, like this scarab beetle[12] and this ladybird[13]. They both mean different things, however. The scarab beetle was used to represent 'strong' and the ladybird is used to represent "good luck".

١- اللغة الهيروغليفية
٢- ترمز الى
٣- حجر رشيد
٤- مدينة رشيد
٥- قرن (١٠٠ عام)
٦- قاموس
٧- حجر
٨- اليونان القديمة
٩- معنى
١٠- مازال
١١- رسوم تعبيرية
١٢- جعران فرعوني
١٣- خنفساء الدعسوقة

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. The .... are the things that make you different to other people . WB الطور - شمال سيناء 2022
   a. forms   b. subjects   c. identities   d. similarities
2. A sound that comes from your mouth is your .... SB
   a. sound   b. hear   c. voice   d. touch
3. What is the .... language of Egypt? WB
   a. fashion   b. occasional   c. emotional   d. national
4. A person who speaks lots of languages is .... SB بور سعيد 2022
   a. multilingual   b. greedy   c. lazy   d. national

5. The .... of people in Cairo is different from those in upper Egypt. 2022

a. connection b. multilingual c. language d. dialect

6. A blind man walks into a clothes shop and buys a shirt. He chooses the shirt by 2022

a. sounds b. sight c. smell d. touch

7. Body .... means the way you move your body. 2022

a. language b. built c. lantern d. balance

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. I knew he was scared from his .... expressions.

a. station b. nasal c. social d. facial

9. One of the .... of living in the countryside is the fresh air.

a. disadvantages b. damages c. advantages d. harm

10. Muhammad should .... more time with his family.

a. go b. walk c. spend d. do

11. Do you know how to .... my mobile to a TV?

a. spend b. connect c. miss d. communicate

12. The violin gives a lovely ....

a. sound b. language c. dialect d. voice

13. In southern Egypt, people speak a .... called Saidi.

a. festival b. game c. tradition d. dialect

14. The players understand each other through .... contact.

a. eye b. ear c. nose d. mouth

15. My friends and I .... using "WhatsApp".

a. communicate b. connect c. copy d. believe

16. .... are people who know lots about a subject.

a. Advantages b. Exports c. Identities d. Experts



Speaking

Giving advice, opinions and suggestions

إسداء النصح وتقديم الرأي والاقتراحات

- تستخدم العبارات التالية للتعبير عن النصيحة / الرأي / الاقتراحات:

Advice	النصيحة	**You should...**	يجب عليك أن ...
Opinion	الرأي	From my point of view, ...	من وجهة نظري ...
		In my opinion, ...	في رأي .....
		I think...	أعتقد ...
Suggestion	الاقتراح	Let's + inf.... .	هيا ...
		Why don't you / we + inf....?	لما لا ... ؟
		How about + v-ing .....?	ما رأيك في ... ؟

General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Yasser wants to buy a new laptop.

Yasser : I want to buy a laptop, dad.
Dad : ❶ ....
Yasser : Do you think a tablet is better?
Dad : ❷ .... It's easier to use.
Yasser : Good opinion, dad. ❸ ....?
Dad : Today, I'm busy. ❹ ....
Yasser : Tomorrow? OK! Should we buy a modern or an old one?
Dad : ❺ ....
Yasser : But a modern one is expensive.
Dad : No problem. I have enough money.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In Switzerland, you do not need to be an .... to speak many languages. WB
   a. experiment b. expert c. experience d. expect
2. Some children are watching a film. We know the film is scary by their .... WB
   a. eye contact b. facial expressions
   c. touch d. body language
3. Shady can hear .... inside the house . WB
   a. sounds b. smell c. touch d. taste

4. Modern technology helps people to .... with each other. (... 2022)
   a. see   b. communicate   c. read   d. fight
5. .... about going out for a walk? It's fine today. (... 2022)
   a. When   b. Why   c. How   d. Where
6. .... my point of view, it's important to study new languages.
   a. From   b. In   c. By   d. for
7. Some animals can .... sounds. The parrot is one of them. WB
   a. connect   b. feel   c. copy   d. spend

3 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words: SB

(اعجاب عنه في اخر الوحدة)

to your friend Radwa to advise her about the problem with her sister.

. Your name is Fatma and your email address is fatma345@gmail.com

. Your friend's name is Radwa and her email address is radwa898@yahoo.com

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكتروني:

- **What should Radwa tell her sister?**
- **What's your advice to Radwa?**
- **What would you do if you were Radwa?**
- **What should Radwa advise her sister not to do?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **You should tell your sister** ....
- **My advice to you is** ....
- **If I were you, I'd** ....
- **You should advise your sister not to** ....



SB pages 61 - 62 WB pages 111 -112

Key Vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات

summer school	مدرسة صيفية	spelling	الهجاء
context	سياق الكلام/سياق الحديث	punctuation	علامات الترقيم
volunteer	متطوع	pronunciation	النطق
personal statement	بيان شخصى	accent	لكنة
vocabulary	مفردات لغوية	improve (d)	يطور/ يحسن
application form	استمارة/ طلب تقديم	manage (d)	يدير / ينظم
study plan	خطة دراسية		

Important phrases

manage your time	نظم وقتك	sleep well	نم جيدًا
work alone	إعمل بمفردك	be organised	كن مُنظَّماً
take a break	خذ فترة راحة		

Vocabulary

negative meaning	معنى سلبى	flashcards	بطاقات تعليمية مصورة
title	لقب/ عنوان (كتاب أو فيلم)	furniture	أثاث
timetable	جدول مواعيد	topic	موضوع
summer courses	دورات تدريبية صيفية	news article	مقال إخبارى
nationality	جنسية	revise (d)	يراجع
email address	عنوان البريد الإلكتروني	test (ed) (n)	يختبر/اختبار
bilingual	ثنائى اللغة	realise (d)	يدرك
textbook	كتاب مدرسى	smoke (d) (n)	يدخن/دخان
comments	تعليقات		

Expressions & Prepositions

make a study timetable	يعمل جدول للاستذكار	have fun	يستمتع
the best way to + inf.	أفضل طريقة لـ....	do sport / activities	يمارس رياضة/أنشطة
sounds fun	يبدو ممتع	from around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
walk past	يسير مارًا بـ	at the same time	فى نفس الوقت

come from	يأتي من (بلده)	organised by topic	منظم حسب الموضوع
look the same	يبدو متطابق / متماثل	best for	الأفضل لـ
get better	يتحسن	listen for / to	يستمع لـ
English-language TV programmes	برامج تلفزيونية لتعلم الإنجليزية	good at	جيد فى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
break	يكسر	broke	broken
come	يأتى	came	come
spell	يتهجى	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
negative	سلبى	bad	positive	إيجابى
friendly	ودود	kind	unfriendly	غير ودود

Definitions

organised	منظم	- able to plan[1] things carefully[2] - arranged or planned
volunteer	متطوع	a person who helps others without getting anything in return[3]
improve	يحسن / يطور	to get better at something

١- يخطط
٢- بعناية
٣- فى المقابل

Language Notes

1) The prefix (dis)

- يضاف فى بداية بعض الكلمات الإنجليزية مقاطع تعطى معنى مختلف للكلمة تسمى بادئات (prefixes).
- من هذه المقاطع البادئة (-dis) حيث تعطى معنى سلبى أو عكس الكلمة الأصلية:

organised	منظم	**dis**organised	غير منظم
connected	متصل	**dis**connected	غير متصل
advantage	ميزة	**dis**advantage	عيب

- لاحظ فى الكلمات السابقة إذا حذفنا المقطع (dis) فإن الكلمة المتبقية ستكون ذات معنى وهو عكس الكلمة لكن لا ينطبق ذلك على كلمات أخرى مثل (**dis**appointed).

(2) too + adj (for...) + to + inf.

• تستخدم التعبير السابق للتعبير عن شيء كثير أو زائد لدرجة ألا نتحمل (سعره - حرارته ....)

Ex. My house is too noisy to study in.

Ex. This shirt is too expensive for me to buy.

(3) street / road

• street شارع في منطقة سكنية

Ex. We live in a quiet street.

• road طريق ممهد للسفر أو التنقل بين مكانين/مدينتين

Ex. The farm is on Cairo-Alexandria road.

(4) Completing an application form

بيانات اكمال استمارة لتقديم طلب

• عند التقدم بطلب الوظيفة/الالتحاق بمدرسة/جامعة/دورة تدريبية.... إلخ، تكمل استمارة بالبيانات الآتية:

. Name:	الاسم : ....
. Age:	العمر : ....
. Date of birth:	تاريخ الميلاد : ....
. Nationality:	الجنسية : ....
. Address:	العنوان : ....
. Phone number:	رقم الهاتف : ....
. Email address:	عنوان البريد الإليكتروني : ....
. Personal statement:	بيان شخصي : ....

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of connected is ....

   a. disconnected b. connecting c. ilconnected d. inconnected

2. The tea is .... hot to drink.

   a. two b. toe c. to d. too

3. Take Ismailia Desert .... to travel from Cairo to Ismailia.

   a. Street b. Road c. Ocean d. Sky







English language summer school for teenagers!

Do you want to improve[1] your English? Would you like to study in England with other young people from around the world? Come and stay at Hapstone House, in the south of England, for our summer courses[2]! You can study every morning with our friendly[3], expert teachers and spend the afternoons doing sports or other activities. Every weekend we visit famous English places (like London or Oxford).

Learn English,
have fun,
visit England!

For more information, visit our website.

١- يطور / يحسن
٢- دورات تعليمية صيفية
٣- ودود

WB Page (111)

Study plan[1]: how to learn English vocabulary[2]

1- Make flashcards[3] of words that you need to remember, organised[4] by topic[5] (for example, words for furniture)[6].
2- Write the words in context[7]: that means putting the word in a written sentence, so you can see how it works with other words.
3- Don't try to remember too many words at the same time: find how many words is best for you.
4- Watch English-language TV programmes or films and listen for known[8] words.
5- Read as many stories and news articles[9] as you can: it's the best way to learn vocabulary!
6- Work with a friend and try to test each other on important words.

١- خطة دراسية
٢- مفردات لغوية
٣- بطاقات تعليمية
٤- مُنظم / مرتب
٥- موضوع
٦- أثاث
٧- سياق الكلام
٨- معروف
٩- مقالات إخبارية

WB Page (112)

Hi
My name's Mario. I am fourteen years old. My birthday is 14 February and I'm from Italy. My address[1] is 7 North Road, Rome and my phone number[2] is 889900. I don't have email (my parents don't like computers!). I want to improve my English because I want to do well[3] in my exams next year. I think that your course sounds fun and I think I will enjoy your activities. I love playing sports such as[4] football and tennis. I look forward to hearing from you.
Yours,
Mario Dollo

١- عنوان
٢- رقم الهاتف
٣- يؤدي جيداً
٤- مثل

WB Page (113)

When my father was younger, he used to help on his uncle's farm. One day, he was walking past[1] the building where the horses slept when he saw some smoke[2]. He realised[3] there was a fire. The horses were frightened[4] and they didn't want to leave the building. My father was very calm[5] and made eye contact with the horses. Then, he carefully took them from the building. When I heard this story, I decided that I wanted to become a vet[6]. Next year, I am starting studying at university. I think it will be difficult work, but I love animals. I'm looking forward to working with them in the future.

١- يمر بجوار
٢- دخان
٣- أدرك
٤- خائفين
٥- هادئ
٦- طبيب بيطري

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

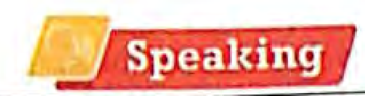
SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. When you get tired, you can .... a break. WB
   a. make b. take c. win d. do
2. Successful persons always .... their time. WB
   a. manage b. damage c. test d. revise
3. Workers have to .... their skills to get good jobs. WB أسيوط 2022
   a. move b. include c. improve d. prove
4. The charity needs some .... like you. سوهاج - أخميم 2022
   a. vans b. fans c. voluntary d. volunteers
5. To .... means to join two things or places together. المنوفية 2022
   a. fix b. connect c. copy d. explain
6. Salem must .... well for the next exam. القاهرة 2022
   a. fail b. revise c. pass d. manage
7. Mona used to .... sports when she was young. دمياط 2022
   a. make b. do c. take d. wait

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. The two cities are .... by a bridge.
   a. connected b. organised c. disorganised d. disappointed
9. We add the prefix "........" to give the opposite of "organised".
   a. ir- b. il- c. dis- d. in-

10. The question is .... difficult to answer.
a. too b. two c. to d. twice
11. We should be .... to do better in our life.
a. disorganised b. broken c. organised d. known
12. The books are .... alphabetically on the shelf.
a. organised b. disappointed c. disconnected d. closed
13. I felt so .... when my parents didn't come to drive me home.
a. connected b. disconnected c. disappointed d. organised
14. One of the .... of this job is that they offer a car to and from the factory.
a. disadvantages b. damages c. bad points d. advantages
15. We learn a lot of .... in this lesson.
a. volunteers b. vocabulary c. furniture d. breaks



A discussion about study tips (for an exam)

مناقشة حول ارشادات الاستذكار

• نستخدم العبارات والنصائح الآتية عند نصح شخص ما بكيفية الاستذكار

Be organised كن منظماً
- Know what you need to do and when to do it. اعرف ماذا تحتاج ان تفعل ومتى -

Manage your time نظم وقتك
- Make a study timetable. قم بعمل جدول للاستذكار -

Where do you study? أين تذاكر؟
- Find a quiet space to study. If your house is too busy, you could go to the library. اوجد مكان هادئ للاستذكار. اذا كان المنزل مزدحم يمكن ان تذهب للمكتبة -

Work alone or with friends. اعمل بمفردك أو مع أصدقاءك.

Take breaks. خذ فترات راحة.

Sleep well. نم جيداً.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nehal is asking Miss Noura for some tips about how to study well.

Nehal : Could you give me some advice about studying, please?

Miss Noura : ❶ ....

Nehal : ❷ .... ?

Miss Noura : Be organised and know what you need to do and when to do it.

Nehal : Great! How can I manage my time?

Miss Noura : ❸ ....

Nehal : ❹ .... ?

Miss Noura : You should study in a quiet place.

Nehal : ❺ ....

Miss Noura : You're welcome.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Portuguese and Spanish languages are .... in many ways. WB
   a. connected b. disappointed
   c. disadvantages d. disorganised
2. The personal .... is an important part of an application form.
   a. context b. statement c. spelling d. accent
3. English is an international .... بني سويف 2022
   a. sport b. country c. language d. food
4. Students should have a study ....
   a. show b. context c. title d. plan
5. A .... is a person who helps others without getting anything in return. WB
   a. learner b. thief c. volunteer d. worker
6. The .... of this word is wrong.
   a. plan b. spelling c. timetable d. address
7. Nurses help patients to .... better at hospitals. بني سويف 2022
   a. take b. cook c. set d. get

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

WB

(امتحان عنده في آخر الوحدة)

"How to learn English vocabulary"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What is the problem that most learners face?**
- **How can flashcards be used?**
- **Why should we watch English-language TV programmes?**
- **What's the best way to learn vocabulary?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **Most English-language learners face the problem of** ....
- **They can make flashcards of** ....
- **They should watch** ....
- **The best way to learn vocabulary is** ....

Unit 12

Review

Key Vocabulary

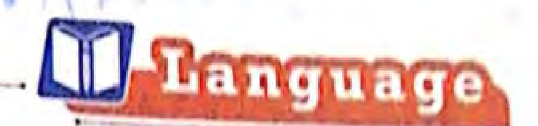
learner	متعلم (فى مرحلة التعلم)	expert	خبير
mostly	غالبا / فى الأغلب	national	قومى / محلى
take notes	يسجل ملاحظات	dialect	لهجة
disappointed	محبط	advantage	ميزة
proud	فخور	identity	هوية
body language	لغة الجسد	spelling	الهجاء
eye contact	تواصل بصرى (بالنظر)	punctuation	علامات الترقيم
multilingual	متعدد اللغات	pronunciation	النطق
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	accent	لكنة
sound	صوت (شئ)	repair (ed) = fix (ed)	يُصلح
voice	صوت (بشرى)	fail (ed)	يفشل/يرسب
summer school	مدرسة صيفية	pass (ed)	ينجح / يجتاز
context	سياق الكلام/سياق الحديث	decide (d)	يقرر
volunteer	متطوع	improve (d)	يطور/ يحسن
personal statement	بيان شخصى	manage (d)	يدير / ينظم
vocabulary	مفردات لغوية	connect (ed)	يصل/يربط
application form	استمارة / طلب تقديم	touch (n) (ed)	اللمس / يلمس
study plan	خطة دراسية		

Learning styles

writing	الكتابة	listening	الاستماع
reading	القراءة	doing things	عمل الأشياء
seeing things	رؤية الأشياء		

Important phrases

manage your time	نظم وقتك	sleep well	نم جيدًا
work alone	إعمل بمفردك	be organised	كن منظمًا
take a break	خذ استراحة		



1- The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

فاعل	إثبات	نفى	استفهام
I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	inf. مصدر الفعل	don't + inf. never + inf.	(كلمة إستفهام) Do + فاعل + inf.?
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	inf. + s / es / ies	doesn't + inf. never + inf + s /es / ies	(كلمة إستفهام) Does + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

every (day - week - month - year) - always - usually - often - sometimes - never

Usage الاستخدام

• يعبر عن حقائق - أفعال متكررة وعادات

Ex. We help mum at home.

- Ali lives in Giza.

Ex. We don't make noise.

- Mona doesn't live in Giza.

Ex. Do they have a car?

- Yes, they do. / No, they don't.

- Does Aya live in Giza?

- Yes, she does./ No, she doesn't.

2- The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

إثبات	نفى	استفهام
فعل فى التصريف الثاني+ فاعل	فاعل + didn't + inf.	(كلمة إستفهام) Did + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday - last (week - month - year) - ago - in the past - once - in 2015

Usage الاستخدام

• يعبر عن فعل حدث وانتهى فى وقت محدد فى الماضي

Ex. She cooked fish yesterday.

Ex. She didn't cook meat yesterday.

Ex. Did she cook rice yesterday?

- Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.

3- The past continuous tense زمن الماضى المستمر

فاعل	إثبات	نفى	استفهام
I He / She / It / اسم مفرد We / You / They / اسم جمع	was / were + v-ing	was / were not + v-ing	(كلمة إستفهام) Was / Were + فاعل + v-ing?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

when / while / as / just as

Usage الاستخدام

يعبر عن حدث كان مستمراً فى وقت محدد فى الماضى / حدث كان مستمراً فى الماضى عندما قطعه حدث آخر

Ex. I was reading a book when mum called me.

Ex. He wasn't eating cake. Ex. Were you flying a kite?

4- The future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

إثبات	نفى	استفهام
فاعل + will +inf.	فاعل + will not (won't) + inf.	(كلمة استفهام) Will + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow - in the future - next (week - month - year)

Usage الاستخدام

يعبر عن شئ سوف يحدث فى المستقبل

Ex. She will visit us tomorrow. Ex. They will not (won't) sing.

Ex. Will you do your homework?

- Yes, I will. / No, I won't.

Speaking

1) Talking about learning styles الحديث عن طرق التعلم

- نسأل ونجيب عن طرق التعلم كالآتى:

A: How do you prefer to learn?
B: I like to learn in different ways. I don't like always doing the same thing.
A: What type of classes are your favourite?
B: I like classes when we get to do things and don't only read or listen.
A: What type of learning would you like to do more?
B: I'd like to do listening activities more.
A: What would you like to do less? Why?
B: I'd like to do less writing activities because I'm not interested in learning by writing.

2) Giving advice, opinions and suggestions

ابداء النصح وتقديم الرأي والاقتراحات

- تستخدم العبارات التالية للتعبير عن النصيحة / الرأي / الاقتراحات

Advice	You should...
Opinion	From my point of view, ... In my opinion, ... I think...
Suggestion	Let's + inf.... Why don't you / we + inf....? How about + v-ing ....?

3) A discussion about study tips (for an exam)

مناقشة حول إرشادات الاستذكار

• تستخدم العبارات والنصائح الآتية عند نصح شخص ما بكيفية الاستذكار

Be organised

- Know what you need to do and when to do it.

Manage your time

- Make a study timetable.

Where do you study?

- Find a quiet space to study. If your house is too busy, you could go to the library.

Work alone or with friends.

Take breaks.

Sleep well.

General Exercises on Unit 12

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ganna is talking to Aliaa about a holiday.

Ganna : Where did you go at the weekend?

Aliaa : 1 ....

Ganna : To the club! 2 ....?

Aliaa : To do some sport there.

Ganna : 3 ....?

Aliaa : I like swimming.

Ganna : When will you go next time?

Aliaa : 4 ....

Ganna : Can I come with you?

Aliaa : 5 ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The weather this weekend will be .... cloudy. It is going to rain.
   a. never b. no c. hardly d. mostly
2. I use body .... to express my feelings with friends.
   a. clock b. weight c. language d. building
3. His facial .... showed me how he felt.
   a. revisions b. expressions c. occasions d. decisions
4. His strength is a big .... to win the competition.
   a. advantage b. mistake c. disadvantage d. lose
5. Salma has got a lovely singing ....
   a. sight b. smell c. voice d. sound
6. How much will it cost to .... the TV?
   a. destroy b. repeat c. reread d. repair
7. The player .... proud when he received the gold medal.
   a. felt b. filled c. fell d. fall
8. About five million people .... in Alexandria. WB
   a. are living b. live c. lives d. living
9. At the moment, lots of American tourists .... photographs of the castle. WB
   a. take b. used to take c. are taking d. was taking
10. This old tree is going to fall. I think they .... it down.
   a. will cut b. are cutting c. cut d. used to cut
11. The horses were frightened and they .... to leave the building. WB
   a. don't want b. won't want c. didn't want d. wants
12. While we .... breakfast, you phoned us. القاهرة 2022
   a. was have b. will have c. have d. were having

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The sun .... (will set) in the west.
2. The boy is going to .... (watching) a football match tomorrow. بور سعيد 2022
3. I didn't use to .... (walking) to school.

4. While my mother .... (cooked), my father arrived home.
5. My father .... (going to) work because he's tired.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words:

SB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Your study plans"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What should you do if you have a project or an exam?**
- **How can you make a study plan?**
- **How can you be organised?**
- **How can you manage your time?**
- **Where should you study?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **You should .... if you have a project or an exam.**
- **There are many steps you should follow to ....**
- **You should know what ....**
- **You should find a quiet place to ....**

Unit 12

Al Azhar Test



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker wanted to be a/an ....
   a. scientist b. engineer c. teacher d. pilot
2. The speaker finds science very .... now.
   a. easy b. tiring c. difficult d. exciting

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the the following dialogue:

Tamer is telling Ahmed about his visit to a museum.

Ahmed : Hello Tamer! How are you?
Tamer : 1 ....
Ahmed : 2 ....?
Tamer : Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum.
Ahmed : 3 ....?
Tamer : I saw lots of statues.
Ahmed : That's a great trip.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All the .... about that programme are great.
   a. causes b. reviews c. diagrams d. skills
2. To study well, you have to .... your time.
   a. succeed b. manage c. damage d. waste
3. While he was eating the phone ....
   a. ring b. rings c. rang d. ringing
4. Wait a minute, I .... this box for you.
   a. will carry b. carry
   c. am going to carry d. am carring
5. Can you tell me the .... between the two countries?
   a. difference b. different c. intelligent d. intelligence

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Ali and I am in Prep 2. I live in Zagazig with my family. We are a happy family. My father works at Zagazig hospital. My mom is a housewife, she looks after

us all time. I have two sisters and one bigger brother. He is an engineer. We all love spending time watching TV and **having fun** together. In our free time, we love to go to the parks and the cinema.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How many people are there in Ali's family?

....

2. Where does his mom work?

....

3. What does the underlined word "have fun" mean?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. His father is a ....

a. teacher b. doctor c. chef d. cook

5. Ali has three ....

a. sisters b. brothers c. siblings d. cousins

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. busy - always - **You** - making and repairing - are - things. ....
2. love to - **You** - watch - look at - and - diagrams - videos. ....
3. you - **Do** - they - think - understand? ....
4. can't - the way - in - people - **Animals** - can speak. ....

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on: WB

(مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

"The importance of learning different languages"

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **Do you like learning languages? Why / Why not?**
- **Which languages do you like?**
- **Why is it important to learn different languages?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I like / don't like learning languages because ....**
- **The languages I like are ....**
- **It's important to learn different languages because ....**

Paragraphs & Emails

Paragraphs

1- What sort of learner I am

There are many different learning styles. Some prefer to learn by hearing, seeing, doing things, reading and writing. For me the best way to remember English grammar is to make up a song about it! Then I sing the song quietly to myself. I think it is a great way to remember irregular verbs! I learn best by listening. I also find it difficult to understand science books. When I do an experiment in the laboratory, I understand what is happening! I learn best by doing things.

2- How to learn English vocabulary

Most English-language learners face a problem. They find it hard to remember vocabulary. So, there are many ways that can help them. They can make flashcards of words that they need to remember. They should watch English-language TV programmes or films. They should read many stories and news articles. This is the best way to learn vocabulary. They can also work with friends and try to test each other on important words.

3- Your study plans

You should make a plan if you have a project or an exam. There are many steps you should follow to make a study plan. You should be organised. You should know what you need to do and when to do it. You should manage your time. You should make a study timetable. You should find a quiet space to study. If your house is too busy, you could go to the library. You should take breaks. You should sleep well.

4- The importance of learning different languages

I like learning languages. This helps me communicate with friends in different countries. I like English and French most. Learning different languages is important. I can read books written in these languages.

Emails

1- Advice about problems with my sister

From : fatma345@gmail.com.
To : radwa898@yahoo.com.
Subject : Advice about problems with my sister

Dear Radwa,
I hope you are fine. You should tell your sister how you feel about her. You should tell her that you miss her so much. If I were you, I would share my hobbies and interests with her. You can read an interesting story together. You should tell her that talking on the phone for a long time is bad for her health. You should advise her not to waste her time on the internet. I'm looking forward to hearing from you.
Best wishes.
Yours,
Fatma

2- Communication with animals

From : magda898@yahoo.com
To : ola345@gmail.com.
Subject : Communication with animals
Dear Ola,
My uncle is a farmer. I visit his farm every weekend. I look after the animals there. I like them very much because I think they understand me. Animals communicate, both with us and with each other. One way animals communicate is by using body language. For example, horses touch noses to say hello to another horse they like. Bees dance when they find a good flower. Some birds can copy sounds. I will be happy if you visit my uncle's farm.
Yours,
Magda

Unit 12 TEST



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker has an older ....
   a. brother b. sister c. friend d. cousin
2. The speaker's sister is .... years older than him/her.
   a. two b. four c. three d. five
3. The speaker's sister doesn't want to .... to him/her very much.
   a. listen b. speak c. write d. talk
4. The speaker's sister is always on the .... or talking to people on her phone.
   a. internet b. house c. school d. TV

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman wants to improve his English.

Ayman : I want to improve my English. What should I do?

Anwar : ❶ ....

Ayman : Do you think watching English films is a good way?

Anwar : ❷ ....

Ayman : ❸ ....?

Anwar : Travelling to England is very useful but it costs a lot.

Ayman : ❹ ....?

Anwar : Talking to English people on the internet is a good idea.

Ayman : ❺ ....

Anwar : You're welcome.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Learning a new language has become important recently. Learning a new language is always an <u>exciting</u> experience. There could be many reasons that lead to the need to learn new languages but, the advantages are great. In other words, speaking more than one language can make people's lives easier. For example, people who

can speak other languages can find jobs easily. They can work in tourism as tour guides, hotel managers and many other high paying jobs. In addition, those people can communicate with foreigners from different countries. Moreover, learning a foreign language is a great way to explore other cultures and see the world from different angles. In conclusion, learning another language has become a necessity recently.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

2. Who can find jobs easily?

....

3. What can people do to communicate with foreigners?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Learning a foreign language is a great way to .... other cultures.
   a. become   b. explore   c. work   d. pay
7. Speaking more than one language can make people's lives ....
   a. simple   b. hard   c. harmful   d. terrible
6. The underlined word **"exciting"** is the opposite of ....
   a. interesting   b. easy   c. amazing   d. boring

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our car has broken down. I think we need someone to .... it.
   a. explain   b. burn   c. fail   d. repair
2. Medhat can't drive because he .... his driving test. WB
   a. passed   b. succeeded   c. failed   d. won
3. The family were .... when they found their hotel room was next to a factory! WB
   a. disappointed   b. proud   c. happy   d. pleased
4. The teacher thinks that all the students in our class will .... the test. WB
   a. sound   b. lose   c. pay   c. pass
5. The student understood me when he / she made .... with me.
   a. touch   b. eye contact   c. sounds   d. voice
6. Many people in Switzerland are ....: they speak four languages. WB
   a. blind   b. greedy   c. careless   d. multilingual

7. Our school needs .... to take part in the festival.
   a. volunteers   b. thieves   c. engines   d. farmers
8. Next year, they .... a new hotel in the park. WB
   a. build   b. built
   c. were building   d. are going to build
9. When my father was younger, he .... on his uncle's farm. WB
   a. used to help   b. helps   c. is helping   d. will help
10. When my dad arrived home, we .... lunch.
   a. will have   b. were having   c. are having   d. have

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Sara .... (do) her homework when her friend visited her last night. SB
2. At the moment, I .... (do) an English exercise. WB
3. In the future, I think we .... (have) more lessons online. WB
4. Listen! Your mobile. ....(ring). 2022

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

to your friend telling her about communication with animals.

- **Your friend's name is Magda and her email address is magda898@yahoo.com.**
- **Your name is Ola and your email address is ola345@gmail.com.**

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكترونى:

- **What do you look after? Where?**
- **Why do you like animals?**
- **Do some animals communicate? How?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I look after animals in** ....
- **I like animals very much because they** ....
- **Some animals communicate by** ....

Review D

SB pages 64 - 65 WB pages 114 - 115

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

geography	جغرافيا/تضاريس	opening party	حفل افتتاح
Eco Shop	محل بيع منتجات صديقة للبيئة	communication	اتصال/تواصل
camping trip	رحلة تخييم	owner	مالك
luxury	شئ فاخر		

Audioscript

SB Page (64)

استمع إلى النصوص

Next month is our school camping trip[1]. We're leaving in three weeks and camping for three nights. The bus is leaving at 8 am on the 10th May and we will be back on the 13th at 6 pm. As you know, we're going to the desert and it will be hot in the day[2] and cold at night. You will need to bring loose, cool clothes for the day and warm night clothes. You will also need comfortable trainers because we're going to do lots of walking. You're going to be learning about life in the desert and about the geography[3] of the area. You'll also need a camera, notebook and pen. Please take this letter for your parents which has all the information that you'll need.

١-رحلة تخييم
٢-نهاراً
٣-جغرافيا/تضاريس

WB Page (114)

Guide : We're going to climb that big mountain today, Karim.

Karim : Do you mean the mountain with the snow on top?

Guide : No, we're going to climb the one with the tall, green trees on it.

Karim : It looks a bit scary to me!

Guide : From my point of view, it won't be scary if you wear the correct clothes.

Karim : OK, what should I wear?

Guide : You should wear these thick leather boots, and this hard, plastic hat.

Karim : This hat is too big. Do you have a smaller size?

Guide : Here you are. Does it fit?

Karim : Yes, thank you.

Guide : OK, let's go up the mountain!

Reading

SB page (32)



On Monday, an exciting new shop is opening in the city centre. The Eco Shop[1] only sells things that are environment-friendly[2]. Last week, we talked to the owner[3], Mariam EL-Soory, about her new shop. "Lots of people want to help the environment but it is sometimes difficult to know what to buy. We are working with lots of people to help local industries[4], too. So, we're going to sell local fruit and vegetables, luxury[5], Egyptian cotton clothes and other local things that don't damage the environment. You can also bring glass, plastic and paper to the shop for recycling[6]. We will also have cooking and sewing classes at the shop soon".

١- محل صديق للبيئة
٢- صديق للبيئة
٣- مالك
٤- صناعات محلية
٥- شئ فاخر
٦- اعادة تدوير
٧- مرشدة
٨- حفل افتتاح

Mariam worked for many years as a guide[7] at a beach. She was sad because she saw a lot of plastic bags used for things from other countries on the beach. When she was picking up some rubbish one day, she decided she wanted to do more to help the environment and had the idea of a shop. The shop is having an opening party[8] at 1 pm in three days' time.

WB Page (114)



New technology means that forms of communication are changing all the time.

For example, think about how phones have developed over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to type messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages. Now, phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are speaking to their phones to send messages.

Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our facial expressions before they send a message!

WB Page (115)

Tarek is wearing a long, loose, cotton galabeya. He's also wearing a long, wool scarf.

Osama is wearing casual clothes, but I think he looks smart. He's wearing a T-shirt with a blue and white shirt over it. He's also wearing cotton trousers, but I don't think he's wearing a belt.

Deena is at a special occasion. She is wearing smart traditional clothes. I love her beautiful, white scarf. She's also wearing a loose, long, dress with flowers on it.

Test on Units 10, 11 & 12

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. There is a lot of .... where the speaker lives.
   a. pollution b. rubbish c. paper d. people
2. The speaker's .... never recycle their rubbish.
   a. friends b. brothers c. sisters d. neighbours
3. In the speaker's view, it is important to ....
   a. swim b. live c. recycle d. walk
4. We should take .... and glass out of the bin and recycle them.
   a. plastic b. rubbish c. leather d. paper

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Amir and Hani are talking about Amir's school uniform.

Amir : What do you wear when you go to school?
Hani : ❶ ....
Amir : Where did you buy this uniform?
Hani : ❷ ....
Amir : ❸ .... ?
Hani : It costs L.E. 200.
Amir : Wow! It's cheap. ❹ .... ?
Hani : Sure. I can come with you.
Amir : ❺ ....
Hani : You're welcome.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One summer evening, I was sitting by the window reading a story. After a time, it became too **dark** for me to read easily. When I got up to light the lamp, I heard a loud cry "help! help!" It seemed that the sound came from the garden. I looked out, but I couldn't see anything. I heard the cry again. I decided to go out and have a look

because there might be someone that needed help. I took my torch and a walking stick. I looked everywhere, but there was no sign of anybody. I went back to my house. I started to read my book. I was scared by the sound "help, help" behind my shoulder. I dropped my book and jumped up. There, I saw a green and red bird. **It** was a parrot. It flew out of my window when I went out.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Why couldn't the writer see anything from the window?

....

2. Who / What was shouting for help?

....

3. Why was the writer scared?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The best title for this passage is ....
   a. The Open Window b. My Torch
   c. A Scary Evening d. The Garden
5. The opposite of the word **"dark"** in line two is ....
   a. heavy b. light c. far d. cheap
6. The underlined pronoun **"It"** refers to the ....
   a. garden b. lamp c. stick d. parrot

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This material is .... for making luxury clothes.
   a. perfect b. wooden c. interested d. patient
2. The government is building new factories to help the Egyptian ....
   a. tourism b. education c. industry d. chemistry
3. Noha is the .... girl in our family.
   a. as smart b. smartest c. smart d. smarter
4. It's a .... car. SB
   a. beautiful, black, long b. black, beautiful, long
   c. beautiful, long, black d. long, beautiful, black
5. .... to English songs will improve your English.
   a. Listening b. Reading c. Writing d. Speaking

6. The new road will .... traffic through the town by 30%.

a. pollute　b. add　c. gain　d. reduce

7. .... use the wind to make electricity.

a. Solar panels　b. Wind turbines
c. Washing machines　d. Phones

8. Farida is running fast and she .... the race.

a. is going to win　b. winning　c. won　d. win

9. I felt so .... when my son graduated from university.

a. angry　b. proud　c. sad　d. disappointed

10. My sister .... to music now.

a. listened　b. listens　c. is listening　d. was listening

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Yesterday, I .... (play) football in the park.
2. It was raining when I .... (get up) this morning.
3. They are .... (brown, leather, old) boots.
4. Look out! .... (These) tree is going to fall.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

"How to learn English"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Part 3 General Exercises from Student's Book & Workbook

SB & WB Exercises Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Do you think that it is easy to .... from Arabic to English?
   a. translate b. move c. find d. stay
2. The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a ....
   a. lorry b. ship c. rocket d. motorbike
3. .... are like planes, but they do not have wings!
   a. Cars b. Cameras c. Helicopters d. Mobiles
4. Mona always wears .... on the bus because she loves listening to music.
   a. mobiles b. headphones c. dresses d. tablets
5. There's a/an .... on this phone which tells me the weather in my city.
   a. app b. screen c. battery d. charger
6. Do you think that we will .... a car that doesn't make any pollution?
   a. invention b. predict c. prediction d. invent
7. That new hotel looks .... I really don't like it.
   a. nice b. wonderful c. horrible d. fantastic
8. If you don't .... the lesson, you should tell the teacher.
   a. swim b. visit c. try d. understand
9. You shouldn't .... in the sea if it is very cold.
   a. run b. swim c. visit d. understand
10. The tourists took the road south by ...., but they wanted to go north.
    a. correction b. lever c. mistake d. right
11. Our friends sent us some photos on ....
    a. social media b. battery c. keyboard d. mouse
12. .... my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches.
    a. From b. In c. By d. On
13. Technology can be bad .... your health.
    a. at b. to c. for d. about
14. When they arrived at the hotel, they decided to .... its large gardens.
    a. invent b. explore c. expect d. export
15. We can use solar .... to make electricity.
    a. doors b. windows c. panels d. rooms
16. .... media are websites and apps that let people talk to each other online.
    a. Social b. Careful c. Electric d. Expensive
17. My little sister is .... to sweets. She always wants to eat them!
    a. damaged b. addicted c. broken d. hated

18. Do you think that there will be many ...... in your English homework?
   a. correct   b. corrections   c. invent   d. inventions
19. I think people will visit other planets one day, but it is ...... to go to the sun.
   a. possible   b. probable   c. easy   d. impossible
20. The door was very heavy, so we had to ...... it open.
   a. call   b. pull   c. lock   d. look
21. Don't touch the ......, or the machine will start.
   a. blackboard   b. glasses   c. telescope   d. lever
22. Do you .... that the weather will get hotter in the future?
   a. predict   b. prediction   c. invent   d. invention
23. It was cloudy this morning, but the clouds soon .... when the sun cam out.
   a. appeared   b. disappeared   c. hurt   d. damaged
24. I asked my teacher for help because I couldn't .... a new lesson.
   a. stay   b. visit   c. understand   d. try
25. You shouldn't .... outside for too long if it is very hot in the desert.
   a. visit   b. stay   c. swim   d. predict
26. The water in the sea is ....
   a. sweet   b. spicy   c. juicy   d. salty
27. .... is an example of fast food.
   a. Cheese   b. Pasta   c. Pizza   d. Cake
28. Sfenj has lots of fat and sugar in it and it is very ....
   a. high   b. sweet   c. salty   d. short
29. Falafel is really .... and it is very popular in Egypt.
   a. horrible   b. terrible   c. bad   d. delicious
30. Many people are allergic to ...., so they don't eat cakes.
   a. pizzas   b. nuts   c. salad   d. salt
31. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is ....
   a. expensive   b. terrible   c. old   d. fresh
32. You need to ...... eggs and milk before you make an omelette.
   a. chop   b. wash   c. beat   d. drink
33. Humans have 210 ...... in their bodies.
   a. legs   b. backs   c. skeletons   d. bones
34. Meat, fish and eggs all have ...... in them.
   a. sugar   b. protein   c. bones   d. skin
35. When I had a big lunch, I felt ....
   a. full   b. careful   c. empty   d. delicious
36. ...... products like milk and cheese help us to have strong bones.
   a. Diary   b. Dairy   c. Dry   d. Wet
37. The soup is cold. Shall we ...... it?
   a. cool   b. freeze   c. heat   d. wash
38. Which of these is not a dairy product?
   a. milk   b. rice   c. cheese   d. butter

39. Do you prefer to boil or .... your eggs?
a. wash b. pour c. serve d. fry
40. My grandparents always .... lunch in the dining room at 4 o'clock.
a. serve b. do c. wash d. play
41. .... is a vegetable that is very healthy.
a. Sugar b. Salt c. Spinach d. Apple
42. When Tamer is worried, he doesn't feel ....
a. big b. hungry c. salty d. cheap
43. A/An .... can be green, red or yellow.
a. pepper b. diet c. omelette d. spinach
44. Your .... is the kind of food that you eat every day.
a. work b. exercise c. diet d. homework
45. Eman never eats fast food or unhealthy ....
a. sleep b. exercise c. snacks d. restaurants
46. **A:** How about drinking tea in the garden? **B:** It's a good ....
a. idea b. food c. meal d. diet
47. Which of these do you use to make an omelette?
a. sugar b. rice c. eggs d. chocolate
48. Which of these is bad for your teeth?
a. sugar b. salt c. eggs d. vegetables
49. I don't put any salt on my food because I don't like .... food.
a. sweet b. big c. fast d. salty
50. If we don't use sugar to make food .... , what other things can we use?
a. sweet b. fast c. salty d. juicy
51. Samosas have .... vegetables inside them.
a. spicy b. careless c. bright d. fast
52. There is not protein in ....
a. meat b. milk c. fish d. apples
53. You need to .... the tomatoes into small pieces.
a. beat b. heat c. chop d. fry
54. .... isn't a dairy product.
a. Milk b. Cheese c. Rice d. Butter
55. We .... things when we put them in our mouths.
a. see b. smell c. taste d. hear
56. My dress is damaged, so my mother is .... it.
a. acting b. sewing c. painting d. playing
57. A .... is a funny drawing usually showing people or animals.
a. cartoon b. costume c. script d. carton
58. The children all wore funny .... to the family party. Ahmed was a firefighter!
a. contents b. costumes c. concerts d. customs
59. Which .... can you play?
a. device b. tool c. instrument d. concert

60. Mona can't answer the phone. She is doing her ....
a. scenery b. museum c. wake up d. make-up
61. The .... is fantastic in the play, you feel like you are in the mountains!
a. century b. scenery c. make-up d. costume
62. .... are clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else.
a. Costumes b. Scripts c. Cartoons d. Artists
63. A .... person is the person who can't hear.
a. blind b. fast c. tall d. deaf
64. My little sister started to .... after she fell and hurt her hand.
a. smile b. hide c. laugh d. cry
65. Lara always gives her grandmother a big .... when she sees her.
a. skill b. fire c. hug d. concert
66. A .... person is the person who is not able to see.
a. blind b. deaf c. wise d. stupid
67. A/An .... person is the person who is not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can.
a. excited b. delighted c. interested d. disabled
68. Don't .... your car outside the school.
a. bark b. land c. mark d. park
69. .... is the things that happen in a film.
a. Action b. Nation c. Review d. Picnic
70. The actor became a .... after he was in that famous film.
a. thief b. star c. park d. review
71. A .... park is a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc.
a. thin b. same c. scene d. theme
72. Let's go to the .... and fly our kites.
a. play b. park c. action d. cinema
73. It is nearly dark. Look, I can see a/an ....
a. star b. review c. sun d. picnic
74. The blind man is not able to .... the traffic lights.
a. hear b. smell c. see d. taste
75. A .... is the words for a play.
a. script b. trip c. photograph d. sculpture
76. .... people cannot walk.
a. Disabled b. Deaf c. Dumb d. Strong
77. This deaf boy is not able to .... me.
a. see b. talk c. walk d. hear
78. It's a long, blue.......... You wear it around your neck.
a. belt b. handbag c. sandals d. scarf
79. Are his clothes smart or ....?
a. greedy b. casual c. clever d. snowy
80. Do her clothes look .... or uncomfortable?
a. comfortable b. similar c. gold d. electric
81. In Ancient Egypt, clothes made of .... were popular.
a. oil b. plastic c. linen d. wheat

82. .... are jewellery that women wear around their necks.
a. Handbags b. Headscarves c. Galabeyas d. Necklaces
83. In Ancient Egypt, men and women didn't .... very differently.
a. call b. dress c. cost d. press
84. This cloth is made from a mixture of .... and cotton.
a. wood b. electricity c. plastic d. linen
85. Many people in Egypt work in the cotton ....
a. environment b. industry c. occasion d. electricity
86. If something is a special ...., it means it is an important event for you.
a. size b. environment c. hobby d. occasion
87. When you wear the same .... clothes as your sister, it means you can wear the same clothes.
a. size b. occasion c. price d. environment
88. .... are a large amount of plants that are grown to be sold.
a. Chemicals b. Baskets c. Crops d. Soils
89. Scientists used the new app to determine the .... of underground water.
a. invitation b. location c. conversation d. station
90. We have a .... for recycling in our house.
a. system b. wind c. rain d. solar
91. Don't drink water from a canal because it can be full of dangerous ....
a. vitamins b. proteins c. bacteria d. suitcases
92. I always listen carefully to my teacher and .... notes.
a. hunt b. talk c. take d. fill
93. If you .... an exam, you will feel proud.
a. fail b. fill c. succeed d. pass
94. .... study science three times a week during the school term.
a. Learners b. Farmers c. Trainers d. Cleaners
95. If you .... an exam, you will feel disappointed.
a. feel b. fail c. pass d. fall
96. When was the last time you .... disappointed?
a. felt b. fall c. filled d. fell
97. It was .... cloudy today. There wasn't much sun.
a. hardly b. never c. rarely d. mostly
98. Students need to .... what job they want to do.
a. travel b. fix c. repair d. decide
99. A sound that comes from your mouth is your ....
a. sound b. hear c. voice d. touch
100. What is the .... language of Egypt?
a. fashion b. occasional c. emotional d. national
101. A person who speaks lots of languages is ....
a. multilingual b. greedy c. lazy d. national
102. In Switzerland, you do not need to be an .... to speak many languages.
a. experiment b. expert c. experience d. expect

103. Some children are watching a film. We know the film is scary by their .... :
   a. eye contact b. facial expressions
   c. touch b. body language
104. Shady can hear .... inside the house .
   a. sounds b. smell c. touch d. taste
105. A blind man chooses the shirt by ....
   a. sounds b. sight c. smell d. touch
106. Some animals can .... sounds.
   a. connect b. feel c. copy d. spend
107. When you get tired, you can .... a break.
   a. make b. take c. win d. do
108. Successful persons always .... their time.
   a. manage b. damage c. test d. revise
109. I want to .... my English because I want to do well in my exams.
   a. move b. include c. improve d. prove
110. The Portuguese and Spanish languages are .... in many ways.
   a. connected b. disappointed
   c. disadvantages b. disorganised
111. A .... is a person who helps others without getting anything in return.
   a. learner b. thief c. volunteer d. worker
112. Medhat can't drive because he .... his driving test.
   a. passed b. succeeded c. failed d. won
113. The family were .... when they found their hotel room was next to a factory!
   a. disappointed b. proud c. happy d. pleased
114. The teacher thinks that all the students in our class will .... the test.
   a. sound b. lose c. pay d. pass
115. Many people in Switzerland are ....: they speak four languages.
   a. blind b. greedy c. careless d. multilingual
116. Our school needs .... to take part in the festival.
   a. volunteers b. thieves c. engines d. farmers

SB & WB Exercises Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When Huda visits Cairo, she .... some new shoes.
   a. would buy b. buying c. will buy d. bought
2. I think travelling in time ...... impossible.
   a. be b. would be c. were d. will be
3. Hassan won't use the internet to buy food when he ...... older.
   a. is b. was c. be d. are
4. If I .... everything online, I won't be able to go shopping with my friends.
   a. would buy b. buy c. will buy d. bought

5. I think there ...... no illnesses in the future.
   a. will be b. be c. won't be d. was
6. I asked my aunt to ...... a French internet article into Arabic.
   a. build b. check c. translate d. damage
7. When you go to bed, you ...... turn your phone off.
   a. won't b. will c. should d. have
8. You should tell a parent or teacher if you ...... worried about something.
   a. felt b. will feel c. are felt d. feel
9. When you feel tired, you ...... have a break.
   a. will b. shouldn't c. not d. should
10. You shouldn't watch videos on the internet if your head ....
    a. will hurt b. hurting c. hurts d. would hurt
11. If you ...... someone, you shouldn't make friends with them online.
    a. didn't know b. don't know c. not know d. won't know
12. If you see people being horrible online, you ...... tell your parents.
    a. should b. won't c. are d. shouldn't
13. If I go to the shops on Saturday, I ...... some new headphones.
    a. buys b. bought c. would buy d. will buy
14. If you want to get to the park quickly, you ...... the bus.
    a. would take b. take c. should take d. took
15. If you go to the Egyptian Museum, you ...... see Ali because he is in Luxor.
    a. should b. will c. won't d. don't
16. We won't go to the beach this weekend if it ...... very windy.
    a. is b. will be c. was d. should be
17. ...... it be cold if I travel to England?
    a. Will b. Does c. Is d. Was
18. When you ...... online games, you should check that you can't buy anything.
    a. played b. plays c. playing d. play
19. The tourists ...... the Pyramids if they are in Cairo for the first time.
    a. would visit b. are visited c. visited d. should visit
20. I'm not very hungry, but I'd like ...... olives, please.
    a. a lot b. a little c. any d. a few
21. My grandmother spends ...... time cooking in the kitchen.
    a. a lot of b. a few c. lots d. many
22. Has samosa got ...... sugar or salt in it?
    a. some b. any c. a lot d. many
23. She eats ...... fish because it helps to make her strong.
    a. any b. a lot of c. lots d. a lot
24. Leila likes ...... milk in her tea, but not very much.
    a. a few b. any c. a lot d. a little
25. She drinks ...... water.
    a. a little b. any c. many d. a few

26. She eats .... sweets.
 a. much b. a lot c. a few d. a little
27. If you meet other people, you .... stand 1.5 metres away from them.
 a. will b. should c. are d. have
28. There are .... people on the bus.
 a. a few b. much c. a lot d. any
29. Take the omelette and ...... it with salad.
 a. serving b. serves c. serve d. doesn't serve
30. ...... the eggs in the bowl and beat them with a fork.
 a. To put b. Puts c. Putting d. Put
31. ...... the beans in the water until it boils.
 a. Heat b. Heats c. Heated d. Heating
32. ...... some lemon juice over the hot beans.
 a. Pours b. Pour c. Poured d. Pouring
33. ...... some beans and put them in a pan.
 a. Wash b. Washing c. Washes d. To wash
34. Would you like ...... more beans?
 a. some b. lot c. lot of d. lots
35. .... the salad with the omelette.
 a. Serves b. Didn't serve c. Serve d. Serving
36. I'd like .... cheese, please.
 a. a lot b. a few c. many d. a little
37. "........ you like a sandwich?" "Thank you, but I'm really full."
 a. Are b. Were c. Would d. Had
38. We sometimes eat sfenj with .... tea.
 a. an b. some c. many d. a lot
39. Do you know .... to use a computer?
 a. what b. who c. how d. which
40. .... you able to speak French?
 a. Do b. Can c. Can't d. Are
41. **A:** .... you know how to play an instrument? **B:** Yes, I do.
 a. Do b. Are c. Is d. Does
42. Where did you get .... sunglasses?
 a. those b. that c. this d. then
43. Are you wearing your brown shoes or the black ....?
 a. once b. one c. two d. ones
44. Can I buy .... earrings in the window?
 a. an b. that c. this d. those
45. We went to the island in a/an .... boat.
 a. long, old, wooden b. wooden, long, old
 a. old, wooden, long b. old, long, wooden

46. We saw a / an .... statue in the museum.
 a. old, gold, big
 b. big, gold, old
 c. gold, big, old
 b. big, old, gold

47. .... market it amazing! There are so many cool things here.
 a. These b. That c. Those d. They

48. The man wore .... sunglasses.
 a. green, pretty, plastic
 b. pretty, plastic, green
 c. pretty, green, plastic
 b. plastic, green, pretty

49. Those earrings are the .... my mum gave me.
 a. ones b. none c. once d. one

50. These books are funny, but these .... are very boring!
 a. ones b. once c. one d. only

51. I love wearing my .... galabeya, because it is very cool in the summer.
 a. cotton, long, loose
 b. long, cotton, loose
 a. long, loose, cotton
 b. cotton, loose, long

52. .... your mobile phone when it is old?
 a. Are you recycling
 b. Do you recycle
 c. Did you recycle
 b. Are you going to recycle

53. What are you .... to do at the weekend?
 a. go b. going c. goes d. went

54. There.......... a drought.
 a. is going to be b. is being c. is going d. going

55. He is late so he .... the bus.
 a. isn't catching
 b. isn't going to catch
 a. catches
 b. caught

56. Where .... going to go for your next holiday?
 a. you are b. do you c. are you d. you do

57. How are you going to .... your English?
 a. improve b. improving c. improves d. improved

58. It's 1:55. Ayman .... to his 2 pm music lesson in five minutes.
 a. goes b. was going c. went d. is going

59. Judy is working on her project ....
 a. tomorrow b. yesterday c. in the past d. ago

60. My cousins .... at lunchtime tomorrow at 11 am.
 a. arrived b. are arriving c. arrives d. arriving

61. I .... forward to watching the stars in the desert this evening.
 a. looks b. looking c. am looking d. looked

62. Osama has a towel and is walking towards the sea. He is going .... swimming.
 a. to going b. to goes c. to go d. go

63. Injy is ten minutes from the station and the train goes in five minutes. Is she .... the train?
 a. catching b. going to catch c. catch d. caught

64. Don't use classroom 5 because some men .... it this afternoon.
a. is going to paint b. paints c. are painting d. paint
65. Summer will be hotter next month and the snow ....
a. is melting b. melts c. melted d. is going to melt
66. Look at the black clouds ! It's .... soon.
a. raining b. going to rain c. rains d. rained
67. It's raining heavily and the river ....
a. are flooding b. flood c. flooded d. is going to flood
68. When I .... young, I wanted to be a scientist.
a. am b. were c. was d. is
69. Ali is feeling ill, so I don't think he .... out this evening.
a. come b. will come c. came d. comes
70. Next year, I .... French classes.
a. am going to start b. starts c. started d. was starting
71. We .... to secondary school in two years.
a. went b. go c. will go d. goes
72. Hala .... like fruit, but now she loves it.
a. don't b. isn't c. won't d. didn't use to
73. At the moment, my brother .... in a bank.
a. worked b. is working c. will work d. work
74. I am going to take the exam to go to secondary school and I hope I ....!
a. will pass b. was passing c. passed d. passes
75. When I was three years old, I didn't .... to school.
a. use to going b. using go c. use to go d. used to going
76. About five million people .... in Alexandria.
a. are living b. live c. lives d. living
77. At the moment, lots of American tourists .... photographs of the castle.
a. take b. used to take c. are taking d. was taking
78. The horses were frightened and they .... to leave the building.
a. don't want b. won't want c. didn't want d. wants
79. Next year, they .... a new hotel in the park.
a. build b. built
c. were building d. are going to build
80. When my father was younger, he .... on his uncle's farm.
a. used to help b. helps c. is helping d. will help
81. It's a .... car.
a. beautiful, black, long b. black, beautiful, long
c. beautiful, long, black d. long, beautiful, black
82. Farida is running fast and she .... the race.
a. is going to win b. winning c. won d. win

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This machine won't ………… (being) able to fly very high.
2. I won't watch TV tonight if I ………… (went) out.
3. If I buy everything online, I ………… (not be able to) go shopping with my friends.
4. If we want to stop climate change, we should ………… (stopped) cutting down trees.
5. A:" ………… (Would) you like coffee?" B: "No, I don't. I prefer tea."
6. Wait a little. ………… (Not pour) the eggs now.
7. ………… (Adds) some water and salt to the beans.
8. ………… (Serving) it with warm bread.
9. ………… (Beats) two eggs in a bowl with little milk.
10. A firefighter ………… (are) able to stop fires.
11. Can you ………… (sewing)?
12. Maher is able ………… (play) musical instruments.
13. ………… (Able) you play football or tennis?
14. If you know how to cook, you ………… (work) in a restaurant.
15. The galabeya that I bought yesterday is ………… (the more comfortable).
16. It's a/an ………… (cotton, old, striped) scarf.
17. Look at that ………… (pretty, gold, long) necklace
18. It's a ………… (linen, beautiful, new, blue) dress.
19. They are ………… (more expensive) sunglasses in this shop.
20. Linen clothes are ………… (nicest).
21. It's a ………… (purple, nice, wool) jumper.
22. Which socks are you going to wear? These ………… (one) or those ones?
23. I like ………… (those) black, leather handbag! Is it new?
24. I bought ………… (this) shoes last week at the market.
25. He wore a ………… (long, cotton, red) galabeya.
26. The boy and his father are going to ………… (watching) a football match.
27. Mr Medhat is going to England in January. Why is he ………… (go) to take a big coat?
28. At the moment, we ………… (stay) in a small hotel near the lake.
29. Judy is visiting her grandma the day ………… (before) tomorrow.
30. Let's run, because the bus ………… (leave) in ten minutes' time.
31. She is walking in the mountains ………… (last) week.
32. She is visiting a museum in nine days' ………… (clock) .
33. What are you ………… (do) this afternoon?
34. After 85 minutes, it is the Blue team five and the Red team one. Who is ………… (win)?
35. What is the temperature going to ………… (is) this afternoon?
36. Lara is ………… (play) tennis at 4 o'clock tomorrow.
37. Fawzy ………… (not work) next week because he has a holiday.
38. I want to travel so I ………… (learn) lots of languages.
39. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I ………… (be) a scientist!

40. Ahmed .... (study) for his maths exam at the moment.
41. Last Tuesday, my uncle .... (fly) to Paris.
42. Sara .... (do) her homework when her friend visited her last night.
43. At the moment, I .... (do) an English exercise.
44. In the future, I think we .... (have) more lessons online.
45. They are .... (brown, leather, old) boots.

سؤال السادس فى ورقة الامتحان

Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

1- "Are you for or against online shopping?"

2- How do you think life will change in the future?

3- "Positive and negative sides of using technology"

4- "Some unusual food that you have tried"

5- "What you can eat to stay healthy"

6- "Your favourite meal"

7- "A review of a museum you know "The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art"

8-"Difficulties that disabled people have"

9- "A review of a film you have just watched (Jurassic World)"

10- "An advert for a mobile phone you want to sell"

11- "A special occasion you are going to"

Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

1- to your friend Fatma telling her about a problem you had with an online delivery

- **Your friend's email address is fatma77@gmail.com.**
- **Your name is Mariam and your email address is mariam80@hotmail.com.**

2- to your friend telling her about your favourite snack.

- **Your friend's name is Hanaa and her email address is hanaa77@gmail.com.**
- **Your name is Judy and your email address is judy88@hotmail.com.**

3- to your friend Salah about someone in your family that you are proud of.

- **Your name is Ramy and your email address is ramypost@gmail.com**
- **Your friend's email address is salah666@yahoo.com**

4- to your friend Emad inviting him to your birthday party.

- **Your name is Hassan and your email address is hassanpost@gmail.com**
- **Your friend's email address is emad666@yahoo.com**

5- to your friend Radwa to advise her about the problem with her sister.

- **Your name is Fatma and your email address is fatma345@gmail.com**
- **Your friend's name is Radwa and her email address is radwa898@yahoo.com**

6- to your friend telling her about communication with animals.

- **Your friend's name is Magda and her email address is magda898@yahoo.com.**
- **Your name is Ola and your email address is ola345@gmail.com.**

End of Term Practice

(مجاب عنه فى آخر الكتاب)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. What does Injy know how to cook?
   a. a few things b. many things c. only cakes
2. Why do they decide to make a carrot cake?
   a. Hala only eats vegetables.
   b. Hala likes healthy food.
   c. They find a recipe for it.
3. What will Amira do to make the cake?
   a. mix the flour and sugar b. add some eggs c. cut the carrots
4. How many nuts should they put on the cake?
   a. four b. fourteen c. ten

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Baher : Fares, I was wondering if you would like to come to my house today to work on our school project.

Fares : Great. What ❶ ....?

Baher : Around 7. We could research some information together.

Fares : ❷ ....?

Baher : I think it's better if we use the computer. Books won't give us all the information we need.

Fares : That's true. It's a ❸ .... to look at different websites.

Baher : Would you bring some paper?

Fares : Why do you want them? We are going to do online research!

Baher : ❹ ....

Fares : ❺ .... we need to take notes on important information.

3 Read the text. Then answer the questions:

When we taste food, our mouths tell us if the food is sweet, salty or spicy. But why do some people like some types of food and not others? There are many reasons. For example, some people don't like a type of food because they remember being ill after they ate it.

However, it is believed that you can change what you like. We often don't like unusual food because our brain doesn't understand it. So if you want to start liking

food that is healthy, such as green vegetables, you should eat it more often. Then your brain will recognise it. You can also train your brain not to like something. For example, many people who stopped putting sugar on things found, after a time, that they didn't like sweet things.

So if you like sweets and don't like vegetables, you should train your brain to eat more healthily!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do people often not like unusual food?

----

2. Why do you think people trained their brains not to like sugar?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Some people don't eat certain food because ....
   - a. they ate it before and liked it
   - b. they ate it and didn't like it.
   - c. they didn't try it before.
   - d. some people told them that it wasn't tasty.
4. What do you think the word recognise means?
   - a. know because you have seen it before
   - b. photograph
   - c. learn about
   - d. like
5. If you want to stop liking unhealthy food, ...
   - a. eat healthy foods instead.
   - b. stop eating this type of food.
   - c. eat this type of food often.
   - d. a and b

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you feel ill, you .... a doctor.
   - a. will see
   - b. should see
   - c. see
   - d. would see
2. My grandfather had an accident when he was younger and .... to walk very well.
   - a. can't
   - b. doesn't know
   - c. is not able
   - d. won't
3. Please don't put .... salt on my food. I don't like it.
   - a. many
   - b. a lot
   - c. a few
   - d. any
4. Tarek is not very hungry, so he only wants .... rice with his chicken.
   - a. a few
   - b. a little
   - c. a lot of
   - d. any

5. Mona knows .... draw. Let's ask her to draw us a picture.

   a. how b. to c. how to d. able to

6. This email is in Spanish. Are you able to .... it for me?

   a. translate b. taste c. say d. waste

7. Waleed can't come out this morning because he needs to .... for a delivery.

   a. buy b. pay c. save d. spend

8. People who do sport like to eat rice and pasta because they give them lots of ....

   a. fast food b. salt c. sugar d. energy

9. Before you fry food, you should .... some oil in a pan.

   a. make b. serve c. heat d. fire

10. Judy's little sister hurt her hand and started ....

    a. crying b. laughing c. hiding d. wondering

5 Read and complete with the correct form of these words:

1. Ramy's .... (invent) saves a lot of water and helps the environment.
2. The story was very slow and there was very little (act) ....
3. .... (Add) too much salt. It's unhealthy.
4. Reham is........... (visit) the museum next weekend. Her mum gave her tickets.

6 Choose one of the following:

- Write a short review of about 90-100 words on a book, film or a place you like.
- Write an email of about 90-100 words on an environmental problem you have near you, and how you could help solve this problem.

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Exams

Exam 1 Cairo - Matarya



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نصوص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Ali is .... than you.
   a. older b. younger c. old d. young
2. Ali dislikes playing ....
   a. sports b. the guitar c. music d. tricks
3. Ali is .... years older than you.
   a. 2 b. 16 c. 5 d. 6
4. Ali is interested in ....
   a. sports b. football c. music d. trick

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ramy wants to buy a pair of shoes.

Shoppkeeper : Can I help you?

Ramy : Yes, ❶ ....

Shopkeeper : ❷ ....?

Ramy : I'd like the black ones.

Shopkeeper : ❸ ....?

Ramy : Size 45.

Shopkeeper : Here you are. Do you like these ones?

Ramy : ❹ .... How much are they?

Shopkeeper : ❺ ....

Ramy : Thank you. Here's the money.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The Nile is the lifeblood of Egypt, as it helps Egypt in many ways and a lot of fields. First of all, it helps the Egyptian farmers to irrigate their lands and grow a lot of plants. So, all the delta depends on <u>it</u> to get a variety of plants, fruits and vegetables which, we all need to live on. Besides, the Nile is a way to move from a place to another. Ships and boats sail around the Nile to carry goods. Boats are also used for people to have fun and enjoy boat trips as a kind of entertainment. In addition, walking by the Nile makes you enjoy seeing the view which is wonderful.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

2. Do farmers benefit from the Nile?

....

3. What admires you most about the Nile?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**it**" refers to ....
   a. the Nile b. the delta c. Egypt d. variety
5. You can move from a place to another using .... on the Nile.
   a. fruits b. vegetables
   c. ships and boats d. goods
6. The Nile is the .... of Egypt.
   a. lifeblood b. blood c. live d. wood

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Do you think we'll .... a car that makes no pollution?
   a. prediction b. invent c. invention d. invite
2. He is .... to chocolate. It makes him ill.
   a. allergic b. addicted c. interested d. alert
3. Let's not go to the beach There are .... people there today.
   a. too much b. too many c. a few d. little
4. The .... is fantastic in the play. You feel like you are in the mountains.
   a. scenery b. reward c. review d. costumes
5. If a person is .... he is unable to see.
   a. deaf b. blind c. strong d. free

6. There will be a .... as it hasn't stopped raining for long.
   a. flood b. drought c. draught d. cloud
7. Sami isn't very thirsty, so he only wants .... water.
   a. a few b. a little c. too much d. lot
8. Soha knows .... cook meal.
   a. how b. how to c. able to d. too
9. Chesse, butter and milk are .... products.
   a. diary b. daily c. dairy d. salty
10. These trousers arevery big. Do you have smaller .... ?
   a. one b. ones c. once d. these

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. If you work too much, you .... (be) tired.
2. (Be) .... your brother able to drive a car?
3. I've invited everyone. I .... (have) a party next Friday.
4. It's a .... (linen, new, white) dress.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Online shopping"

....

....

....

....

....

Exam 2 Giza - Hawamdia

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali went to Luxor with his ....
   a. friends b. school c. family d. teacher
2. They stayed in a ....
   a. village b. hotel c. valley d. house
3. They stayed in Luxor for .... days.
   a. six b. three c. four d. seven
4. Ali went to Luxor ....
   a. last month b. last year c. last summer d. yesterday

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nora and Hana are talking about the next summer holiday.

Nora : How are you, Hana?

Hana : ❶ ....

Nora : Where will you go next summer holiday?

Hana : ❷ ....?

Nora : Sharm El-Sheikh! Who will go with you?

Hana : ❸ ....

Nora : ❹ ....?

Hana : We will travel by bus.

Nora : ❺ ....

Hana : We will stay in a hotel

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, Manar and her family decided to go on a holiday to Sharm El-Sheikh. **They** wanted to spend a nice time there. They travelled by bus. They arrived at 5 in the morning. They stayed at a good hotel which is **near** the sea. They enjoyed diving and swimming in the sea. They spent a great time. They did some shopping in the evening. After two weeks they went back home happily. It was a nice holiday.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

2. Where did Manar and her family go?

....

3. What do you think of Manar's holiday?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun **"They"** refers to ....

a. Manar b. Ali c. Maha d. Manar and her family

5. They went back home after .... weeks.

a. two b. three c. five d. four

6. The opposite of **near** is ....

a. big b. small c. far d. short

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's healthy to eat .... products.
   a. easy b. dairy c. fast d. slow
2. The blind are the people who can't ....
   a. walk b. hear c. see d. play
3. I can see dark clouds. It .... rain.
   a. will b. can't c. is d. is going to
4. Before going to the club, I wear my .... to do sports.
   a. necklace b. trainers c. skirt d. sandals
5. I took Adel's book .... mistake.
   a. at b. in c. by d. on
6. You should put .... in the bin.
   a. coral reefs b. wildlife c. solar panels d. rubbish
7. **A :** Is .... your pen? **B :** I found it under the desk.
   a. this b. they c. these d. those
8. Noha's favourite hobby is .... scenery.
   a. saving b. reading c. painting d. playing
9. .... are things you wear over your ears to listen to music.
   a. Headphones b. Mobile phones c. Apps d. Screens
10. .... two eggs in a bowl with little milk.
    a. Beats b. Beat c. Beating d. Beaten

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Would you like .... (any) tea?
2. If she is ill, she should .... (sees) a doctor.
3. I lost my socks, I need to buy new .... (one).
4. He .... (doesn't) able to use this computer.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Healthy food"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Exam 3 Al Kalubia - Benha



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar is in the school .... team.
   a. running b. football c. swimming d. athletics
2. When does Omar go running? ....
   a. In the evening b. In the afternoon
   c. In the morning d. At night
3. Omar eats good food to give him.......... .
   a. money b. energy c. advice d. vegetables
4. Omar eats.......... for lunch.
   a. meat b. fish c. chicken d. fruit

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Lamar and Talia are talking about the place they are going to.

Lamar : Good morning. Talia. Where are you going?
Talia : ❶ ....
Lamar : The Opera! Fantastic ❷ ....?
Talia : Because there is a show.
Lamar : ❸ ....?
Talia : It is about musical instruments.
Lamar : Can I come with you?
Talia : ❹ ....
Lamar : ❺ ....
Talia : We should meet at 9.00 before the show starts.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm Karim. I have got two brothers and three sisters. My father is a farmer. My mother is a housewife. She spends all her time cooking and cleaning the house. My father and mother work day and night to help us live happily. **They** bring us up to serve our country Egypt. We live in a nice house on the farm. My father grows a lot of vegetables. He also keeps some animals and birds. In my school, I have got a lot of friends. My school day begins at eight o'clock in the morning. After school, I usually help my father. I love looking after animals and birds. I like to study farming when I grow up.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How many people are there in Karim's family?

....

2. What does the passage talk about?

....

3. Why do you think Karim likes to study farming?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word "**farming**" means ....

a. weaving b. growing crops c. making clothes d. playing music

5. Karim's mother works..........

a. in a school b. at home c. in a bank d. in a company

6. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to

a. Karim's brothers b. Karim's uncles c. Karim's sisters d. Karim's parents

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The garden was full of .... and fascinating flowers.

a. active b. ugly c. funny d. colorful

2. .... you able to speak French? Yes, I am.

a. Can b. Were c. Are d. Do

3. The shops are very busy today. There are too many ....

a. assistants b. customers c. shopkeepers d. sellers

4. I read a film .... to know what the film is about.

a. review b. view c. interview d. revision

5. You must answer all .... questions.

a. this b. that c. then d. these

6. Wind .... generate electricity for the local community.

a. alarms b. machines c. turbines d. panels

7. My father likes to wear a suit on .... occasions.

a. private b. special c. general d. public

8. My mother was worried .... me when I came home late.

a. about b. of c. with d. for

9. You should .... sure that you eat all types of healthy food.
   a. say b. take c. do d. make
10. Many young people spend much time .... their social media.
   a. looking b. playing c. checking d. wasting

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You should .... (turning off) the lights when you go to bed.
2. I don't like this tea. There is too .... (many) sugar in it.
3. I don't want the blue pen, I want the red .... (ones).
4. If Heba does the housework, her mother .... (reward) her.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Plans for your next holiday"

....

....

....

....

....

Exam 4 Al Menofia - Ashmoun

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The museum has lots of .... from different times in history.
   a. bags b. cars c. books d. clothes
2. The museum is in ....
   a. Fayoum b. Cairo c. Tanta d. Giza
3. I thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were ....
   a. boring b. old c. fantastic d. bad
4. I went to the museum ....
   a. last month b. last year c. last week d. yesterday

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona met Salma who is going to the sports centre.

Mona : Where are you going, Mona?

Salma : ❶ ....

Mona : ❷ ....?

Salma : It's next to the train station.

Mona : What sport do you play there?

Salma : ❸ ....

Mona : ❹ ....?

Salma : No, it's not hard to do karate.

Mona : How often do you go there?

Salma : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm a student in the second year at a prep schoool. My school is clean and beautiful. <u>It</u> is the biggest one in the town. I like it very much for many reasons. Firstly, I'm lucky to have good teachers, specially the teachers of English. Secondly, I can practise my hobbies in my school such as drawing, reading in its big library, playing music and playing football. Thirdly, all the students and I can learn how to use the computer and the internet. My school day starts at 8 o'clock inthe morning and ends at 2 o'clock in the afternoon. Students don't go to school on Friday or Saturday every week. In short, I'm very proud of my school.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why does the writer think himself lucky?

....

2. What are the hobbies that the writer can practise in this school?

....

3. What does the underlined word <u>"It"</u> refer to?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer's school is a ....

a. primay school
b. prep school
c. secondary school
d. school for KG

5. The writer and all students spend .... hours at school every day.

a. 2 b. 4 c. 8 d. 6

6. The students don't go to school on ....

a. Friday b. Monday c. Thursday d. Tuesday

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a ....

a. train b. plane c. motorbike d. ferry

2. Do you think there will be many .... in your English homework?

a. corrections b. apps c. turns d. tools

3. .... means very nice to eat.

a. Sour b. Dirty c. Delicious d. Polluted

4. Meat, cheese and nuts have............ in them.

a. salt b. protein c. sugar d. milk

5. There were .... of important and normal Egyptian people in the museum.

a. portraits b. plays c. cartoon d. pottery

6. This...... is made of expensive leather.

a. handbag b. earrings c. necklace d. glass

7. .... away old phones can be bad for the environment.

a. Putting b. Throwing c. Reducing d. Making

8. Farida is going .... the race.

a. win b. to won c. winning d. to win

9. It's a .... skirt.

a. beautiful, new, blue b. blue, beautiful, new

c. beautiful, blue, new d. blue, new, beautiful

10. Wash some beans and .... them in a pan.

a. puts b. to put c. putting d. put

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mona will look online for a new phone when she .... (get) home.

2. Please, ... (pouring) some tea into my cup.

3. I have four pairs of shoes, buy my trainers are my favourite .... (one's).

4. Look at the clouds! It .... (rain) soon.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Modern technology"

Exam 5 Al Sharkia - Diarb Negm

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Make sure you have a .... diet.
   a. balanced b. boiled c. fried d. grilled
2. Eat some of all the .... of food.
   a. seeds b. tastes c. types d. smells
3. To be healthy, you have to .... well.
   a. play b. sleep c. study d. fry
4. Don't .... too much to be healthy.
   a. worry b. bring c. practise d. sleep

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Seif is asking Omar about his opinion about tourism.

Seif : ❶ ...., Omar ?

Omar : In my view, it's very important .

Seif : ❷ ....?

Omar : Because it brings our country a lot of money.

Seif : How should we treat tourists?

Omar : ❸ ....

Seif : What else can we do?

Omar : ❹ ....

Seif : New hotels! You are right. Do it provide a lot of jobs?

Omar : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

English is an international language. Millions of people are learning it all over the world. Students use it to communicate with other speakers. This means they have to be able to understand each other. Students have studied English for more than 90 years in Egyptian schools. They read English books. Teachers help their students to **develop** their language skills of listening, speaking, reading and writing. Tour guides use English to communicate with tourists who visit Egypt. To surf the internet or use the computer, we should learn English.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

   ....

2. What does the underlined pronoun **"it"** refer to?

   ....

3. Why do you think millions of people learn English all over the world?

   ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word "**develop**" can be replaced by ....
   a. clear b. remove c. improve d. prove
5. Students use English to .... with others.
   a. help b. communicate c. stay d. play
6. There are .... skills in English.
   a. one b. two c. three d. four

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't use too much social media or you will be .... to them.
   a. worried b. addicted c. useful d. allergic
2. Writing .... of films needs special skills.
   a. sculptures b. scripts c. names d. views
3. We always fry eggs in a ....
   a. pin b. bin c. pan d. fan
4. The deaf girl isn't able to ....
   a. talk b. see c. hear d. walk
5. You can't wear my shirt, we aren't the same ....
   a. colour b. size c. age d. height
6. Cars and buses .... much pollution.
   a. prepare b. cause c. reduce d. stop

7. Your marks are good. I .... why you are sad.
   a. wander b. agree c. expect d. wonder
8. Where did you get .... sunglasses?
   a. those b. this c. that d. there
9. It is black and cloudy. It .... rain.
   a. will b. won't c. is going to d. are going to
10. If you feel tired, you .... have a rest.
   a. shouldn't b. should c. won't d. shall

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sama knew how .... (answer) the question.
2. Youssef bought a .... (blue, new, big) car.
3. Ola, ... (chopping) vegetables into small pieces.
4. Let's not go to the beach. There are .... (a few) people there today.

E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words on:

To your friend Ahmed to tell him about "Pollution"
Your name is Seif and your email address is seif@gmail.com
Your friend's email address is ahmed@gmail.com.

....

....

....

Exam 6 Al Dakahlia - Mansoura

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is a lot of air............ where the speaker lives.
   a. pollution b. rubbish c. paper d. people
2. The speaker's .... never recycle their rubbish.
   a. friends b. brother's c. sisters d. neighbours
3. In the speaker's view, it is important to .... rubbish.
   a. swim b. live c. recycle d. walk
4. We should take .... and glass out of the bin and recycle them.
   a. water b. juice c. air d. paper

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking to a tourist who will stay three weeks in Egypt.

Ahmed : Welcome to Egypt. Where are you from?

Tourist : ❶ ....

Ahmed : ❷ ....?

Tourist : I'll stay here for 3 weeks.

Ahmed : I'm sure you will enjoy your stay in Egypt.

Tourist : ❸ ....?

Ahmed : You can visit Luxor and Aswan.

Tourist : How can I go there?

Ahmed : ❹ ....

Tourist : Thank you for your help.

Ahmed : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Using technology is great. Most people nowdays are addicted to their mobiles and laptops. They use them to read the news, to study, to do their projects, and to have fun. Technology makes life easier and saves time; just stay at home and hold your mobile. But..!! Many people use their mobiles late at night, so **they** don't get enough sleep. Also, spending a lot of time on screens causes headache and eye problems. Moreover, playing video games and talking to friends on social media for hours stops you from doing sports or going out with friends. In my opinion, technology is not good all the time.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What do people use mobiles for?

....

2. Do you like using technology? Why / Why not?

....

3. Why shouldn't we spend much time on screens?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "they" refers to ....
   a. mobiles b. screens c. people d. games
5. The underlined word "addicted" means ....
   a. always use b. never use c. never need d. feel worried about
6. The text is mainly about ....
   a. social media b. projects c. eye problems d. technology

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If I go to the shops on Sunday, I .... some new headphones.
   a. buy b. bought c. am buying d. will buy
2. Which of these isn't a dairy product?
   a. milk b. cheese c. rice d. butter
3. You should never drink sea water because there is .... salt in it.
   a. not enough b. too many c. too much d. a few
4. Mr and Mrs Osama live in a .... flat in Cairo.
   a. big, old, traditional b. old, big, traditional
   c. traditional, old, big d. old, traditional, big
5. I'm .... to fish. When I eat it, it makes me ill.
   a. addicted b. popular c. allergic d. ready
6. Teenagers shouldn't spend too much time on .... media.
   a. society b. social c. ancient d. community
7. I need a new .... to get to the Halloween party.
   a. costume b. uniform c. email d. custom
8. A/An .... is a large group of musicians who play different instruments together.
   a. concert b. orchestra c. opera d. staff
9. We love to watch the beautiful .... from the train windows.
   a. scenery b. pictures c. portrait d. photograph
10. Farmers use .... to protect their crops from insects.
   a. soil b. chemicals c. climate d. industry

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Nora .... (play) tennis at 4 o'clock tomorrow.
2. I hope there .... (is) less air pollution in the future.

3. Don't .... (forgot) to do your homework.
4. .... (Be) you able to do sports?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Healthy food"

....
....
....

Exam 7 Al Gharbia - Tanta

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nadia is ....
   a. deaf b. blind c. brave d. weak
2. Nadia likes ....
   a. music b. food c. sport d. juice
3. Nadia plays the ....
   a. guitar b. violin c. piano d. oud
4. I am .... of Nadia.
   a. sad b. angry c. annoyed d. proud

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is asking Hassan about his holiday.

Ahmed : Where did you go on holiday?

Hassan : ❶ ....

Ahmed : ❷ .... ?

Hassan : Because I like the weather of Alexandria.

Ahmed : ❸ .... ?

Hassan : I came back on Friday.

Ahmed : Did you take any photos?

Hassan : ❹ ....

Ahmed : Can I come with you the next time?

Hassan : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My grandfather is my hero. He was born in a village to a poor family in January 1952. But he worked hard at school and he went to the university. He was always interested in helping people and he became a doctor. I **admire** him because he has stopped working as a doctor, but **he** hasn't stopped helping people. He teaches in the village school . He has taught many children who are now at the university. When he was a doctor, he helped poor patients for free. Furthermore he gave them medicine without taking any money. He is really a great man.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

2. What is the writer's granfather interested in?

....

3. Why do you think the writer's grandfather is a great man?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "admire" means the same as............. .
   a. hate b. love c. dislike d. live
5. The writer's grandfather worked as ....
   a. doctor b. pilot c. mechanic d. farmer
6. The underlined word "he" refers to the ....
   a. uncle b. brother c. father d. grandfather

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They .... loudly because they were happy.
   a. slept b. spent c. invented d. laughed
2. What .... if there is a new student at my class?
   a. should I do b. I should do
   c. I should doing d. should I doing
3. You should eat healthy food to get the .... you need.
   a. juicy b. spell c. diary d. energy
4. Can I have .... rice please?
   a. few b. some c. any d. many
5. I asked my elder brother to............. me a musical instrument.
   a. advise b. recommend c. do d. sew
6. When he scored his third goal, he was ....
   a. bored b. sad c. excited d. unhappy

7. I don't know .... do this exercise.
   a. what to b. how for c. who to d. how to
8. I cover my bed with a nice .... made of linen.
   a. scarves b. belt c. skirt d. sheet
9. My mobile doesn't work so I asked someone to .... it.
   a. decay b. repat c. repair d. recycle
10. .... are used to produce electricity.
   a. Solar panels b. Coral reefs
   c. Climate changes d. Mobile phones

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This dress is the .... (ones) I like.
2. He bought a .... (black, leather, big) bag.
3. When Hoda .... (visit) Cairo, she will buy new shoes.
4. Don't .... (arrived) late.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Online shopping"

....

....

....

....

Exam 8 Kafr El-Sheikh - East Administration

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar was born in ....
   a. 1994 b. 1949 c. 2002 d. 1990
2. A\An .... attacked him when he was 22.
   a. whale b. shark c. snake d. octopus
3. Omar lost his ....
   a. arm b. head c. fingers d. leg
4. Omar is an important sports ....
   a. doctor b. coach c. engineer d. scientist

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Tourist : Excuse me. Can I ask you some questions?

Soha : ❶ ....

Tourist : ❷ ....?

Soha : The Pyramids are in Giza.

Tourist : Are they far from here?

Soha : ❸ ....

Tourist : How can I go there?

Soha : ❹ ....

Tourist : ❺ ....?

Soha : The ancient Egyptians built them.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Fathi works as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our local beach. At the weekend, they go to the beach and **pick up** the rubbish that people leaves behind. They always pick up lots of plastic bottles. Fatma visits a home for old people who are disabled so it's difficult for their families to look after them. She goes there after school on Thursday. The volunteers visit and talk to a special person. The woman who they visit is called Nadia. She worked as a nurse when she was young and Fatma loves talking to **her**. Ahmed works for a charity which looks after animals that are old and cannot work. People donate money to the charity to buy food for the animals. They help to feed the animals and look after them.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

2. What's your opinion about charity?

....

3. Why do people donate money to the charity which Ahmed works for?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**her**" refers to ....

a. Fatma b. Aya c. Nadia d. Sara

5. It isn't nice for people to .... on the beach

a. pick up rubbish b. help to clean
c. leave rubbish d. pick up plastic bottles.

6. The underlined word **pick up** means to .... something.
   a. leave   b. collect   c. donate   d. lend

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I would like to .... a machine to tidy my room.
   a. invite   b. invent   c. travel   d. disappear
2. These bowls are made of ....
   a. oil   b. flour   c. cloth   d. clay
3. That's the city .... I was born.
   a. when   b. why   c. where   d. which
4. .... means very nice to eat.
   a. Sour   b. Dirty   c. Delicious   d. Healthy
5. What .... do you think musicians need?
   a. money   b. skills   c. time   d. power
6. Public libraries .... to encourage people to read and borrow books.
   a. give   b. bring   c. aim   d. catch
7. My teacher is very .... He never gets nervous.
   a. brave   b. patient   c. slow   d. ugly
8. Don't drink water from the sea because it can be full of ....
   a. salt   b. nutrients   c. sugar   d. light
9. These trainers are much better than the .... I had before.
   a. on   b. ones   c. first   d. one
10. You can .... plastic bottles instead of throwing them away.
   a. produce   b. make   c. reuse   d. eat

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. My uncle .... (have to) get up early every day.
2. Maher eats .... (a few) food. He wants to lose weight.
3. .... (That) are my father's glasses.
4. She will not watch TV if she .... (be) too busy.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"My family"

....
....
....

Exam 9 Isamilia - Isamilia



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ramy is ....
   a. deaf b. blind c. brave d. weak
2. Ramy likes ....
   a. music b. food c. sport d. juice
3. Ramy is in the school ....
   a. museum b. theater c. orchestra d. team
4. I'm .... of Ramy.
   a. sad b. angry c. annoyed d. proud

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nancy and Soha are talking about the next summer holiday.

Nancy : How are you, Soha?

Soha : ❶ ....

Nancy : Where will you go the next summer holiday?

Soha : ❷ ....

Nancy : Fayed! Who will you go with?

Soha : ❸ ....

Nancy : ❹ ....?

Soha : We will travel by bus.

Nancy : ❺ ....?

Soha : We will stay in a hotel.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My grandfather is my hero. He was born in a village to a poor family in January 1950. But he worked hard at school and he went to the university. He was always interested in helping people and he became a doctor. I **admire** him because he has stopped as a doctor, but **he** hasn't stopped helping people. He teaches in the school village. When he was a doctor, he helped poor patients for free. Furthermore, he gave them medicine without any money. He is really a great man.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

2. What's the writer's grandfather interested in?

3. Where was the writer's grandfather born?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "he" refers to ....
 a. uncle b. brother c. father d. grandfather
5. The underlined pronoun "**admire**" means ....
 a. hate b. dislike c. love d. teach
6. The writer's grandfather's family was ....
 a. poor b. rich c. low d. fast

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Watermelons and oranges are ....
 a. juicy b. spicy c. salty d. tasteless
2. If a person is ...., he isn't able to hear.
 a. blind b. deaf c. free d. strong
3. I don't like this soup. There is too .... salt in it.
 a. many b. enough c. few d. much
4. .... is not a dairy product.
 a. Milk b. Cheese c. Rice d. Butter
5. Did you .... Aswan last year?
 a. visited b. visit c. visits d. visiting
6. I don't want .... coffee.
 a. any b. enough c. some d. a few
7. "............" means to change words into a different language.
 a. Wait b. Spend c. Translate d. Waste
8. Many famous .... act in that new film. I recommend it.
 a. moons b. writers c. reviewers d. stars
9. I like to wear my .... on the bus to listen to music.
 a. helmet b. headphones c. glasses d. jacket
10. I am .... to fish. When I eat it, it makes me ill.
 a. allergic b. addicted c. read d. popular

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Don't .... (touching) electric wires.
2. If you feel ill, you .... (see) a doctor.

3. .... (Be) you able to plan your day well?
4. How about .... (play) football?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Shopping online"

....

....

Exam 10 Alexandria - El Montazh



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. At the weekend, we go to the .... and pick up the rubbish.
   a. cinema b. teacher c. school d. beach
2. I work as a .... for a charity.
   a. cleaner b. doctor c. volunteer d. market
3. We always pick up plastic ....
   a. bottles b. chairs c. tables d. pots
4. The charity helps to .... our local beach.
   a. play b. eat c. clean d. pick

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is helping a tourist to get to the Pyramids.

Tourist : Excuse me, can I ask you some questions?
Ahmed : ❶ ....
Tourist : ❷ .... ?
Ahmed : The Pyramids are in Giza.
Tourist : Are they far from here?
Ahmed : ❸ ....
Tourist : How can I get there?
Ahmed : ❹ ....
Tourist : ❺ .... ?
Ahmed : The Ancient Egyptians built them.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We have a big garden around our house. There is a lot of grass **there**. Now it's September and the grass is long and thick. I also have the trees in the garden. There is a young lemon tree which is very small. It doesn't have any fruit. There is also a peach tree in the garden.

There aren't many peaches this year because of the cold weather in April and May. The third tree is an apple tree. Apples always grow well in this area and the tree is full of big green apples. Tomorrow, I want to make a big apple **pie**. There are the red roses and we have other flowers that are green and yellow. There are two animals in the garden, a beautiful white cat and a friendly dog.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

----

2. Do you like fruits? Why / Why not?

----

3. What does the underlined word "**there**" refer to?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. There are .... trees in the garden.
   a. two   b. ten   c. one   d. three
5. The underlined word "**pie**" is a kind of ....
   a. roses   b. bread   c. trees   d. dessert
6. There are red .... and flowers.
   a. roses   b. dogs   c. cats   d. people

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Maya is very happy because she is going to .... in a play next Summer.
   a. add   b. act   c. make   d. save
2. People like travelling by plane because it is ....
   a. tiring   b. traditional   c. boring   d. comfortable
3. Children should .... eating sweets because they are unhealthy.
   a. encourage   b. increase   c. reduce   d. suggest
4. We .... food with our tongue.
   a. taste   b. hear   c. smell   d. see
5. Pollution isn't only one problem, but it .... many problems.
   a. causes   b. saves   c. do   d. help

6. Workers have to .... their skills to get good jobs.
   a. improve b. communicate c. connect d. prove
7. It is important to .... sure that you closed the doors well before leaving your house.
   a. make b. decide c. take d. send
8. Do you know .... this mobile?
   a. fix b. how fix c. how to fixing d. how to fix
9. Would you like .... cold orange juice?
   a. few b. lots c. any d. some
10. When it rains, you .... take your umbrella.
   a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. need

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. My mother can .... (making) a cake.
2. That pink jumper is the .... (ones) I bought last week.
3. The students .... (do) an exam next Sunday. It's arranged.
4. Where did you .... (went) last week?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How technology is useful"

....

....

....

Exam 11 Assiut - Manfalout

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker loves ....
   a. sports b. social media c. social sports d. social games
2. The speaker loves watching .... online.
   a. matches b. lessons c. videos d. swimming
3. The speaker talks to his friends on the ....
   a. TV b. phone c. internet d. radio
4. The speaker loves having a/an .... phone.
   a. old b. new c. ancient d. modern

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sally and Marwa are talking about online technology.

Sally : What are you reading about, Marwa?

Marwa : ❶ ....

Sally : Are you interested in technology?

Marwa : ❷ ....

Sally : ❸ ....?

Marwa : I think the mobile phone is the most important invention.

Sally : ❹ ....

Marwa : ❺ ....?

Sally : Because it helps us do research and get lots of information.

Marwa : I agree with you.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

If you want to be healthy, you should eat all types of food. We need to drink eight glasses of water every day. Dairy products like milk and cheese help us to have **strong** bones. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein in them and we need protein to have a strong body.

A lot of sugar is bad for your teeth. Examples of healthy snacks are fruit and nuts. People need to eat five to ten pieces of fresh fruit and vegetables every day. People often like fast food although **it** has lots of fat sugar in it. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is fresh.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How many glasses of water do we need every day?

....

2. Give examples of healthy snacks.

....

3. Why do you think we need dairy products?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined prononoun **it** refers to ....

a. snack b. protein c. milk d. fast food

5. The word .... is the opposite of the underlined word strong.

a. serious b. weak c. active d. lazy

6. Meat is an important source of ....
a. protein b. carbohydrates c. salt d. vitamin

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I use my .... to listen to music without anyone hearing it.
a. shorts b. glasses c. headphones d. trousers
2. My dad usually drinks tea with .... milk.
a. a little b. a few c. many d. few
3. Can you .... words from English into Arabic?
a. trick b. continue c. build d. translate
4. When I .... much money, I will buy a car.
a. won b. will win c. win d. wins
5. I like my food .... that's why I add a lot of pepper.
a. sweet b. spicy c. juicy d. salty
6. Mum made lunch and .... it with hot soup.
a. saved b. served c. chopped d. added
7. Ola paints beautiful ....
a. sculptures b. portraits c. photographs d. instruments
8. One day, scientists will .... treat all diseases.
a. be able b. can c. able d. know how to
9. Their car is bigger and more .... than ours.
a. comfortable b. serious c. tiny d. loose
10. Salma uses her .... to text her friends and send emails.
a. camera b. mobile phone c. drone d. remote control

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you feel sick, you should .... (seeing) a doctor.
2. Would you like to have .... (a) juice?
3. (Are) .... Soha able to do the housework every day?
4. It's a .... (black, nice, leather) jacket.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A review of a book you have read"

....
....
....

Exam 12 Fayoum - Sennoris



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We have .... air pollution in our country.
   a. a lot of b. little c. few d. many
2. .... can reduce pollution.
   a. Traffic b. Trees c. Cars d. planes
3. Trees are good for the ....
   a. pollution b. houses c. traffic d. environment
4. People should .... trees.
   a. reduce b. cut c. plant d. have

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Khalid is talking to Amir who bought some clothes last weekend.

Khalid : Hi, Amir. Where did you go last weekend?
Amir : ❶ ....
Khalid : Shopping! ❷ .... ?
Amir : I bought a T-shirt and a pair of sunglasses.
Khalid : ❸ .... ?
Amir : I went with my brother and sister.
Khalid : What did your brother buy?
Amir : ❹ ....
Khalid : What colour are your brother's shoes?
Amir : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Healthy food is really important for everyone. It helps us grow well and gives us energy. If you want to be healthy, you should eat all types of food. We need to drink much water every day. Dairy products like milk and cheese are healthy. **They** give us calcium. It helps us to have strong bones. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein in them. We need protein to have strong body. Fruits and nuts are healthy snacks. People need to eat fresh fruit and vegetables every day. Fit people are so interested in what they eat. The more healthy food they eat, the **fitter** they will be. Bad habits of having food are the main reasons of health problems nowadays.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

2. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

3. Why do you think healthy food is so important for us?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word filter can be replaced by ....
   a. weaker b. stronger c. smaller d. bigger
5. We can stop some health problems by having .... food.
   a. expensive b. cheap c. healthy d. fatty
6. Dairy products gives us ....
   a. calcium b. carbohydrates c. olives d. fit

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There's a/an .... on this phone which tells me the weather in my city.
   a. app b. screen c. battery d. charger
2. Sea water is ....
   a. sweet b. spicy c. juicy d. salty
3. My dress is damaged, so my mother is .... it.
   a. acting b. sewing c. painting d. playing
4. In ancient Egypt, clothes made from .... were popular.
   a. oil b. plastic c. linen d. wheat
5. How many .... do you speak?
   a. jobs b. subjects c. sports d. languages
6. Can you .... a script for the school show?
   a. write b. come c. play d. paint
7. .... my point of view, too much of technology can give you headaches.
   a. From b. In c. By d. On
8. If Huda visits Cairo, she .... some new shoes.
   a. would buy b. buying c. will buy d. bought
9. Leila likes .... milk in her tea, but not very much.
   a. a lot b. a little c. any d. a few
10. These earrings are the .... my mum gave me last summer.
   a. one b. ones c. once d. won

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. It's a .... (old, short, gold) necklace.
2. I'm going to .... (helps) my father.

3. .... "To chop" the tomatoes, but don't chop them too small.
4. Do you know how .... (paint) a scenery?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Are you for or against shopping online?"

....

....

....

Exam 13 Beni-Suef



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hany likes the ....
   a. shopping b. desert c. noise d. clothes
2. The desert is always .... at night.
   a. noisy b. cold c. hot d. heavy
3. Hany always wears .... clothes at night.
   a. heavy b. yellow c. light d. green
4. Hany likes the desert because it is ....
   a. worse b. quiet c. hot d. noisy

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona and Huda are talking about food.

Mona : Can I ask you some questions about food?
Huda : ❶ ....
Mona : What is your favourite food?
Huda : ❷ ....
Mona : Why do we need to eat well?
Huda : ❸ ....
Mona : Energy! ❹ ....
Huda : We need energy to be able to do many things.
Mona : ❺ ....
Huda : We should eat healthy food to keep healthy.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm Kareem. I have got two brothers and three sisters. My father is an old farmer. My mother is a housewife. She spends all her time cooking and cleaning the house. My father and mother work day and night to help us live happily. **They** bring us up to love our country Egypt. We live in a nice house on the farm. My father grows a lot of vegetables. He also keeps some animals and birds. In my school, I have got a lot of friends. My school day begins at eight o'clock in the morning. After school, I usually help my father. I love looking after animals and birds. I like to study **farming** because I want to grow the main crops on our farm.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How many persons are there in Kareem's family?
2. Why do you think Kareem like to study farming?
3. What does the passage talk about?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word "**farming**" means ....
   a. weaving b. growing crops c. making clothes d. playing music
5. Kareem's mother works at ....
   a. home b. school c. bank d. company
6. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ....
   a. Kareem's brothers b. Kareem's parents c. Kareem's friends d. Kareem's uncle

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandmother's hobby is to sew ....
   a. customs b. costumes c. pottery d. painting
2. Don't use too much social media or you will be .... to them.
   a. addicted b. worried c. useful d. allergic
3. I can't find my watch. It's ....
   a. hurt b. disappeared c. sent d. found
4. Nurses help .... to get better at hospitals.
   a. medicines b. patients c. players d. wards
5. I .... a new phone online yesterday.
   a. saved b. made c. ordered d. took

6. I read a .... of that book. It was very good.
   a. revision b. revenge c. review d. letter
7. Spinach is a kind of ....
   a. fruit b. snacks c. vegetables d. fats
8. Mona doesn't have many friends. She only has .... friends.
   a. much b. a few c. any d. a little
9. Would you like .... cake, Reham? - No, thanks.
   a. any b. some c. many d. plenty
10. .... it be cold if I travel to England?
   a. Will b. Does c. Is d. Did

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sama .... (not travel) abroad when she leaves school.
2. Can your brother .... (taken) some photographs?
3. I will wear a .... (dress, blue, linen, new) for the party.
4. Why don't you wear .... (these) nice scarf?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your favourite subject"

....

....

....

Exam 14 Minya - Beni- Mzar

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mai is .... years old.
   a. 12 b. 13 c. 15 d. 16
2. She is in .... school.
   a. primary b. secondary c. elementary d. preparatory
3. The school is .... Mai's house.
   a. far b. near c. old d. new
4. Mai likes .... best.
   a. maths b. English c. history d. Arabic

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Rana and Jana are talking about their summer holiday.

Rana : Where are you going to spend the next summer holiday?

Jana : ❶ ....

Rana : ❷ ....?

Jana : We are going to Alex by train.

Rana : Did you visit Alex before?

Jana : ❸ ....

Rana : ❹ ....?

Jana : We are going to stay for two weeks.

Rana : I hope you will enjoy your time there.

Jana : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We have so much technology now. There are televisions, laptops, mobile phones and so on. Mobile phones and other items of technology are sometimes **harmful** to our health. Scientists think mobile phones should be used as little as possible, and it is better to be careful about using them. Mobile phones are bad for children. In fact, research shows that mobile phones might kill more people than smoking. Wi-Fi technology may cause headaches as well.

It is better to have no electronic devices in your bedroom. But if you can't go without **them**, at least make sure you don't have a computer or mobile phone in your bedroom, or at least make sure that they are turned off.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of this passage?

....

2. What may Wi-Fi technology cause?

....

3. Do you think that technology is useful?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. .... aren't examples of technology.

a. Televisions b. Computers c. Books d. Phones

5. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....

a. televisions b. computers c. phones d. electronic devices

6. The word "harmful" means very ....

a. bad b. good c. nice d. great

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There's a/an .... on this phone which tells me the weather in my city.
   a. app b. screen c. battery d. charger
2. My father drinks much coffee. He is .... to it.
   a. damaged b. broken c. addicted d. hated
3. .... food is prepared quickly and is usually unhealthy.
   a. Helpful b. Fast c. Slow d. Famous
4. We usually eat some .... between meals.
   a. snail b. smoke c. snacks d. snakes
5. Salma plays the violin in a / an ....
   a. character b. orchestra c. math d. team
6. A .... person is the person who is not able to see.
   a. blind b. deaf c. wise d. stupid
7. It's a beautiful new, blue, ... dress.
   a. wooden b. electric c. plastic d. linen
8. If she has a headache, she .... see a doctor.
   a. have b. should c. is d. was
9. There aren't .... students in the classroom.
   a. any b. some c. a little d. much
10. Salma knows how to .... well.
    a. cooks b. cook c. cooked d. cooking

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Doesn't) make noise in the library.
2. I bought .... (this) shoes last week at the market.
3. The sky is cloudy! It .... (rain).
4. Ali .... (listen) to music at the moment.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your favourite food"

....

....

....

Exam 15

Sohag



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Shopping online is ....
   a. cheap b. expensive c. great d. bad
2. While shopping online, you can stay ....
   a. nowhere b. at home c. in the club d. at a shop
3. Shopping online saves ....
   a. clothes b. money c. time d. cars
4. When we shop online, there will be .... pollution.
   a. less b. more c. much d. air

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sameh and Mokhtar are talking about a new T-shirt Mokhtar bought yesterday.

Sameh : Hello, Mokhtar. What a beautiful T-shirt!
Mokhtar : Hi, Sameh. Thank you very much.
Sameh : Is it new?
Mokhtar : 1 ....
Sameh : When did you buy it?
Mokhtar : 2 ....
Sameh : 3 .... ?
Mokhtar : It is 500 pounds.
Sameh : Where did you buy it?
Mokhtar : 4 ....
Sameh : 5 .... ?
Mokhtar : It is made of the best Egyptian cotton.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, a rich father took his son on a trip to show him how poor people live. They spent a day on the farm of a poor family where the nature and love among people. On the way home the father asker his son: "What did you learn from this trip?".

The son was so wise, he said: "We have a kilo milk in the fridge, they have the cow itself. We have a pool, they have a river. We have expensive lamps, they have stars and the moon. We buy food, they grow **it**. We have walls to protect us, they have friends. We have social media, they spend time with their family. Thank you dad for showing me how poor we are.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

---

2. What do cows give us?

---

3. Do you like living in a village, why?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "it" refers to.........

a. a pool b. food c. the moon d. stars

5. They visited the farm ....

a. last week b. last winter c. yesterday d. last summer

6. The opposite of "expensive" is ....

a. poor b. cheap c. sheep d. shop

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... are like planes, but they do not have wings.

a. Cars b. Cameras c. Mobiles d. Helicopters

2. I asked my aunt to........... a French internet article into Arabic.

a. build b. check c. translate d. damage

3. We .... things when we put them in our mouths.

a. smell b. see c. taste d. hear

4. Many people are .... to nuts, so they don't eat cakes.

a. addicted b. popular c. allergic d. ready

5. Some birds have strong.........., so they can fly for a long distance.

a. beaks b. wings c. tails d. legs

6. .... means having something that makes you ill when you eat or touch it.

a. Safe b. Fresh c. Addicted d. Allergic

7. Lara always gives her grandmother a big .... when she sees her.

a. hug b. huge c. hide d. hall

8. I can't use my mobile phone because there is a problem .... it.

a. on b. with c. for d. in

9. My teacher is wearing .... sunglasses.
a. big, red, plastic
b. red, plastic, big
c. big, plastic, red
d. plastic, big, red

10. Look at the black clouds! It .... soon.
a. is going to rain
b. is raining
c. rains
d. 'll rain

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Cafés .... (closing) in the future.
2. He has arranged everything. He .... (spend) his holiday in Paris.
3. Let's go to the beach. There are .... (little) people there today.
4. Mariam .... (don't) use to read when she was five.

E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words on:

To your friend Hany about "How to be safe online".
Your name is Magdy and your email address is magdy22@yahoo.com.
Your friend's email address is hany33@yahoo. com

....
....
....
....
....
....

Exam 16 The Red Sea - Hurghada

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How old is Nada? ....
a. Thirty
b. Thirteen
c. Twenty
d. Twelve

2. What is her favourite sport? ....
a. Swimming
b. Tennis
c. Basketball
d. Football

3. Why does she eat fruit and vegetables? ....
a. To be healthy
b. To be fat
c. To be weak
d. To be thin

4. What does she drink to have strong bones? ....
a. Tea
b. Milk
c. Coffee
d. Water

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Reem is talking with Haneen about clothes.

Reem : Hello, Haneen. Your dress looks beautiful.
Haneen : Hi, Reem ❶ ....
Reem : Is it new?
Haneen : ❷ .... I bought it yesterday.
Reem : ❸ ....?
Haneen : It's 500 pounds.
Reem : ❹ ....?
Haneen : I bought it at shopping mall..
Reem : What is made of?
Haneen : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Technology has changed our life very much. It helps us to live easier and better life. Some examples of technology are smartphones, computers, internet and robots. The internet is very important type of technology. It gives us a lot of information. Smart phones help us to communicate with people. You can send and receive messages and photos easily. Using the social networking sites may be the most important uses of mobile phones. Although it is difficult to live without modern technology, it can be bad for you. Many people spend a lot of time watching videos or checking social networking sites. **They** can have eye problems and headaches. They stay up late at night and find it difficult to get up early in the morning. They become **addicted** to phones. It is important to know about the latest technology, but you should be careful when you use it.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What examples of technology do you use?
....
2. Why is the internet important?
....
3. Do you think modern technology is dangerous? Why? Why not?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. In this passage we know about the ....
a. shopping online
b. modern technology
c. information
d. laptops

5. The word "**addicted to**" means .... doing something or having it all the time.
   a. hurt b. hate c. dislike d. like so much
6. The underlined word "**They**" refers to ....
   a. people b. internet c. mobile d. computer

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is a/an .... on this phone which tells me about the weather.
   a. delivery b. app c. customer d. owner
2. .... is a kind of funny drawings.
   a. Acting b. Costumes c. Cartoon d. Photography
3. I like this cake because it tastes ....
   a. bad b. sad c. terrible d. delicious
4. Can you .... this passage into Arabic?
   a. invent b. translate c. waste d. taste
5. Deaf people can't ....
   a. hear b. feel c. see d. walk
6. Basma wears a beautiful golden .... in her ears.
   a. earrings b. headphones c. scarves d. watches
7. We can use .... to change the sunlight into electricity.
   a. water b. wind turbines c. solar panels d. air pollution
8. I don't put .... salt on my food because it isn't very healthy.
   a. any b. many c. some d. a few
9. .... is my brother's photo.
   a. These b. Those c. This d. They
10. Look at the black clouds! It .... to rain.
    a. go b. are going c. is going d. gone

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. .... (Does) Mona able to drive her car every day?
2. This book is funny, but that .... (ones) is very boring.
3. I'm not very hungry, I'll take .... (a few) cheese in a sandwich.
4. If Mazen feels ill, he should .... (sees) the doctor.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your favourite food"

....

....

....



Al Azhar - Menofia



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mohamed .... before he goes to sleep.
   a. watches videos b. plays football c. reads a book d. visits his aunt
2. Mohamed isn't sleeping very .... at the moment.
   a. badly b. difficult c. well d. hard

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Mona is talking with Huda about the next summer holiday.

Mona : How are you, Huda?
Huda : ❶ ....
Mona : Where will you go on the next summer holiday?
Huda : ❷ ....?
Mona : Hurghada! Who will you go with?
Huda : ❸ ....?

D Vocabulary and Structure

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A long piece of material that you wear around the neck or shoulders is called a ....
   a. dress b. pants c. galabeya d. scarf
2. He isn't going to .... away his old watch.
   a. throwing b. threw c. throw d. throws
3. There's a/an .... on this phne which tells me about the weather.
   a. app b. bag c. helicopter d. solar panel
4. Would you like .... more chicken, Amal?
   a. some b. any c. few d. little
5. A .... is a funny drawing usually showing people or animals.
   a. play b. cartoon c. film d. programme

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Ali and his family decided to go on holiday for a week. **They** chose a holiday near the sea because everyone in the family enjoys the seaside. They went to Hurghada where water was very calm and warm. They liked diving, swimming and saw a lot of sea life. They also enjoyed seeing the coloured fish. Mr. Ali's wife liked going on walks near the beach and watching the sunset. She also liked fishing. Mr. Ali's son liked to go diving. At noon, all the family went to the cinema then they went to shopping and bought their friends some presents.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Ali and his family choose a holiday near the sea?

   ----

2. What did Ali and his family do at the end of the holiday?

   ----

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Ali and his family decided to go on holiday for ---------- days.

   a. fourteen b. ten c. seven d. eighty

5. Ali's wife liked ----------.

   a. riding horses b. reading c. running d. fishing

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. I - the Egyptian - Last month, - Museum - visited. ----------------------
2. to be - clothes - comfortable - in my - I like. ----------------------
3. is - my - school - This - uniform ----------------------
4. area of desert - is a large - in - Wadi Rum - Jordan. ----------------------

---

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Healthy food"

Exam 18 Al Azhar - Luxor Zone



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Lama ordered the mobile phone .
   a. yesterday b. last week c. last month d. two weeks ago
2. The screen of the mobile phone was .
   a. clean b. opened c. delivered d. damaged

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Ali is talking with Ahmed about going to the cinema.

Ali : Hi, how are you?
Ahmed : Hi, ❶ ....
Ali : ❷ ....?
Ahmed : I went to the cinema yesterday.
Ali : ❸ ....?
Ahmed : I went there by taxi.

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The water in the sea is ....
   a. sweet b. salty c. juicy d. spicy
2. If you want to get the park quickly, you .... the bus.
   a. should take b. will take c. take d. took
3. Judy's little sister hurt her hand and started ....
   a. crying b. laughing c. hiding d. wondering
4. .... all the vegetables into small squares.
   a. Chopping b. Chopped c. Chop d. Chops
5. This email is in Spanish. Are you able to .... it for me?
   a. waste b. translate c. say d. taste

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Judy plays squash every week and needs to be healthy, so what does she eat? She is allergic to nuts, so she doesn't eat any cakes because they sometimes have nuts in them. She eats a lot of fish because it helps to make her strong. A few hours before a nteball game, she always eats some fish with a lot of pasta, because this gives her energy. When she is playing netball, she drinks a little water. Then, after the game, she eats a few sweets. She does not have many because she knows they are not very good for her.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does Judy play every week?

2. Why does she eat a lot of fish?

3. Why doesn't she eat many sweets?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Judy is allergic to ....

a. pasta b. falafel c. grapes d. nuts

5. She drinks .... water.

a. a little b. a few c. any d. a lot of

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. international - classical - plays - and - The orchestra - Arabic - music.

2. to wear - jewellery - heavy - They - metal - loved.

3. is - for - growing - crops - Egypt - famous.

4. should - time - What - I - come?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Environmental problems"

Exam 19 Al Azhar - Qalyubia

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Fast food is ....

a. taste b. tasteful c. tasty d. healthy

2. You should have ....

a. snake b. snacks c. snail d. soap

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Khalid and John are talking about snacks.

Khalid : What's your favourite snack, John?

John : ❶ .... What about

Khalid : I like chips, too, but I like falafel more.

John : ❷ ....

Khalid : Yes, falafel is a popular snack in Egypt.

John : Is it a healthy snack?

Khalid : ❸ ....

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I use my mobile to .... my friends.
   a. text b. spend c. addict d. visit
2. We shouldn't have .... fat in our diet.
   a. many b. few c. much d. a lot
3. I am .... if you are busy tonight.
   a. walking b. wondering c. wandering d. working
4. I found a/an.......... for a job in the newspaper yesterday.
   a. style b. occasion c. advert d. climate
5. Keep quiet, the baby ....
   a. sleep b. sleeps c. is sleeping d. sleeping

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Disabled means someone who isn't able to use a part or parts of the body in the way other people can. Disabled aren't different but they need more help. For example the blind need special schools to learn how to use Braille. They can read and write, draw and even play music. They also need help to be able to communicate well. To conclude, the disabled are heroes. They can do amazing things, they need more help to live a normal life.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does the "disabled" mean? ....

2. How can they read? ....

3. What do they need to communicate will? ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The blind need .... schools to learn.
   a. especially b. special c. private d. public

5. They can do amazing things. "Amazing" her means ....
   a. boring b. dull c. surprising d. angry

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. factories - a lot - Clothes - of - pollution - cause.

....

2. is trying - environment - to help - farmers - to protect - the - The government.

....

3. a lot of - from the - There's - traffic - in our city - air pollution.

....

4. is- much better - for - the - Wind - environment - energy.

....

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Water pollution"

....
....
....
....
....

SB / WB Answers

إجابات تمارين كتابي الطالب والتدريبات



SB Answers

Lesson 1 Page 2

Discuss

- Can you match the descriptions to these pictures of new inventions?

1. e   2. a   3. d   4. b

Find

- Look through the unit. What did Lama buy from the internet?

- She bought a new mobile phone.

Research

- Who was H. G. Wells? Why is he famous?

- H. G. Wells (1866–1946) was a British writer. He was famous for writing science fiction stories like The Time Machine and The War of the Worlds, which were also made into films.

Page 3

2 Match the inventions 1–4 on page 2 with the people who talk about them.

1. They are found along the coast of the sea.

Hatem : Picture 4
Manal : Picture 2
Tarek : Picture 1
Sawsan : Picture 3

3 Complete the sentences from the listening with will or won't.

1. won't   2. will   3. won't
4. will   5. will

Lesson 2 Page 4

2 Match a word from A to a word from B to make useful phrases.

have : a delivery, time, money, a choice
save : time, money
spend : time, money
waste : time, money
wait for : a delivery

3 Read the article. Can you find any of the phrases from Exercise 2 in the text?

- save (me) time, spend (lots of) time, have (more) choice, waste time, waiting for a delivery

4 Complete the table with the reasons for and against shopping online. Can you add any more ideas to the table?

For : It saves time. There is more choice; It is better for the environment. There will be less pollution.

Against : You can't try things before you buy. You need to wait for a delivery. Shops and cafés will close.

Extra Ideas :

For : Things are often cheaper online.

Against : It is less interesting than going shopping with your friends or family.

Page 5

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. go/will spend   2. visits/will buy
3. won't use/is   4. will look/gets
5. buy/won't be able to

6 Complete these sentences with your own ideas.

1. I will buy some new shoes.
2. I will go to the local shop.
3. I do my homework tonight.
4. I have school work to finish.

Lesson 3 Page 6

1 Check the meaning of the words in bold in your dictionary.

addicted : liking something so much that you want to do or have it all the time
by mistake : something you do or say without intending to
headache : a pain inside your head
horrible : very bad, not nice at all
social media : websites and computer programs that allow people to communicate and share information in the internet using a computer or mobile phone

3 Listen to these four people talking about the problems they have with technology. Match them to the problems a – d above.

Shady : c   Hala : b
Randa : a   Adam : d

4 Complete the advice an expert gives to the people in Exercise 3.

1. a good idea   2. need to/should
3. is important   4. good friends/should

Page 7

5 **Match to make sentences.**

1c 2d 3a 4e 5b

6 **Complete these sentences with your own ideas. Use should.**

1. you should tell your parents.
2. you shouldn't chat to people you don't know.
3. you should tell his/her parents or a teacher.
4. you should turn off all your technology.

Lesson 4 Page 8

1 **Ask and answer the questions in pairs.**

1. He or she travels through time.
2. Students' own answers.

2 **Read part of the story The Time Machine and answer the questions.**

1. They are in London, at the Time Traveller's house.
2. The Time Traveller.
3. They travel in time/go to the past and future

3 **Look at the words in red. Use a dictionary to check their meanings. Write the words in your notebook.**

impossible : if an action or event is impossible, it cannot happen or be done

pull : hold something and move it towards you

lever : a handle that you push or pull to make a machine work

disappear : suddenly go somewhere and become impossible to find

explore : look around a place where you have never been in order to find out what is there

4 **Read the text again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.**

1. T
2. F (The small model of a machine disappears.)
3. T
4. F (The small machine travels to the future.)
5. F (It is not finished.)
6. T

Lesson 5 Page 9

3 **Complete the poster with these words.**

1. watch 2 enough 3 headaches
4. headphones 5 video games 6 outside

4 **Look at these sentences from a debate called Technology can be bad for your health. Are these opinions positive or negative?**

Positive – sentences 1, 4, 6

Negative – sentences 2, 3, 5

Lesson 6 Page 10

1 **Read the email. What is it about?**

It is about a damaged phone.

2 **Read the email again and answer the questions.**

1. Last week
2. Today
3. The screen was damaged.
4. She wants to change the phone/get a new phone.
5. How she can change the phone

3 **Which of these phrases are used to start or end a formal email? Write S (Start) or E (End).**

1. S 2. E 3. S 4. E 5. E.

Lesson 7 Page 11

1 **Match the verbs to the nouns to make phrases.**

1. c 2. e 3. a 4. b 5. d

4 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs and should, shouldn't, will or won't.**

1. are / should 2. listen/will
3. don't do/won't 4. want/should
5. are/should

WB Answers

Page 70

1 **Complete the sentences with these words.**

1. Helicopters 2. headphones
3. app 4. translate 5. motorbike

2 **Choose the correct words.**

1. corrections 2. invent
3. predict 4. translate

Page 71

1 **Choose the correct words.**

1. saves 2. spend 3. have 4. of

2 **Match to make the questions that he asks his mother.**

1. d 2. c 3. e 4. b 5. a

3 **Complete with the questions from Exercise 2, then role-play the dialogue.**

1. Who will meet me at the airport if the plane's late?
2. What clothes will I wear if it's cold?
3. Who will I talk to if I don't know anyone at the school?
4. What will the teacher say if I don't understand the lesson?
5. What will I eat if I don't like the food?

Page 72

1 **Match the words and the definitions.**

1. social media 2. by mistake
3. horrible 4. addicted to

2 **Complete the sentences with words or phrases from Exercise 1.**

1. addicted to 2. horrible
3. by mistake 4. social media

3 **Complete the sentences with the correct verb.**

1. visit 2. stay 3. try
4. understand 5. swim

4 **Complete the sentences. Use should and if / when.**

1. we should talk to him/her
2. if you are going to be late
3. you should go home.
4. you should pick it up.
5. you should stay in the house.
6. we should work together.

Page 73

1 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words.**

1. disappeared 2. impossible 3. pull
4. lever 5. explore

3 **Answer the questions about The Time Machine.**

1. They meet at the Time Traveller's house.
2. They say that it's impossible.
3. He shows them a small model of a time machine.
4. It took him two years to build.
5. It disappears.
6. He will explore the past and the future.

Page 74

1 **Choose the correct words in a debate called All computer games are bad for you.**

1. don't 2. idea 3. opinion
4. play 5. From

2 **Now listen and complete the dialogue with the correct sentences 1–5 from Exercise 1.**

a.5 b.1 c.2 d.3 e.4

Page 75

1 **Read the email and write the missing sentences a-c in the right places.**

1. c 2. b 3. a

2 **Read the email again and answer the questions.**

1. It arrived today.
2. It was for children aged 6–9.
3. Because it did not say the game was for children of this age.
4. He wants a different game that he can play with his friends who are 13 or 14.
5. He wants to know how he can change the game.

Page 76

1 **Complete the table.**

Adjectives : addicted, horrible, useful
Inventions : headphones, motorbike, social media
Verbs : order, pull, translate

2 **Complete with the words from Exercise 1.**

1. pull 2. headphones 3. translate
4. social media 5. motorbike

4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. d 2. c 3. c 4. a 5. a

Unit 8

SB Answers

Lesson 1 Page 12

Quiz:

In which country do you think these snacks are popular?

- Sfenj: Morocco; Samosa: India; Chips: Britain; Rojak: Malaysia; Falafel: Egypt

Find:

Look through the unit. What is Okinawa and where is it?

- It is an island in Japan

Page 13

1 **Listen and put the snacks from page 12 in the order that you hear them. Were your answers to the quiz correct?**

a. 3 b. 2 c. 4 d. 5 e. 1

2 **Listen again and complete the sentences with these words.**

1. sweet 2. delicious 3. salty
4. spicy 5. juicy

3 **Choose the correct word. Then ask and answer the questions in pairs.**

1. juicy 2. spicy 3. salty 4. sweet
- Students' own answers.

Lesson 2 Page 14

1 **Read the texts about two teenagers and answer the questions.**

1. Imad 2. Mustafa 3. Mustafa
4. Mustafa Imad 6. Students' own answers.

2 Complete the sentences with a lot, a little or a few.

1. a few 2. a little 3. a lot
4. a few 5. a little, a few

Page 15

4 Listen to Amal and Huda talking to their grandmother and answer the questions.

1. They are at their grandmother's house
2. They are having dinner
3. They are eating chicken and beans now
4. They don't eat the rice pudding because they are (really) full

5 Match to make questions and answers. Then listen again to check your answers.

1.c 2.d 3.e 4.a 5.b.

6 Choose the correct words.

1. Would, full 2. Do
3. a few, Would 4. a little 5 Would, couldn't.

Lesson 3 Page 16

1 Complete the quiz.

1.c 2.a 3.b 4.c 5.b
6.a 7.b 8.a

3 Complete the sentences with the words in bold from the quiz.

1. bones 2. protein
3. fresh 4. dairy products

Page 17

4 Look at the photographs and complete the sentences with the correct cooking verbs.

1. heat 2. pour 3. serve
4. chop 5. fry 6. beat

5 Complete the recipes for an omelette and tomato salad with these instructions.

How to make an omelette	How to make a tomato salad
1 Beat two eggs in a bowl with little milk.	1 Take two big tomatoes and half an onion.
2 Add a little salt to the eggs and milk.	2 Chop all the vegetables into small squares.
3 Heat some butter in a frying pan.	3 Put the chopped vegetables into a bowl.
4 Pour the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter.	4 Add a little oil, salt and lemon juice.
5 When the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying pan and serve with salad.	5 Serve the salad with your omelette.

Page 18

2 Read the article again and answer the questions.

1. Because they smell terrible
2. It's unusual to eat sweet and salty things together
3. Century eggs are black and green inside, and they have a salty taste
4. Durian (fruits) and century eggs smell a lot

3 Complete the meanings with the correct word from the article in bold.

1. Unusual 2. smell 3. taste 4. delicious

Lesson 5 Page 19

2 Listen again and answer the questions.

1. The cook in his parents' restaurant
2. Because he helps in the kitchen at his parents' restaurant
3. Because eating snacks isn't good for you
4. She feels very hungry after athletics club
5. Tamer is worried about his exams
6. He can't tell his mother that she gives him too much food

3 Read the advice and answer the questions.

1. Eman 2. Yes, it is good advice
3. It's a good idea to; how about (bringing); why don't you try (eating); Perhaps you could (eat)

Lesson 6 Page 20

1 Read about Okinawa and answer the questions.

1. People in Okinawa eat a lot of fresh vegetables. They only eat a little meat and few dairy products.
2. The Okinawan breakfast is very healthy because it gives them a lot of energy to start the day.
3. The result of the Okinawans' healthy diet is that they live a long time.

2 Complete the table with the expressions that the writer uses to introduce each point.

1. Firstly 2. Furthermore
3. Another important thing 4. As you can see

Lesson 7 Page 21

1 Match the photos with these words and phrases.

1.c 2.a 3.b 4.e 5.f 6.d

2 Choose the correct words to complete the dialogue.

1. Is 2. any 3. little 4. Would
5. some 6. few 7. enough

3 Match to make sentences about how to make a fried egg.

1.c 2.f 3.d 4.b 5.e 6.a

WB Answers

Page 77

1 Match the words to the food. Add more examples.

1.c 2.a 3.d 4.b

Suggested answers:

a. fish, nuts, chips
b. chocolate, sweets, cake
c. watermelon, oranges, grapes
d. samosa, curry, chilies

2 Complete the email with some or any.

1. some 2. some 3. some 4. any 5. any

Page 78

1 Match the definitions to their words.

1.c 2.d 3.a 4.b

2 Answer the questions with these words.

1. pasta 2. pizza 3. nuts

3 What other types of food are people often allergic to? Research the information.

People can be allergic to almost anything, but common types of food include milk/dairy products, wheat (gluten) and caffeine (in coffee or tea).

4 Circle the correct words.

1. any 2. a lot of 3. some
4. a lot of 5. a little 6. a few

5 Put the dialogue into the correct order.

a4 b2 c1 d3 e5 f7 g6

Page 79

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. a4

1.b 2.c 3.a 4.d 5.c

2 Answer the questions.

1. butter 2. water 3. meat 4. eggs

3 Match to make sentences.

1.c 2.d 3.a 4.e 5.b.

4 Circle the correct words in the recipe.

1. Wash 2. Add 3. Heat 4. Pour 5. Serve

Page 80

1 Complete the diagram with these verbs for senses.

1. see 2. hear 3. smell 4. taste 5. touch

2 Listen to four people talking about food. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

1. T 2. F (She likes them.)
3. T 4. F (She says it doesn't taste nice.)
5. T
6. F (He loves to smell cakes cooking but he never eats cakes at all because he's allergic to nuts..

Page 81

1 Read about sleep and answer the questions.

1. very small babies
2. About ten hours a night
3. You need less sleep
4. Suggested: Because it helps you to stay healthy

2 Read the text again and circle the correct answers.

1. enough 2. enough
3. sleeps for too many 4. not enough
5. doesn't sleep for enough

Page 82

1 Complete the sentences with these words.

1. Spinach 2. Japan 3. pepper 4. diet

2 Complete the text with these expressions.

1. Firstly 2. Furthermore
3. Another important point 4. To conclude

Page 83

1 Can you add any words?

cooking words	types of food	words that describe food
add beat fry	fava bean omelette pepper	fresh juicy salty

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1.a 2.d 3.b 4.c 5.d 6.d

3 Complete the recipe for pizza with these verbs.

4 Cook 5 little 6 Serve



SB Answers

Lesson 1 Page 22

Discuss

1.c 2.f 3.b 4.a 5d 6e

Find

They are called Meg, Beth, Amy and Jo.

Research

- The Cairo Opera House in Cairo
- El Sawy Culture Wheel in Cairo.

Reading

- They are getting ready for an end-of-year school show.

Read the messages again and complete the table in your notebook.

- They are getting ready for an end-of-year school show.

Activity	Name
Acting	Lamar with the drama club
Sewing costumes	Mariam and Azza
Doing make-up	Lara
Painting scenery	Manal
Playing music	Talia
Writing the script	Habiba

Lesson 2 **Page 24**

1 Match the photos to the different types of art.

1. drawing 2. photograph 3. pottery
4. portrait 5. cartoon 6. sculpture.

Page 25

4 Read the review again and answer the questions.

1. He visited it last month.
2. No, it is also from the 20th century.
3. They are of important and normal Egyptians.
4. Al Madina. It made him feel happy/it was colourful.
5. It is free.
6. Students' own answers.

5 Can you think of any other phrases to add to the chart?

- **Description :** famous, good, important, normal, cool, big, small, colourful, free, busy; interesting, exciting, boring, etc.
- **Giving opinions :** From my point of view; I thought; It made me feel; In my opinion
- **Talking about preferences :** My favourite thing; The best thing; I liked ... the most
- **Giving recommendations :** I recommend; It's a good idea to; You should ...

Lesson 3 **Page 26**

1 Ask and answer the questions in pairs.

1. **Classical music :** Students' own answers.
2. **Suggested :** Yes, because it takes many hours of practice each day.
3. **Suggested :** Patience, musical ability
4. **Students :** own answers.

2 What is special about the orchestra?

The musicians are blind.

3 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

1. T
2. F (Only girls can go to the school.)
3. F (The students play music in the afternoon.)
4. T
5. F (All of the musicians are blind.)
6. F (The Orchestra plays Arabic and international music.)
7. T 8. T.

Page 27

Life skills.

✓ Do not leave bags on the floor on public transport.
✓ Tell a blind person about objects on the street.
✓ Ask a person in a wheelchair if they need help.

7 Write a paragraph about a musician from Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra in your notebook.

The Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra is a school for blind girls in Cairo. Judy is one of the musicians. She is able to play the clarinet very well. She was born blind and started playing when she was eight. She likes playing in the orchestra because she loves meeting other people. Last year, she visited Oman and France with the orchestra. I would like to go to one of their concerts and I would recommend listening to them online or on the radio if you can.

Lesson 4 **Page 28**

2 Read the story and check your answers to Exercise 1.

1. They are reading and listening to a story
2. They are at home (in the living room).
3. Yes, because they are all sitting together and look happy.

3 Look at the verbs in red in the text. Use a dictionary to check the meaning. Write them in your notebook.

wonder: think about something and want to know why it is true

hide: go to a place where you cannot be seen or found, or put something in a place where it cannot be seen or found

cry : produce water from your eyes, usually because you are sad, angry or hurt.

hug : put your arms around someone and hold them closely, usually because you love them

5 Ask and answer the questions in pairs.

1. She wants them to hear it before they know she wrote it, perhaps to get a more honest answer from them.
2. Because she likes the story and is proud of her sister.

3-5 Students' own answers.

Lesson 5 **Page 29**

2 Listen to a telephone conversation between two friends and complete the notes.

1. Warda's house 2. Tonight
3. Watch Little Women 4. drinks (fruit juice)
5. 7 pm

3 **Listen again. Complete these phrases from the conversation.**

1 wondering 2 Would 3 bring
4 Could 5 should

4 **Which of the phrases from Exercise 3 do you use for the following?**

1 invitations: 1 and 2 **2 requests:** 2 and 4
3 offers: 3 **4 asking for information:** 5

Lesson 6 Page 30

1 **Does the writer like the film or not?**

The writer likes the action and the scary dinosaurs, but he doesn't like the story because it's not very interesting or new.

2 **Read the review again and answer the questions.**

1. It's an adventure film.
2. stars
3. It happens in a theme park.
4. Some dinosaurs escape.
5. The writer likes the scary dinosaurs.
6. He doesn't like the story. It is not interesting or new.

3 **In what order does the writer put the following information in the review?**

a4 b5 c1 d3 e2.

Lesson 7 Page 31

1 **Complete the table.**

Play	Concert	Verbs
costume make-up scenery	instrument musician orchestra	cry escape hug

3 **Complete the conversation with the correct words. Then listen and check your answers.**

1. wondering 2. Would 3. cool
4. Shall 5. could 6. should

WB Answers

Page 84

1 **Match to make activities.**

1.e 2.c 3.a 4.b 5.d

2 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word from Exercise 1.**

1. is sewing 2. costumes 3. make-up
4. scenery 5. instrument

3 **Reorder the words to make questions. Then answer the questions about yourself.**

1. Can you sew? No, I can't.
2. Do you know how to use a computer? Yes, I do.
3. Are you able to speak French? No, but I can speak English.
4. Can you play football or tennis? I can't play football but I know how to play tennis.

Lesson 2 Page 85

1 **Match the words with their meanings.**

1 b 2 d 3 f 4 c 5 a 6 e

2 **Complete the review of a museum with these words.**

1. thought 2. point of view 3. favourite
4. recommend 5. idea

3 **Read the review again and answer the questions.**

1. She thought they were fantastic.
2. They really teach you about life in the past.
3. The Islamic area (where you can see different kinds of calligraphy).
4. She recommends looking at the clothes from other countries.
5. Because the museum is quite dark.

Page 86

1 **Listen and choose the correct words.**

1. blind 2. musicians 3. violin
4. playing 5. orchestra 6. amazing
7. read 8. concerts

2 **Match the words with their meanings.**

1.c 2.a 3.b

3 **Look at the picture and complete the sentences about the difficulties disabled people can have.**

1. see the traffic light.
2. go into the shop/up the stairs.
3. hear the other boy.

4 **Write a list of four things that we can do to help some of the people in Exercise 3.**

1. Someone could tell the blind man that the lights are green for him. / The traffic lights could make a noise so that the blind man knows when it is green.
2. Someone could put a slope/ramp on the stairs for the disabled woman so she can go in the shop.
3. The boy who is shouting could stand in front of the deaf boy so that he knows he is talking to him.
4. The boy who is shouting could learn sign language.

Page 87

1 **Complete the sentences with these words.**

1. cry 2. wonder 3. hide 4. hug

2 **Answer the questions.**

2. Suggested: When they are frightened. / When they do not want people/other animals to see them.
3. Students' own answers.

1 Put the events in Little Women in the correct order.

a5 b3 c6 d4 e2 f1

Page 88

1 Match to make sentences or questions.

1 d 2 e 3 b 4 a 5 c

2 Put the dialogue in the correct order. Put the dialogue in the correct order.

a5 b7 c6 d2
e8 f3 g4 h1.

Research.

. They are all also films. They have the same names (in English), except for Alice's Adventures in Wonderland which was called Alice in Wonderland as a film

Page 89

1 Match the words with their meanings.

1.c 2.d 3.b 4.a

2 Some words have more than one meaning. Complete the sentences, using each word two times.

1. park 2. star 3. park
4. view 5. star 6. view

3 Put this review of a book into the correct order.

a4 b1 c3 d2.

Page 90

Review

1 Write the words. What is the word in the blue column?

1 cartoon
2 cry
3 costume
4 blind
5 script
6 photography

2 Complete the sentences. Write what these people can/know how to/are able to do well.

1. stop fires.
2. paint pictures.
3. can play musical instruments.
4. knows how to act in films.
5. is able to teach us English.

3 Look at the pictures and answer the questions.

1. Number 1 is a drawing;
2. is a portrait;
3. is pottery and 4 is a sculpture.
2–4 Students' own answers.

Review C

SB Answers

Lesson 1 Page 32

1 Read the medical advice and complete the sentences with should.

1. you should stand 1.5 metres from them.
2. you should use the correct doors.
3. you should take a test for Covid-19 every 72 hours.
4. you should wear a mask.
5. you should have it online.

2 Choose the correct words.

1. lot of 2. are able to 3. a few
4. a lot 5. know how to.

3 Complete the review with these words.

1. play 2. costume 3. scenery
4. acting 5. action 6. script

4 What did the writer like about the play? What didn't he like? Write in your notebook and say why.

Liked about the play	Didn't like about the play
Caesar's costume. It made him look very important. The scenery. It looked like Ancient Rome. The acting. It was very good.	The story was sad. It made him cry. There was not much action. It was mostly talking. It was very long. It lasted three hours. The language was difficult. It is not modern English.

Lesson 2 Page 33

2 Listen to Heba and Sara talking about food. What do they spend too much time doing?

They spend too much time playing computer games/ being online.

3 Listen again and complete the table.

	Heba	Sara
Favourite food Knows how to make Problems	mangos omelettes and salad Eats too many cakes Doesn't do enough exercise Spends too much time online in the evening	falafel cakes Eats too many cakes Doesn't eat enough fruit Spends too much time playing computer games in the evening

WB Answers

Page 91

1 Look at the picture and choose the correct words.

1. a few 2. a lot of 3. A few
4. a little 5. a lot of.

2 Match to make sentences.

1.f 2.e 3.a 4.c 5.b 6.d

3 Complete these sentences with should and a suitable verb.

1. you should practise every day.
2. you should ask them first.
3. you should watch Jurassic World.
4. you should end it with Yours sincerely.
5. you should do it again.
6. you should do more exercise / eat more fruit.

Page 92

5 Listen again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences..

1. T
2. T
3. F (She will beat eight eggs.)
4. F (She should chop it really small.)
5. F (They can all have a little.)

6 Read and complete the reviews with these words.

1. costumes 2. scenery
3. recommend 4. photographs
5. cartoons 6. buy
7. point of view 8. sculptures
9. phones 10. action
11. made 12. best

7 What are the reviews from Exercise 6 for? Read and match.

a4 b2 c3 d1



Unit 10

SB Answers

Lesson 1 Page 34

Quiz

Find these items in the photos. Who can finish first?

a. sunglasses, belt, handbag, earrings
b. belt, trainers
c. headscarf
d. galabeya, sandals, headscarf

Research

What type of material is best for a hot climate?

- cotton

Find

Look through the unit. Why is Egypt good for growing cotton?

- The climate is perfect for growing cotton.

Page 35

2 Match the people with the photos on page 34.

1.a 2.d 3.c 4.b

3 Listen again and answer the questions.

1. Comfortable and relaxed
2. Her mother
3. When he is helping his father outside.
4. They keep him cool and protect him from the sun.
5. She bought it at the market.
6. It is a cool colour.
7. Because he is going for a special meal with his grandparents.
8. His father (when he's going to work).

Lesson 2 Page 36

1 Discuss these questions in pairs.

2. The Ancient Egyptian clothes are made of linen, the sandals are made of leather, the jewellery is made of metal/gold.
3. Students' own answers.

2 What did the people love to wear?

They loved to wear heavy, metal jewellery.

3 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

2. F (Clothes made of linen were popular.)
3. T
4. F (Children did not usually wear clothes until they were about six years old, then wore the same clothes as their parents.)
5. T
6. F (They wore gold necklaces.)

4 Discuss these questions in pairs.

1. Now, clothes are usually made of cotton, and are not just white. People do not wear jewellery very much.
2. People still wear loose, white clothes with a belt, leather sandals and some jewellery.
3. Students' own answers.

Page 37

5 Put the adjectives in the correct order.

1. It's a beautiful, blue skirt.
2. It's a colourful, cotton scarf.
3. It's a short, old, gold necklace.

4 They are some strange, big, leather shoes.
5 They are expensive, black, plastic sunglasses.
6 It's a nice, purple, wool jumper.

Lesson 3 Page 38

1 Read the blog. Where did the three people get the clothes they talk about?

Noha: from a shop in Cairo
Ayman: from his dad
Dalida: her grandmother made it

3 Read the blog again. Tick (✓) the correct people.

Who	Noha	Ayman	Dalida
1 chooses clothes that are good for a hobby?		✓	
2 often wears the same clothes?			✓
3 has clothes someone else used to own?		✓	
4 is trying to change how they shop?	✓		
5 has their clothes made by a family member?			✓

Page 39

4 Read and correct the underlined words..

1. those 2. one 3. this
4. these 5. ones

6 Write about a special item of clothing.

One special item of clothing is my blue, cotton shirt. My mother bought it for me when my cousin got married. I always wear it for other special events like weddings and birthdays. It always makes me feel happy when I wear it.

Lesson 4 Page 40

1 Read the article. Did the Ancient Egyptians make the same types of material as now?

No, they made linen.

2 Look at the words in bold in the text. Match the words and the definitions.

1. soft 2. luxury
3. picked 4. crops
5. chemicals 6. perfect
7. industry 8. environment

3 Read the article again and match paragraphs 1-4 with the headings a–d.

a2 b4 c1 d3

4 Discuss these questions in groups.

1. Farmers could use fewer chemicals on their land and use recycled water.
2. The oil industry, car making, textiles, construction, chemicals, pharmaceuticals (medicines)
3. Yes, because it is important not to create pollution. Businesses should help the world stay green.

Lesson 5 Page 41

2 Listen to a conversation in a shop and answer the questions.

1. A dress
2. She wants it for her brother's birthday
3. She doesn't like yellow
4. It is a bit big/It is the wrong size
5. She tries it on and then buys it.
6. It is a beautiful, blue dress.

3 Listen again and put these phrases in the order that you hear them.

a 6 b 2 c 7 d 3
e 1 f 5 g 4

Lesson 6 Page 42

1 Read the advert and answer the questions.

1. Suggested: A school girl
2. It was a present but she already has one that is the same.
3. Students' own answers.

2 Read the advert again and complete the first half of the table.

To sell:	a handbag
Age:	new
Colour:	black
Material:	leather
Size:	large
Price:	LE 500

Lesson 7 Page 43

2 Write a description of four things using two or more adjectives.

1 She is wearing a nice, long, blue scarf.
2 She is wearing a long, thin, leather belt.
3 She has a small, brown, leather handbag.
4 She is wearing casual, blue cotton trousers.
5 She is wearing a long, expensive, gold necklace.
6 She is wearing a smart, black, cotton top.

3 Choose the correct word.

1. this 2. ones
3. those 4. that
5. ones/ones 6. This

4 **Complete the conversation in a shop.**

1. help 2. like 3. try 4. changing
5. fit 6. size 7. take

5 **Write a short advert to sell these sunglasses.**

I'm selling a pair of cool, new, blue plastic sunglasses. Good for a beach holiday! The price is only LE 150. Email me for more information.



WB Answers

Page 93

1 **Complete the table with the items of clothing. Can you add any words?**

head / face	legs	feet	body / neck
head scarf	trousers	trainers	belt
sunglasses	skirt	sandals	necklace
earrings	shorts	boots	galabeya
		shoes	scarf

2 **Describe the two people below. Think about the following.**

In photo 1, the woman is wearing a white blouse and a headscarf. I think she is wearing a black skirt, too. Her clothes are smart and traditional. I think her clothes look comfortable and I like what she is wearing because she looks nice.

In photo 2, the man is wearing a galabeya and a headscarf. His clothes are casual and traditional. They are not very colourful. I think his clothes look comfortable for his work: he is perhaps a fisherman and he is outside in the hot sun. I like what he is wearing, because I prefer to wear jeans.

Page 94

1 **Match the objects with the materials they are usually made of.**

1.c 2.d 3.a 4.b 5.f 6.e

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1.a 2.b 3.c 4.b 5.a

3 **Describe the things in the pictures using the words in brackets.**

1. It's a long, striped, plastic snake.
2. It's a beautiful, long, black car.
3. They're old, brown, leather boots.

Page 95

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1.c 2.a 3.a

2 **Choose the correct words to complete the dialogue.**

1. These 2. those 3. ones
4. ones 5. this 6. one

Page 96

1 **Match the opposites. You can use a dictionary.**

1.d 2.b 3.a 4.c

2 **Complete the article with these words.**

1. crop 2. industry 3. perfect
4. picked 5. chemicals 6. soft
7. luxury 8. take

3 **Read the article again and answer the questions.**

1. It makes a lot of money.
2. People often use chemicals before they can use it to make clothes. Bamboo material is not very soft.
3. Because cotton is softer than bamboo.
4. Students' own answers.

Page 97

1 **Match to make phrases.**

1.c 2.e 3.d 4.a 5.b.

2 **Complete the dialogue with these words.**

1. special 2. smart 3. that 4. one
5. changing 6. fit 7. try 8. take

Lesson 6 Page 98

1 **Complete the table with these words.**

adjective	material	object
cool	leather	chest of drawers
fantastic	linen	handbag
old	metal	headphones
striped	plastic	jacket
useful	wooden	tool

2 **Which of the objects in Exercise 1 is it trying to sell?**

chest of drawers

3 **Read and correct the underlined words in this advert.**

1. buy 2. one 3. wood 4. expensive

Page 99

1 **Complete the sentences with these words.**

1. casual 2. trainers 3. occasion
4. smart 5. cotton 6. earrings
7. try 8. belt

2 Read the descriptions. Can you add an adjective?

1 linen 2 brown 3 wooden
4 gold 5 big

3 Make these sentences plural.

1 How much are those necklaces in the window?
2 Those birds are flying very high.
3 Should I buy the red chairs or the black ones?
4 I really like these pairs of trousers.
5 These books are funny, but those ones are very boring!





Lesson 1 Page 44

Discuss:

a plant trees b pick up rubbish
c. reuse mobile phones d install solar panels
e save wildlife f recycle plastic bottles

Find:

They want to plant new trees in the mangrove forest.

Page 45

1 Match each post with one of the photos from page 44.

1.e 2.a 3.c

2 Read the posts again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

1. T
2. F (He says it is dangerous to save wildlife from the flood water, but his father knows how to keep him safe.)
3. T
4. F (They are going to plant trees on the roof of the school.)
5. F (It is best to reuse parts of old mobile phones.)

3 Choose the correct word.

1. later this year 2. next week 3. tomorrow.

4 Make questions about your future intentions. Then ask and answer the questions in pairs.

1. What are you going to do at the weekend?
2. Where are you going to go for your next holiday?
3. How are you going to improve your English?
4. Are you going to recycle your mobile phone when it's old?

Lesson 2 Page 46

1 What is going to happen? Match the photos with the sentences.

1.e 2.d 3.f 4.a 5.c 6.b.

2 Listen and complete the sentences with the correct form of these verbs to say what is going to happen.

1. They are going to be late.
2. Huda is going to go swimming.
3. He's going to get up.
4. They are going to get off the bus.
5. Farida is going to win the race.
6. Omar is going to go to bed.

Page 47

5 Listen to a radio programme about beautiful places in the world and check your answers to Exercise 4.

1. It is Wadi Rum in Jordan.
2. It is a desert with mountains, desert plants and wildlife.
3. There are problems with rubbish, water, tourists damaging wildlife and hunters killing animals.

6 Listen to the programme again and complete the table.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROBLEMS	1. Tourists leave **rubbish**. 2. Some tourists drive across the desert which can damage **plants and wildlife**. 3. Hotels use **lots of water**. 4. Hunters kill desert animals.

Lesson 3 Page 48

2 Listen to a science teacher talking about drones and check your answers to Exercise 1.

1. They can be used for fun, for taking photos and for deliveries.
2. They are going to be used for deliveries, for helping wildlife, for doing some dangerous jobs and for planting trees.

3 Listen again and answer the questions.

1. It means you can control drones from the ground.
2. They don't make much noise or cause as much air pollution.
3. They can see if there are any problems in places where people can't go.
4. Checking wind turbines.
5 They can drop seeds onto the ground in places that people can't go to.

5 Put the time expressions in the correct order from now to the future.

1 in five minutes 2 this afternoon/evening
3 tomorrow 4 the day after tomorrow
5 next week 6 in 10 days' time
7 in three weeks

Page 49

7 Complete the sentences. Use a dictionary if you don't know the meaning of a word.

1. tomorrow / 11th
2. 6.30 am/ Sunday
3. coral reefs
4. mongrove forest
5. Habiba / 6 am
6. sharing

Lesson 4 Page 50

1 Discuss this question in pairs.

It is about young people who have invented things to help the environment.

3 Look at the words in bold in the article. Match the words and the definitions.

1 filters 2 bacteria 3 system
4 location 5 chemicals 6 green

4 Read the article again and answer the questions.

1. It kills wildlife.
2. It has arms with filters on them. These filters take the plastic out of the sea water, without hurting sea life.
3. She saw children in India drinking water from a dirty canal.
4. She uses light from the sun.

Lesson 5 Page 51

1 Discuss these questions in pairs.

a star gazing
b bird watching
c hiking in the desert
d diving
e rock climbing
f canoeing

2 Which two of the activities from Exercise 1 do they talk about?

rock climbing, star gazing

3 Listen again and answer the questions.

1. He thinks it is scary, he is helping his father with something.
2. Yes, he does.
3. He thinks he will get cold and bored.
4. They are meeting outside Amir's house at 10.30.

4 Listen again and put these phrases in the order that you hear them.

a4 b1 c5 d2 e6 f3

Lesson 6 Page 52

1 Read the postcard and answer the questions.

1. She's in Siwa.
2. She's sitting by the water and watching the sunset.
3. She's staying with her parents' friends.
4. Because Heba and her family arrived very late, but the friends wanted to get up and make dinner; and they bring fresh dates every day.
5. They went to Shali Fortress and the Siwa museum.
6. She's looking forward to visiting the Siwa salt lake.

2 Find time expressions in the postcard for the following.

1. present – today, at the moment, every day
2. past – the day before yesterday, yesterday morning
3. Future – tomorrow

3 Read and correct the underlined mistakes in these sentences.

1. visited
2. are staying
3. are arriving
4. am looking

Lesson 7 Page 53

1 Look at the photos. What is going to happen? What are the people going to do.

1. She's going to get a taxi.
2. He is going to play tennis / hit the ball.
3. He is going to feed the cows / animals.
4. She is going to paint a picture.

2 Make two dialogues using these words. Then role-play the dialogues.

1

A : What are you doing at the weekend?

B : On Saturday morning, I'm having a piano lesson. In the afternoon, I'm meeting my cousin.

A : Aren't you going to the book club on Saturday afternoon?

B : No, I'm not going this weekend. Are you going?

2

A : Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain!

B : Yes, it's going to be very windy, too.

A : I'm going to close all the windows.

3 Write a reply to the text message in your notebook.

Hi

I'm doing my homework this afternoon but I will call you when I have finished. Then I'll help with the English homework if I can. We studied the future in class last week.

Yes, I am free on Saturday morning and I'd love to come. It sounds fun. What time can we meet?

WB Answers

Page 100

1 Match the words with their meanings.

1.d 2.f 3.a 4.b 5.c 6.e

2 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words from Exercise 1.

1. saved
2. solar panels
3. install
4. reduce
5. repair
6. wind turbines

3 Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2.

1. The boy and his father are going to watch a football match
2. The man is going to fly to London/go on a plane
3. The woman is going to make a cake

Page 101

1 Match to make phrases for environmental.

1 b 2 c 3 d 4 a

2 Many adjectives end in -al. Complete the table.

1 environmental 2 nature 3 musical 4 traditional

3 Choose the correct words.

1 environment 2 traditional 3. natural
4 music 5 environmental

4 What do you think is going to happen? Write sentences.

1. It is going to rain.
2. Number Four/The girl is going to win the race.
3. The waiter is going to fall over.
4. The man's hat is going to blow away / come off. / The wind is going to blow off the man's hat.

Page 102

1 Complete the sentences with these words.

1. mangrove 2. conservation
3. control 4. drone

2 Read Judy's diary and choose the correct time expressions.

1. this evening 2. tomorrow
3. the day after tomorrow 4. next week
5. in nine days' time

3 Listen and complete Khaled's diary.

1. See a play 2. Play basketball
3. Help my uncle 4. Take my cousins to the desert
5. Fly to Greece

Page 103

1 Complete the sentences with these words.

1. filter 2. location
3. system 4. bacteria

2 Complete the table. Can you add any words?

water	land
canal	desert
lake	forest
river	jungle
sea	mountain
Suggested: ocean	Suggested: farm

3 Read the article on Student's Book page 59. Choose the correct answer.

1 a 2 c 3 d 4 d

Page 104

1 Match to make activities.

1 e 2 a 3 d 4 b

2 Complete the dialogue with these words.

1. scary 2. get 3. bored
4. fun 5. love

3 Are the following expressions positive [✓], negative[✓] or not sure[?]?

1. [✗] 2. [✗] 3. [✓]
4. [?] 5. [✓] 6. [✓]

Page 105

1 Put these time expressions in order from the past to the future.

1. the day before yesterday 2. yesterday
3. at the moment 4. tomorrow
5. in three days' time

2 Read Hamdi's email and circle the correct time expressions from Exercise 1.

1. At the moment 2. Yesterday
3. The day before yesterday 4. Tomorrow
5. in three days' time

3 Read the email again and answer the questions.

1. He is walking in the desert.
2. It was very hot.
3. He went diving in the coral reefs at Shoura al Manqueta.
4. He wants to see the beautiful birds that live at Wadi Kid.
5. He is going to be home on Saturday.

Page 106

1 Choose the correct words.

1. solar panels 2. cause
3. lend 4. environmental

2 Answer the questions with going to.

1. He is going to go swimming.
2. The Blue team are going to win.
3. No, she is not going to catch the train.
4. Because it is going to be cold/wet.
5. They are going to go to Japan.

3 Match to make sentences.

1 c 2 d 3 e 4 b 5 a

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets to talk about future arrangements.

1 is playing 2 is leaving
3 are painting 4 is not working
5 Are / walking

Unit 12

SB Answers

Lesson 1 Page 54

Research:

Papau New Guinea (with around 840 languages)

Find:

People speak more than 2,100 languages in Africa

Page 55

3 What type of learner do you think would prefer doing these things? Write R (Reading and writing), S (Seeing), D (Doing) or L (Listening).

1. L 2. S 3. R 4. S
5. D 6. L 7. D 8. R

Lesson 2 Page 56

1 Circle the correct words.

1. fail 2. pass 3. decide

3 What jobs do they hope to do?

Fares : Manager of the family shop
Nevine : Doctor

4 Write F (Fares) or N (Nevine).

1. F 2. N 3. F 4. N
5. F 6. N 7. N 8. F

Page 57

5 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. was 2. wanted
3. will be 4. is
5. will learn
6. am starting/am going to start
7. am going to take/am taking
8. will pass

Lesson 3 Page 58

1 Check the meaning of these words and phrases in a dictionary, then discuss these questions in pairs.

1. Sounds = any noise you make (e.g. clapping, stamping, shouting, animal noises, etc.) Voice = noises only with your mouth (talking, singing, screaming, etc.) Speaking = using words
2. People mostly use speaking and writing.
3. Animals mostly use sounds and perhaps body language.

3 What types of communication from Exercise 1 does Dr Ahmed talk about?

He talks about body language, sounds, voice, speaking, eye contact and facial expressions.

4 Listen again and check your answers to Exercise 2.

1. F (They can understand when someone is angry, for example)
2. T
3. F (They use other forms of communication)
4. T 5. T
6. F (They also make a noise when they are frightened, for example.)

Page 59

5 Work in pairs.

Advice : How about...?, You should..., Why don't you...?
Opinions : In my view..., I think..., In my opinion...
Suggestions : Let's..., Shall we...?, What about....? We could....

6 Read this post from the internet. What is the girl's problem?

Her older sister does not want to talk to her.

8 Write a reply to Radwa in your notebook. Use some of the phrases from Exercise 5.

What about trying to do something together that you both like? You could watch your favourite film or go shopping. In my opinion, if she is talking to her friends, you should wait until she's finished. How about spending more time with your friends, too?.

Lesson 4 Page 60

2 Read the text quickly and answer the questions.

1. Three
2. It connects you to the international community.

3 Look at the words in bold in the text. Match them to their meanings.

1. identities 2. connects 3. experts
4. advantages 5. national 6. dialect
7 multilingual.

4 Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. a dialect, a national language and a European language (like English, French and Portuguese)
2. They connect people to their own community, the country and international communities.
3. You can talk to different people/in different ways and it helps you understand both your home and the world better.

Lesson 5 Page 61

3 What do you need to do for it? Complete the study plan.

I should:
- study with friends sometimes so we can help each other.
- remember to take breaks for food, exercise and to relax.
- go to bed early. I will learn better if I'm not tired.

Lesson 6 **Page 62**

2 Read the advert again and answer the questions.

1. They come from around the world
2. It is in the south of England
3. They study English in the mornings
4. They do sports and other activities
5. They visit famous places in England, like London or Oxford

3 You would like to go to Hapstone House. Complete the form.

Personal statement: I would like to study at Hapstone House because I want to improve my English. I think English is very important for my studies and my life. I would also like to visit England because I think it will be very different to Egypt and very interesting. I think it would be good to study with people from other countries and learn about their lives. In my opinion, if I study at Hapstone House, I will learn lots.

Lesson 7 **Page 63**

1 Match the words and the definitions.

1. pass 2. disappointed 3. voice
4. multilingual 5. organised 6. improve

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. didn't use to go 2. is studying
3. went 4. didn't understand/speak
5. was doing/visited 6. are going to go/are going

3 Work in pairs. Take it in turns to read a sentence from list 1. The other person should answer using an expression from list 2.

I don't understand my homework. - You should ask your teacher for help.
I want to learn to draw. - Why don't you join art classes?
We have an exam tomorrow! - Shall we study together?
Do you think it's good to speak lots of languages?
- In my opinion, it's really useful to speak lots of languages!
My house is too noisy to study in. - You should study in the library.
I don't know what job I want to do when I'm older.
- From my point of view, you should find something you enjoy.

WB Answers

Page 107

1 Complete the sentences with these words.

1. take notes 2. Learners
3. repair 4. mostly

2 What sort of learners are the following? Choose the correct words.

1. writing 2. seeing things
3. listening 4. doing things

Page 108

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words.

1. failed 2. proud 3. disappointed
4. pass 5. decided

2 Match to make sentences.

1.b 2.c 3.e 4.a 5.d

3 Choose the correct words.

1. didn't use to have 2 come
3. are taking 4 had
5. are going to build 6 will cut

Page 109

1 Read and choose the correct form of communication.

1. sounds 2. body language 3. touch
4. eye contact 5. facial expressions

3 Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2, then role-play the dialogue.

1. point of view 2. expressions 3. think
4. body 5. should 6. Let's
7. How

Page 110

1 Complete the crossword.

Across
1. dialect 3. national 5. advantage
6. expert 7. multilingual

Down
2. connect 4. identity

2 Complete the text with the correct form of the words from Exercise 1. (there is one word you do not need).

1. expert 2. multilingual 3. national
4. identity 5. dialect 6. connects

3 Answer the questions.

1. Arabic

Page 111

1 The prefix dis- usually has a negative meaning. What is the opposite of these words? Be careful! One word is different.

1. connected 2. disadvantage
3. organised 4. pleased/happy

2 Choose the correct words.

1. connected 2. disappointed
3. a disadvantage 4. organised

3 Complete the study plan with these words.

1. Make 2. Write 3. Don't
4. Watch 5. Read 6. Work

Page 112

1 Mario is writing an email to an English language school. Read and correct the underlined words.

1. am 2. February
3. address 4. Road
5. don't 6. want to improve
7. next 8. will
9. – 10 hearing

2 Now complete Mario's application form for the English school.

Name : Mario Dallo
Age : 14
Date of birth: 14 February (+ year)
Nationality: Italian
Address: 7 North Road, Rome
Phone number: 889900
Personal statement: (Suggested) I want to study at your school because I need to improve my English for my exams next year. I think I will enjoy your course and also your sports activities.

Page 113

1 Match to make phrases. Which is one word?

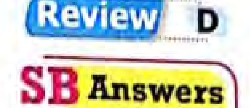
1.d 2.e 3.a 4.b 5.c
Multilingual is one word.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct time expression.

1. at the moment 2. usually
3. Last week 4. Next Monday
5. In the future

3 Complete the text with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. used to help 2. was walking
3. did not want 4. took
5. heard 6. am going to start
7. will be 8. love.



SB Answers

Lesson 1 Page 64

1 What information is in the letter?

Information that they will need for the trip.

2 Listen again and complete the form.

1. Camping 2. desert
3. 10 th 4. eight
5. 13 th 6. six
7. loose 8. warm
9. trainers 10. camera

5 Write a postcard to a friend. Include the following information.

We arrived yesterday and we put up our tents. Then we went for a walk. While we were walking in the desert, we saw a big bird! It was beautiful. I like cooking on the fire and sleeping in the tent. Tomorrow we are going to learn about the rocks in the desert. I'm looking forward to visiting some people who live in the desert, too.

Regards

Lesson 2 Page 65

1 Read the article about a shop and choose the correct words

1. On 2. environment-friendly
3. talked 4. are working
5. luxury, Egyptian cotton
6. worked 7. saw
8. was picking 9. wanted 10 at.

2 Read the article again and answer the questions.

1. The Eco Shop
2. It will sell local fruit and vegetables, luxuray, Egyptian cotton and other local things.
3. It only sells things that are environment-friendly. You can recycle glass, plastic and paper.
4. People can learn how to cook and sew.
5. She saw a lot of plastic bags used for things from other countries on the beach.
6. Students' own answers.

WB Answers

Page 114

1 Choose the correct words.

1. communication 2. developed
3. used to type 4. started
5. voices 6. are speaking
7. are going to know 8. expressions

2 Read the article again and answer the questions.

1. They have developed.
2. They used to type messages using special letters on their phones.

3. They started to touch the screens on their phones to send messages.

4. They can now understand people's voices.

5. Students' own answers.

3 Complete the dialogue with these words.

1. climb 2. one
3. scary 4. point of view
5. should 6. leather
7. hat 8. size
9. fit 10 let's

Page 115

5 Match the people to three of the photographs.

1. galabeya 2. scarf 3. casual
4. T-shirt 5. cotton 6. special
7. traditional 8. loose

Picture b: Deena

Picture c: Tarek

Picture d: Osama

6 write a description of the person in the other photograph.

She is wearing casual clothes. She is wearing a headscarf and a loose, long, blue and white shirt.

She is wearing a blue cotton jacket and casual cotton trousers.

7 Match to make study tips.

1.d 2.e 3.a 4.b 5.c

End of Term Practice Answers

1 Listen and choose the correct

1. a. few things 2. b. Hala likes healthy food.
3. c. cut the carrots 4. b. fourteen

2 Complete the following dialogue:

1. time
2. Shall I bring some books
3. good idea
4. We'll need to write down important notes.
5. You're right!

3 Read the text. Then answer the questions:

A) Answer

1. Because their brain doesn't understand it.
2. To train their brain to eat more healthily

B) Choose

3. b. ate it and didn't like it.
4. a. know because you have seen it before
5. d. a and b

4 Choose the correct answer

1. b. should see 2. c. is not able
3. d. any 4. b. a little 5. c. how to
6. a. translate 7. b. pay 8. d. energy
9. c. heat 10. a. crying

5 Read and complete with

1. invention 2. action 3. add 4. visiting

6 Choose one of the following:

students' own answers

Listening material

Unit 7

Azhar Listening

It's important not to become addicted to technology. If you feel you can't live without your phone, you should try taking a break every day for an hour or more.

Test Listening

Online shopping is great! Firstly, it saves me time. I don't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops. I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes.

Unit 8

Azhar Listening

Fava beans and falafel are very popular in Egypt. They are really delicious. People in Egypt like to eat them for breakfast.

Test Listening

Durian fruits grow in Indonesia and Malaysia. Some fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They are hard and green on the outside, but soft and yellow on the inside. Durian fruits are very healthy and taste delicious.

Unit 9

Azhar Listening

Eman Dadr is a musician. She is able to play the violin well. She started playing it when she was six.

Test Listening

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient art, but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21th centuries.

Review C

I've bought a nice book. The articles are always interesting to read and they have fantastic photographs, too. I really like the cartoons because they make me laugh!

Unit 10

Azhar Listening

I'm Leila, I have two nice pairs of sandals. I usually wear them in summer. They are my favourite. I bought them last year.

Test Listening

Egypt is famous for growing crops to make material. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. Almost everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants to make baskets.

Unit 11

Azhar Listening

Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them. We can use remote controls. This means we can control drones from the ground.

Test Listening

There's a lot of air pollution from the traffic in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution.

So next week, we're going to plant trees on the roof of our school and make a school roof garden.

Unit 12

Azhar Listening

When I was young, I wanted to be a scientist. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I will be a scientist.

Test Listening

I have an older sister (she's three years older than me). We used to be best friends, but now she doesn't want to talk to me very much. She is always on the internet or talking to people on her phone.

Review D

There is a lot of air pollution where I live. My neighbours never recycle their rubbish. In my view, it is important to recycle. We should take plastic and glass out of bins and recycle it.

End of Term Practice

Amira : Hi, Injy. Do you know how to cook?
Injy : Yes, I can cook a few things. What do you want to make?
Amira : Shall we make a cake for Hala? It's her birthday tomorrow.
Injy : Good idea! She likes healthy food, so if we want to make her something healthy, we should make a carrot cake.
Amira : Okay. We will need a recipe. Here's one on my phone.
Injy : What do we need?

Amira : We need some flour, a lot of carrots, a little sugar and some eggs.
Inju : Good, I think we have all of those. What shall I do, Amira?
Amira : Perhaps you could mix the flour and sugar in a bowl, Inju. I'll cut the carrots.
Inju : Okay. How old will Hala be?
Amira : She is fourteen tomorrow.
Inju : If she is fourteen, we should put fourteen nuts on the cake when it's cooked. She likes nuts.
Amira : That's a good idea!

Exam 1

My name is Ahmed. Ali is my friend. I'm 14 years old. My friend Ali is 16 years old. Ali likes playing football. Ali dislikes playing tricks. He is a good boy.

Exam 2

Ali went to Luxor, last month. He went with his family. They stayed in Luxor for a week. They stayed in a big hotel. They had a great time.

Exam 3

Omar likes sports. He is in the running team at school. Omar eats good food to give him energy. He eats chicken for lunch. Omar goes running early in the morning.

Exam 4

I went to the museum last week. The museum is in Cairo. I saw lots of monuments there. I thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were fantastic. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history.

Exam 5

To be healthy, you have to sleep well. Make sure you have a balanced diet. Eat some of all types of food. Don't worry too much to be healthy.

Exam 6

There is a lot of pollution where I live. Our neighbours never recycle rubbish- It's very important to recycle rubbish. We should take the paper and glass out of the bins and recycle them.

Exam 7

Nadia is a blind girl. She is a good girl. Nadia likes music. Nadia plays the violin. I'm very proud of her.

Exam 8

Omar is an important sports coach. Omar was born in 1990. Omar lost his leg in an accident. A shark attacked him when he was 22.

Exam 9

Ramy is a blind boy. Ramy likes music. Ramy is in the school orchestra. He plays the piano. I'm very proud of Ramy.

Exam 10

I work as a volunteer for a charity. At the weekend, we go to the beach and pick up the rubbish. We always pick up plastic bottles. The charity helps to clean our local beach.

Exam 11

I love having a new phone. I love watching videos online. I love social media, too. I talk to my friends on the internet.

Exam 12

We have a lot of air pollution in our country. People should plant trees.

Trees are good for the environment. Trees can reduce pollution.

Exam 13

Hani likes the desert because it is quiet. Hani likes the desert very much. Hani alway wears heavy clothes at night when he goes to the desert. The desert is always cold at night.

Exam 14

Mai a good girl. Mai is thirteen years old. She goes to a preparatory school. Mai's school is near her house. Mai likes Arabic best.

Exam 15

Shopping online is great. In shopping online, you can stay at home. Shopping online saves money. When you shop online, there will be less pollution.

Exam 16

Nada is a good girl. She likes sports very much. Nada is 13 years old. Nada likes swimming. She eats vegetables and fruit to be healthy. Nada drinks milk to have strong bones.

Exam 17

Mohamed isn't sleeping very well at the moment. Mohamed watches videos before he goes to sleep. He shouldn't use the mobile too much.

Exam 18

Last week, Lama ordered a mobile phone online. Lama found that the screen of the mobile phone was damaged. Lama didn't recieve the mobile phone.

Exam 19

Fast food is tasty but it is unhealthy. You should have snacks between meals. You should eat healthy snacks.